

**DAILY**

**ENGLISH BOOSTER**

**with**

**COMPREHENSION**

**For**

**S 1, S2,S3 & S4**

**A classic Self – Study**

**Book Guide**

**4**

**Nakanjako Grace**

**Amal Susan**

**Preface:**

This book is one of the many books in an imaginative English exercise series intended for use by English learners from 10 year olds up to 18 / 19 year olds.

The book series are such that the work is fully integrated to enable any age group easy access and understanding at least 60% of any book in this series irrespective of age. It is therefore an all rounder book (in the entire series).

Students are expected to carry out self assessment in a personal exercise book and mark themselves after cross checking the answers at the end of each book.

It is assumed that any keen student who devotes enough time in this self assessment scheme , will definitely get an A grade at the end of his/her English course.

**Acknowledgement:**

We are deeply indebted to the Directors of LEOPARDS PUBLICATIONS, especially Mr. Kamukama Kabiikire for giving us a chance to give a hand in the learning processes of our young English learners in Uganda.

He has personally paid utmost attention to this series for close to four years amidst so many pitfalls. His relentless energy and synergy has finally yielded some positive results.

**Nakanjako Grace**

**Amal Susan**

**EXERCISE 1****Use the right word from the words in brackets to complete the sentence.**

1. His ( principle / principal ) reason for learning Japanese was work related.
2. When I arrived at the Immigration Office, I was informed about the correct ( proceedings / preceding / procedure ) when applying for a work permit.
3. If you ( lose / loose / lost ) your ticket, you will have to replace it yourself.
4. The man sitting in the corner was ( formally / formerly ) the headmaster of my school.
5. I cannot ( accept / except ) your offer of \$3500. The car is worth much more.
6. After she had done a little ( homework / housework ), she went to her room to study.
7. Camping is one of the most ( economic / economical ) ways of having a holiday.
8. He isn't ( eligible / illegible ) to enter the competition since he isn't a citizen.
9. When he arrived home after the storm, his ( cloths, clothes ) were completely drenched.
10. Doctors must be very ( discreet / discrete ) in dealing with their patients.
11. He was very ( boring / bored ) with life on campus.
12. If you like you can ( bring / take ) my car as long as you ( bring / take ) it back in one piece.
13. Driving at night always has the same ( affect / effect ) on me. I get a terrible headache and have no ( alternative / alternate ) but to stop and rest.
14. Quebec is an interesting town with a ( characteristic / character ) all of its own.
15. Her parents were ( dissatisfied / unsatisfied ) with her progress at the college so they went to talk to the ( principal / principle ).
16. She was greatly ( affected / effected ) by the ( site / sight / cite ) of her old hometown.
17. The town ( council / counsel ) is trying hard to improve the environment.
18. After five hours' ( continual / continuous ) rain, the sun finally shone.
19. The opposing factions could not agree on a solution so war appeared ( imminent / eminent ).
20. The school was ( formerly / formally ) opened by an ( imminent / eminent ) author.
21. At the age of twenty-six, he now considers himself ( mature / matured ) enough to get married and start a family.

**EXERCISE 2****Use the right word from the words in brackets to complete the sentence.**

- 1..He found it very difficult to ( adopt / adapt ) to his new life in Australia.
2. After many years of hard work and dedication his efforts have finally ( born / borne ) fruit.
3. The poor man was obviously in pain so I ( brought / took ) him immediately to hospital.
4. You are ( certainly / surely ) not going to eat all of that cake yourself, are you ?
5. I found the student's essay virtually ( illegible / unreadable / eligible ). His handwriting was terrible.
6. If you do not ( ensure / assure / insure ) your property against damage and theft you might one day ( loose / lose / loss ) a great deal of money.
7. Every year the government gives ( awards / rewards ) to a number of Commonwealth students.
8. The boss ( complimented / complemented ) her on her efficient and ( conscious / conscience / conscientious ) work.
9. If the ( whether / weather ) is fine we can go to the beach later on.
10. Older people always complain about ( morale / moral / morals ) standards falling but I find this idea difficult to accept.
11. Can you pass me one of the ( cloths / clothes ) from the cupboard ? I want to wipe the table before I ( lie / lay ) it.
12. The advice of the school's career ( councilor / counselor ) proved very useful.
13. He kept the audience amused with his ( continuous / continual ) jokes and witty remarks.
14. It is now two months since we won a game. Our ( moral / morale / morals ) is very low.

15. It is time we treated those animals in a more ( human / humane ) way and stopped these terrible experiments.

### EXERCISE 3

**Use the right word from the words in brackets to complete the sentence.**

- 1.. It seems to me that you have two ( alternatives / alternates ); you can either apply for a bank loan or re-mortgage your house.
2. They have chosen a beautiful ( sight / site / cite ) for the location of the new airport.
3. His ( conscious / conscience / conscientious ) would not allow him to take part in any ( elicit / illicit ) or questionable business deals.
4. The ( economic / economical ) situation of the world has not improved very much despite political changes.
5. The ( historic / historical ) signing of the peace treaty was witnessed by millions of TV viewers.
6. Use of official ( stationery / stationary ) for personal letters is discouraged by the chief clerk.
7. What is your ( rationale / rational ) for writing such a detailed report ?
8. He seemed utterly ( uninterested / disinterested ) in what was going on around him and sat listening to his stereo and reading the papers.
9. The film was so heavily ( censured / censored ) that we could hardly follow the story-line.
10. They ( hung / hanged ) a picture of the King near the main entrance.
11. The young teacher soon realized that she had to ( adopt / adapt ) the techniques of teaching as her students were very weak in English.
12. The escaped prisoner was finally discovered hiding in a ( misused / disused ) tin-mine.
13. After a long, hard day at work, I usually go home and ( lay / lie ) down for an hour or so before I do some household chores.
14. Now that your application has been approved you can ( proceed / precede ) with your plans.
15. He got ( quite / quiet ) a good reference from his old supervisor and got the new job in Texas.

### EXERCISE 4

**Fill in the blank in each sentence with the most appropriate word.**

1. Alexander Fleming \_\_\_\_\_ penicillin, a substance produced by the mould *Penicillium notatum*.
  - (A) invented
  - (B) concocted
  - (C) discovered
  - (D) created
  - (E) founded
2. In the past, convicts from England were \_\_\_\_\_ to Australia and other British colonies.
  - (A) exiled
  - (B) deported
  - (C) extradited
  - (D) ostracized
  - (E) expelled
3. Will you please \_\_\_\_\_ the meaning of this paragraph to me ?
  - (A) discuss
  - (B) account
  - (C) explain
  - (D) rationalize
  - (E) theorize
4. When Jim complained of frequent headaches, he was \_\_\_\_\_ to see a doctor.

- (A) forced
- (B) demanded
- (C) suggested
- (D) advised
- (E) warned

5. This coupon \_\_\_\_\_ you to a free drink during the interval.

- (A) entitles
- (B) claims
- (C) entreats
- (D) requires
- (E) provides

6. To \_\_\_\_\_ his income, he gives tuition to school students in the evening.

- (A) compliment
- (B) supplement
- (C) reinforce
- (D) enhance
- (E) intensify

7. The new principal \_\_\_\_\_ me of an uncle who was a pilot in an airline.

- (A) remembers
- (B) refers
- (C) recalls
- (D) reminds
- (E) recollects

8. Drug addicts are \_\_\_\_\_ in special centers set up by the government.

- (A) consolidated
- (B) inhabited
- (C) rehabilitated
- (D) inhibited
- (E) indoctrinated

9. He had to \_\_\_\_\_ his action before an ad hoc committee.

- (A) justify
- (B) exemplify
- (C) nullify
- (D) satisfy
- (E) amplify

10. Both sides would not \_\_\_\_\_ and the talks ended in a deadlock.

- (A) concede
- (B) consult
- (C) negotiate
- (D) commit
- (E) compromise

11. The customs department \_\_\_\_\_ the goods which the men tried to smuggle into the country.

- (A) grabbed
- (B) usurped
- (C) confiscated
- (D) condemned
- (E) possessed

12. The condemned man was \_\_\_\_\_ by a firing squad.

**DAILY ENGLISH BOOSTER---DISTINCTION**

- (A) hanged
- (B) executed
- (C) sentenced
- (D) exterminated
- (E) eradicated

13. The boss \_\_\_\_\_ his staff to work hard with a promise of an additional month's bonus.

- (A) motivates
- (B) provokes
- (C) tempts
- (D) arouses
- (E) inspires

14. If you had \_\_\_\_\_ me on the matter, you would not have made this blunder.

- (A) referred
- (B) explained
- (C) advised
- (D) consulted
- (E) discussed

15. The man \_\_\_\_\_ loudly when he was refused admission into the building.

- (A) objected
- (B) kicked
- (C) protested
- (D) expostulated
- (E) denounced

16. He had to \_\_\_\_\_ the house he rented when its owner wanted it back.

- (A) abandon
- (B) reject
- (C) remove
- (D) vacate
- (E) empty

17. If you don't \_\_\_\_\_ your temper, you will soon lose all your friends.

- (A) stop
- (B) hold
- (C) rebuke
- (D) examine
- (E) check

18. We will look for seashells and driftwood when the tide \_\_\_\_\_.

- (A) recedes
- (B) retreats
- (C) secedes
- (D) retires
- (E) withdraws

19. The man reported that he was \_\_\_\_\_ while in prison

- (A) terrorized
- (B) cowered
- (C) constrained
- (D) intimidated
- (E) chided

20. The secretary \_\_\_\_\_ herself into her employer's favour, much to the disgust of the rest of the staff.

- (A) introduces
- (B) interposes
- (C) insinuates
- (D) implants
- (E) inserts

### EXERCISE 5

**Fill in the blank in each sentence with the most appropriate word.**

1. Mr. Barney is a/an \_\_\_\_\_ politician who knows when to make his moves to outflank his opponents.

- (A) astute
- (B) radical
- (C) evasive
- (D) meticulous

2. One needs to be extremely \_\_\_\_\_ when investing overseas because of the inherent pitfalls.

- (A) circumspect
- (B) discerning
- (C) discriminating
- (D) introspective

3. The committee member was chided for adopting a \_\_\_\_\_ stance during the extraordinary meeting.

- (A) combative
- (B) pathetic
- (C) boorish
- (D) servile

4. The host's \_\_\_\_\_ manners impressed many of the female guests at the party.

- (A) sober
- (B) urbane
- (C) gruff
- (D) humourous

5. Our boss is a \_\_\_\_\_ employer who values and rewards diligence but detests flattery.

- (A) smug
- (B) pompous
- (C) cynical
- (D) down-to-earth

6. Many orphans have benefited from the \_\_\_\_\_ of an anonymous donor.

- (A) benevolence
- (B) passion
- (C) callousness
- (D) favouritism

7. His \_\_\_\_\_ has won him many friends.

- (A) simplicity
- (B) servility
- (C) affability
- (D) tenacity

8. Some of the police officers were accused of being corrupt and \_\_\_\_\_.

**DAILY ENGLISH BOOSTER---DISTINCTION**

- (A) inert
- (B) sober
- (C) naive
- (D) smug

9. Martha has shown great \_\_\_\_\_ in spite of her handicap and suffering.

- (A) complacency
- (B) stoicism
- (C) patience
- (D) inertia

10. To maintain his good reputation, Mr. Gordon is always \_\_\_\_\_ about repaying his loans.

- (A) punctilious
- (B) supercilious
- (C) superfluous
- (D) wary

11. Mr. Barney is a/an \_\_\_\_\_ politician who knows when to make his moves to outflank his opponents.

- (A) astute
- (B) radical
- (C) evasive
- (D) meticulous

12. One needs to be extremely \_\_\_\_\_ when investing overseas because of the inherent pitfalls.

- (A) circumspect
- (B) discerning
- (C) discriminating
- (D) introspective

13. The committee member was chided for adopting a \_\_\_\_\_ stance during the extraordinary meeting.

- (A) combative
- (B) pathetic
- (C) boorish
- (D) servile

14. The host's \_\_\_\_\_ manners impressed many of the female guests at the party.

- (A) sober
- (B) urbane
- (C) gruff
- (D) humourous

15. Our boss is a \_\_\_\_\_ employer who values and rewards diligence but detests flattery.

- (A) smug
- (B) pompous
- (C) cynical
- (D) down-to-earth

16. Many orphans have benefited from the \_\_\_\_\_ of an anonymous donor.

- (A) benevolence
- (B) passion
- (C) callousness
- (D) favouritism

17. His \_\_\_\_\_ has won him many friends.

- (A) simplicity
- (B) servility

- (C) affability
- (D) tenacity

18. Some of the police officers were accused of being corrupt and \_\_\_\_\_.

- (A) inert
- (B) sober
- (C) naive
- (D) smug

19. Martha has shown great \_\_\_\_\_ in spite of her handicap and suffering.

- (A) complacency
- (B) stoicism
- (C) patience
- (D) inertia

20. To maintain his good reputation, Mr. Gordon is always \_\_\_\_\_ about repaying his loans.

- (A) punctilious
- (B) supercilious
- (C) superfluous
- (D) wary

### **EXERCISE 6**

**Fill in the blank in each sentence with the most appropriate word.**

1. The \_\_\_\_\_ side of the politician's character was exposed in his dealings with the crooked businessman.

- (A) sordid
- (B) suspicious
- (C) positive
- (D) spiteful

2. It was indeed \_\_\_\_\_ of Jack to take on the two armed assailants.

- (A) heroic
- (B) adamant
- (C) fanatic
- (D) foolhardy

3. By the time I saw through his \_\_\_\_\_, it was a bit too late.

- (A) perfidy
- (B) evil
- (C) wickedness
- (D) deceit

4. A \_\_\_\_\_ person is a real scrooge.

- (A) thrifty
- (B) niggardly
- (C) lavish
- (D) benign

5. You can never take his words at face value for he is such a/an \_\_\_\_\_ liar.

- (A) discreet
- (B) crafty
- (C) shrewd
- (D) incorrigible

6. Castro was young, naive and \_\_\_\_\_ when he took part in the revolution.

- (A) scornful
- (B) bitter
- (C) paranoid
- (D) idealistic

7. An \_\_\_\_\_ explorer would be willing to go to the most dangerous places.

- (A) churlish
- (B) intrepid
- (C) complaint
- (D) insipid

8. Most of the students do not take it too kindly to the teacher's \_\_\_\_\_ attitude.

- (A) consoling
- (B) complaint
- (C) patronising
- (D) benign

9. The chief judge is highly respected for his \_\_\_\_\_.

- (A) deceit
- (B) integrity
- (C) bigotry
- (D) constancy

10. A henpecked husband invariably has a \_\_\_\_\_ wife.

- (A) domineering
- (B) dominant
- (C) docile
- (D) meek

11. The coach was \_\_\_\_\_ when his team scored an upset victory over the other team which they had never beaten before.

- (A) enraged
- (B) deranged
- (C) elated
- (D) blissful

12. The errant student is truly \_\_\_\_\_ and should be given a second chance.

- (A) morose
- (B) woeful
- (C) bored
- (D) penitent

13. Consumers are simply \_\_\_\_\_ by the wide range of skin care products available in the market.

- (A) annoyed
- (B) outraged
- (C) relieved
- (D) bewildered

14. She found the cold, steady gaze of the stranger rather \_\_\_\_\_.

- (A) perplexing
- (B) disconcerting
- (C) relaxing
- (D) stimulating

15. It seems inevitable that most elderly people get \_\_\_\_\_ at times.

- (A) disgusted
- (B) disoriented

- (C) harassed  
 (D) restless
16. The public were \_\_\_\_\_ when the son of the influential politician was acquitted of murder.  
 (A) outraged  
 (B) exasperated  
 (C) bewitched  
 (D) relieved
17. The revelations of the prince's scandalous affairs in the tabloids were most \_\_\_\_\_ for the royal family.  
 (A) touching  
 (B) tormenting  
 (C) mortifying  
 (D) gratifying
18. He remained \_\_\_\_\_ despite the setbacks and criticisms, confident that he could weather the storm and succeed eventually.  
 (A) unconcerned  
 (B) unfazed  
 (C) unmoved  
 (D) unrepentant
19. Who could really understand the \_\_\_\_\_ of the mother who had just lost her only child in the accident ?  
 (A) anguish  
 (B) hope  
 (C) discomfiture  
 (D) annoyance
20. I wondered who could be knocking at the door at that hour of the night. With some \_\_\_\_\_, I opened the door.  
 (A) reluctance  
 (B) hope  
 (C) expectation  
 (D) trepidation

**EXERCISE 7****Fill in the blank in each sentence with the most appropriate word.**

1. The embattled troops were eventually overcome by \_\_\_\_\_ after days of continual fighting.  
 (A) boredom  
 (B) fatigue  
 (C) despair  
 (D) fear
2. The corrupt official absolutely has no \_\_\_\_\_ about exploiting the poor peasants to enrich himself.  
 (A) doubt  
 (B) pangs  
 (C) care  
 (D) qualms
3. Have you ever experienced the \_\_\_\_\_ at the end of a grueling race ?  
 (A) exhaustion  
 (B) lethargy

- (C) laziness
- (D) steepiness

4. The \_\_\_\_\_ workers were instigated to go on strike.

- (A) dejected
- (B) disgusted
- (C) disgruntled
- (D) placid

5. Annie is still \_\_\_\_\_ whether she should accept the overseas posting.

- (A) doubtful
- (B) tormented
- (C) perturbed
- (D) bemused

6. Howard did not show any \_\_\_\_\_ for having betrayed his good friend and causing his downfall.

- (A) contrition
- (B) enthusiasm
- (C) inhibition
- (D) dilemma

7. Mrs Gordon was \_\_\_\_\_ by the news of the plane crash which killed her husband and son.

- (A) flustered
- (B) stunned
- (C) devastated
- (D) amazed

8. Mr Benson's \_\_\_\_\_ is understandable as he has had a long and hard day at the office.

- (A) grouchiness
- (B) irritation
- (C) harassment
- (D) contrition

9. Hanna was deeply \_\_\_\_\_ by the news of her father's arrest and impending trial.

- (A) perplexed
- (B) downcast
- (C) harried
- (D) distressed

10. Hope eventually gave way to \_\_\_\_\_ when the graduate failed to secure a job after countless applications and interviews.

- (A) despondency
- (B) optimism
- (C) empathy
- (D) sympathy

11. Roland felt like a social \_\_\_\_\_ when he returned to his hometown after years of wandering abroad.

- (A) parasite
- (B) intruder
- (C) misfit

12. The majority of the people will definitely vote for a \_\_\_\_\_ rather than one with extreme views as president.

- (A) moderate
- (B) tartar
- (C) dupe

13. The spectators cheered loudly for the \_\_\_\_\_ as he took on the reigning champion.

- (A) pushover
- (B) weakling
- (C) underdog

14. Mr. Lester would never consider dining with his poor relatives; he was too much of a \_\_\_\_\_.

- (A) jerk
- (B) snob
- (C) nerd

15. Mr Howard was accused of being a white \_\_\_\_\_ when he belittled the contributions of Asian and African immigrants.

- (A) alarmist
- (B) sceptic
- (C) supremacist

16. Joseph has been chosen to be the \_\_\_\_\_ because of his integrity and good reputation.

- (A) sponger
- (B) trustee
- (C) zealot

17. Cassius was pilloried as a \_\_\_\_\_ and traitor when he switched allegiance and joined the opposition party.

- (A) sycophant
- (B) saboteur
- (C) turncoat

18. It is indeed unfortunate that most teachers and students alike failed to empathize with the \_\_\_\_\_ in their midst.

- (A) idlers
- (B) high-fliers
- (C) underachievers

19. Most of the older staff viewed the young manager as an impudent \_\_\_\_\_.

- (A) highbrow
- (B) pundit
- (C) upstart

20. For all his strong views, I would say he is a religious \_\_\_\_\_ rather than an extremist.

- (A) zealot
- (B) diehard
- (C) hothead

21.. The \_\_\_\_\_ complained that the host country had not accorded them the respect due to foreign dignitaries.

- (A) retinue
- (B) delegation
- (C) assembly

22. Political parties with different platforms tried to outdo one another in wooing the \_\_\_\_\_.

- (A) rioters
- (B) demonstrators
- (C) electorate

23. Hitherto, there is no consensus among the medical \_\_\_\_\_ on the question of euthanasia.

- (A) following
- (B) fraternity
- (C) syndicate

24. The charismatic leader with a socialist bent has the support of the \_\_\_\_\_.

- (A) mob
- (B) diaspora
- (C) masses

25. The small privileged \_\_\_\_\_ in their ivory tower simply could not empathize with the common citizens.

- (A) elite
- (B) clan
- (C) tribe

### **EXERCISE 8**

**Fill in the blank in each sentence with the most appropriate word.**

1. The \_\_\_\_\_ price increases in water and electricity caused a public outcry.

- (A) unforeseen
- (B) unexpected
- (C) unprecedented

2. The victim's bloodcurdling screams sent \_\_\_\_\_ down my spine.

- (A) quivers
- (B) shivers
- (C) tremors

3. The proposal has been \_\_\_\_\_ approved by the sub-committee.

- (A) anonymously
- (B) wholly
- (C) unanimously

4. Time and again the \_\_\_\_\_ has managed to elude the police.

- (A) prey
- (B) quarry
- (C) victim

5. They had \_\_\_\_\_ their enemy and subsequently suffered a humiliating defeat.

- (A) underestimated
- (B) understated
- (C) underrated

6. The erupting volcano, manifesting the power of nature, was indeed a/an \_\_\_\_\_ sight.

- (A) awful
- (B) awesome
- (C) gruesome

7. Without support from the masses, the movement just \_\_\_\_\_ out.

- (A) died
- (B) fizzled
- (C) petered

8. Mr. Gordon has been discharged from hospital and is presently \_\_\_\_\_ at home.

- (A) rejuvenating
- (B) replenishing
- (C) recuperating

9. Many people in the entertainment industry lead a \_\_\_\_\_ life.

- (A) absolute
- (B) desolate

- (C) dissolute
10. The sailors threatened mutiny if land was not \_\_\_\_\_ in the next two days.
- (A) located  
(B) sighted  
(C) spotted
11. Taking public transport is definitely more \_\_\_\_\_ than driving your own car.
- (A) economical  
(B) frugal  
(C) thrifty
12. The errant worker became very \_\_\_\_\_ when the employer threatened to dismiss her.
- (A) animated  
(B) agitated  
(C) stimulated
13. I know James is trying his best to \_\_\_\_\_ me into losing my temper, but he will be disappointed.
- (A) incite  
(B) instigate  
(C) provoke
14. Mr. Marshall was \_\_\_\_\_ an honorary degree by the University for his contribution to education.
- (A) bestowed  
(B) conferred  
(C) presented
15. The local soccer team was totally \_\_\_\_\_ by the more robust and skilful foreign team.
- (A) outdone  
(B) outclassed  
(C) outshone
16. The flamboyant politician had a penchant for \_\_\_\_\_ projects which he believed would enhance the country's image.
- (A) grandiose  
(B) ostentatious  
(C) sumptuous
17. The use of violence cannot be \_\_\_\_\_ by any civilised society under any circumstances.
- (A) condoned  
(B) connived  
(C) conceded
18. The computer has become an indispensable \_\_\_\_\_ for the modern teacher.
- (A) agent  
(B) medium  
(C) tool
19. Maradona does not play soccer any more, but his interest in the game has not \_\_\_\_\_.
- (A) decreased  
(B) declined  
(C) diminished
20. We should never underestimate a child's \_\_\_\_\_ for learning languages.
- (A) ability  
(B) capability  
(C) capacity

**EXERCISE 9**

**Replace the phrase in bold with a word of similar meaning.**

- 1.The war hero was awarded the medal **after his death**.
- 2.It would be considered **lacking in respect** for a person to joke and laugh loudly in a place of worship.
- 3.The country's oil reserves are **being used up** at an alarming rate due to official corruption and incompetence.
- 4.The police finally had a breakthrough after six months of **very careful and thorough** investigations.
- 5.The minister's remarks about female fickleness **brought upon himself** the wrath of the feminists.
- 6.It is an indisputable fact that smoking is **harmful and damaging** to our health.
- 7.Your plan, though brilliant, is not **likely to work** in the present economic downturn.
8. It is certainly **not wise** to borrow from loan sharks even when you are in dire straits.
- 9.It is a well-known fact that the Japanese have a **special liking** for hard work and perfection.
- 10.The local official appeared **lacking in self-confidence** in the presence of foreign journalists.
- 11.Grandma's sewing machine may be old, but it is still **capable of performing**.
- 12.Both men pointed their guns at each other and fired **at the same time**.
- 13.After the second World War, Japan adopted a constitution that was **strongly opposed to war and conflict**.
- 14.In an attempt to **prolong the existence** of his rule, the tyrant abolished all elections.
- 15.John's crass comments **increased the severity** of the already tense situation.
- 16.John plays the piano with **quick cleverness and skill**.
- 17.Can you **prove the truth** of your claim in a court of law ?
- 18.There was a lack of **general agreement** among the major powers on the issue of nuclear non-proliferation.
19. Official corruption had been **widespread and unchecked** in the country for decades before the revolution.
20. His colleagues find him **extremely unpleasant and offensive**.

**EXERCISE 10**

**Fill in the blank in each sentence with the most appropriate word.**

- 1.Cruelty to animals is \_\_\_\_\_ by any civilized society
  - (A) abhorred
  - (B) rejected
  - (C) censored
- 2.The youngster was \_\_\_\_\_ for being disrespectful to his elders.
  - (A) admonished
  - (B) remonstrated
  - (C) disapproved
- 3.The soldiers trudged \_\_\_\_\_ back to their barracks after completing the 5 km march.
  - (A) awkwardly
  - (B) wearily
  - (C) ponderously
- 4.George was so \_\_\_\_\_ in his work that he did not notice my intrusion.
  - (A) immersed
  - (B) involved
  - (C) engrossed
5. Mr. Kenwood was \_\_\_\_\_ by friends and relatives after he was made bankrupt.
  - (A) shunned
  - (B) neglected

- (C) bypassed  
6. Any illegal immigrant who is caught will be caned, jailed and \_\_\_\_\_.  
(A) exported  
(B) deported  
(C) exiled  
7. A cobra's bite can be \_\_\_\_\_ if the victim is not promptly treated.  
(A) fatal  
(B) lethal  
(C) mortal  
8. The interviewee's seeming confidence and composure \_\_\_\_\_ her real anxiety.  
(A) disguised  
(B) concealed  
(C) belied  
9. Being the discipline master, Mr Hendricks has to be firm in \_\_\_\_\_ the school's rules and regulations.  
(A) executing  
(B) pursuing  
(C) enforcing  
10. The mega project has been postponed \_\_\_\_\_ due to the lack of funds.  
(A) indefinitely  
(B) temporarily  
(C) permanently  
11. The crops were withering in the fields, due to the \_\_\_\_\_ drought.  
(A) lengthened  
(B) widened  
(C) prolonged  
12. The African slaves, \_\_\_\_\_ by their white masters, had had a hard life in America.  
(A) oppressed  
(B) suppressed  
(C) regressed  
13. According to the curator, the antique vase was genuine and \_\_\_\_\_.  
(A) priceless  
(B) valueless  
(C) worthless  
14. Tattooing has become the latest \_\_\_\_\_ among teenagers.  
(A) craving  
(B) craze  
(C) obsession  
15. For weeks, the detectives have been \_\_\_\_\_ into the events that led up to the heist.  
(A) investigating  
(B) examining  
(C) probing  
16. Joyce's essay, \_\_\_\_\_ with apt quotations and insightful observations, was very well-written.  
(A) interspersed  
(B) sprinkled  
(C) intermingled  
17. The ancestral home, which has been left vacant for years, has fallen into \_\_\_\_\_.

- (A) disrepute
- (B) disrepair
- (C) destruction

18. The plans for a shopping mall have been submitted to the relevant authorities for \_\_\_\_\_.

- (A) permission
- (B) sanction
- (C) approval

19. Senior citizens going to the cinema on weekdays are entitled to \_\_\_\_\_ rates.

- (A) cut
- (B) deducted
- (C) concessionary

20. The accused was \_\_\_\_\_ by a brilliant criminal lawyer.

- (A) defended
- (B) protected
- (C) shielded

### **EXERCISE 11**

**Fill in the blank in each sentence with the most appropriate word.**

1. The authorities have decided that only buildings with historical significance will be \_\_\_\_\_.

- (A) conserved
- (B) preserved
- (C) reserved

2. Mrs. Osram has to work to \_\_\_\_\_ her husband's meagre income.

- (A) complement
- (B) supplement
- (C) enlarge

3. The dedicated social worker has been working \_\_\_\_\_ for the welfare of the orphans.

- (A) painstakingly
- (B) relentlessly
- (C) tirelessly

4. Many of the deadly diseases of today may one day be \_\_\_\_\_.

- (A) annihilated
- (B) eradicated
- (C) terminated

5. There is now a greater \_\_\_\_\_ of their rights among consumers in the developing countries.

- (A) awareness
- (B) appreciation
- (C) knowledge

6. His outright \_\_\_\_\_ of the crime immediately aroused the suspicion of the police.

- (A) denial
- (B) objection
- (C) rejection

7. As the flood situation worsened, the villagers were \_\_\_\_\_ from the affected area to a school some distance away.

- (A) removed
- (B) evicted
- (C) evacuated

8. Enid Blyton had written many books. Indeed she was such a \_\_\_\_\_ writer !

- (A) profuse
- (B) prolific
- (C) abundant

9. The government is alarmed at the \_\_\_\_\_ of population increase among the poor in the country.

- (A) number
- (B) rate
- (C) speed

10. The mob \_\_\_\_\_ on the arrival of the riot police.

- (A) dispersed
- (B) scattered
- (C) stampeded

11. Our teacher brought us to the \_\_\_\_\_ where birds of all kinds are kept.

- (A) nest
- (B) park
- (C) apiary
- (D) aviary

12. I went to the \_\_\_\_\_ to do some research for my project.

- (A) classroom
- (B) bookstore
- (C) library
- (D) lavatory

13. After her parents died, Sally was sent to the \_\_\_\_\_ as she had no other relatives to look after her.

- (A) orphanage
- (B) school
- (C) home
- (D) chalet

14. Father promised us a trip to the \_\_\_\_\_ where we could ride our bikes and play on the slides.

- (A) seaside
- (B) park
- (C) void deck
- (D) farm

15. During Deepavali, the Raju family goes to the \_\_\_\_\_ to pray.

- (A) temple
- (B) church
- (C) mosque
- (D) museum

16. During our holiday in London, we stayed at a nice but expensive \_\_\_\_\_.

- (A) hostel
- (B) hotel
- (C) motel
- (D) room

17. The Eskimos live in a/an \_\_\_\_\_ which is made of ice blocks.

- (A) flats
- (B) bungalow
- (C) incinerator
- (D) igloo

18. Let's go to the \_\_\_\_\_. It sells a lot of interesting books.

- (A) airport
- (B) kiosk
- (C) bookshop
- (D) provision shop

**EXERCISE 12**

**Fill in the blank in each sentence with the most appropriate word.**

1. Gary went to the \_\_\_\_\_ to see the different types of fishes there.

- (A) sea
- (B) zoo
- (C) aquarium
- (D) pond

2. To be a monk, you need to stay and learn in a \_\_\_\_\_.

- (A) monastery
- (B) temple
- (C) school
- (D) church

3. The \_\_\_\_\_ is equipped with a lot of exercise machines.

- (A) storeroom
- (B) gymnasium
- (C) stadium
- (D) shop

4. Father's new boat has \_\_\_\_\_ which we can sleep in.

- (A) cabins
- (B) rooms
- (C) suites
- (D) lofts

5. Police brought the criminal to \_\_\_\_\_ to be judged and sentenced.

- (A) station
- (B) jail
- (C) prison
- (D) court

6. Farmer Brown herded all his sheep into the \_\_\_\_\_ for the night.

- (A) pen
- (B) stable
- (C) barn
- (D) sty

7. Mother brought the woollen clothes to the \_\_\_\_\_ to be dry-cleaned.

- (A) laundry
- (B) shop
- (C) toilet
- (D) tailor

8. Rubbish is burnt at the \_\_\_\_\_.

- (A) incinerator
- (B) dump
- (C) sewer
- (D) mint

9. The thief was sent to \_\_\_\_\_ after he was found guilty.
- (A) court
  - (B) jail
  - (C) police station
  - (D) home
10. The young boy watched excitedly as the airplane headed for the \_\_\_\_\_ and parked there.
- (A) hangar
  - (B) garage
  - (C) barn
  - (D) runway
11. People with mental illness are sent to the \_\_\_\_\_ for treatment.
- (A) asylum
  - (B) clinic
  - (C) hospital
  - (D) polyclinic
12. The \_\_\_\_\_ was packed with Christians on Christmas Eve.
- (A) temple
  - (B) emporium
  - (C) church
  - (D) mosque
13. Mr Lim drove the bus straight to the \_\_\_\_\_ as the bus would be kept there for the night.
- (A) interchange
  - (B) depot
  - (C) garage
  - (D) car park
14. There is an art exhibition at the \_\_\_\_\_ in Orchard Road.
- (A) gallery
  - (B) theater
  - (C) cinema
  - (D) stage
15. Muslims go to the \_\_\_\_\_ for their Friday prayers.
- (A) temple
  - (B) church
  - (C) chapel
  - (D) mosque
16. Another word for toilet is \_\_\_\_\_.
- (A) laboratory
  - (B) lavatory
  - (C) elevator
  - (D) escalator

### **EXERCISE 13**

**Fill in the blank in each sentence with the most appropriate word.**

1. Jenny visits her mother's grave at the \_\_\_\_\_ every month.
- (A) cemetery
  - (B) field
  - (C) farm
  - (D) churchyard

2. The tired soldiers headed straight for their \_\_\_\_\_ for a rest.
- (A) cabins
  - (B) tents
  - (C) barracks
  - (D) rooms
3. Father parked his car in the \_\_\_\_\_.
- (A) hangar
  - (B) depot
  - (C) road
  - (D) garage
4. The students go to the \_\_\_\_\_ to do research for their projects
- (A) classroom
  - (B) library
  - (C) bookstore
  - (D) cemetery
5. He kept his dog in a \_\_\_\_\_ in his garden.
- (A) kennel
  - (B) stable
  - (C) barn
  - (D) hutch
6. There's an exhibition on ancient Chinese at the \_\_\_\_\_.
- (A) museum
  - (B) theater
  - (C) auditorium
  - (D) gallery
7. The injured accident victim was sent to the \_\_\_\_\_ immediately.
- (A) clinic
  - (B) asylum
  - (C) hospital
  - (D) mortuary
8. Rubbish collected every day is sent to the \_\_\_\_\_.
- (A) dump
  - (B) river
  - (C) ground
  - (D) hills
9. Father went down to the \_\_\_\_\_ and took out all the old toys.
- (A) attic
  - (B) loft
  - (C) ground
  - (D) storeroom
10. We bought some young plants at the \_\_\_\_\_.
- (A) florist
  - (B) nursery
  - (C) grocer
  - (D) forest
11. We had a wonderful holiday living and traveling in a \_\_\_\_\_ all over the countryside.
- (A) car
  - (B) caravan
  - (C) truck

12. \_\_\_\_\_ in China produce a lot of cheap toys and electrical gadgets.
- (A) Shops
  - (B) Emporiums
  - (C) Factories
  - (D) Laboratories
13. People in the village are worried because the amount of rice in the \_\_\_\_\_ has decreased.
- (A) store
  - (B) granary
  - (C) warehouse
  - (D) factory
14. Sally is staying in a \_\_\_\_\_ so that she doesn't have to travel to the university every day.
- (A) hotel
  - (B) motel
  - (C) hostel
  - (D) chalet
15. Experiments are being carried out in the \_\_\_\_\_.
- (A) laboratories
  - (B) factories
  - (C) lavatories
  - (D) aviaries
16. New coins are made in the \_\_\_\_\_.
- (A) mint
  - (B) bank
  - (C) factory
  - (D) incinerator
17. Rain water is collected and stored in the \_\_\_\_\_ for the people in the country to use.
- (A) reservoir
  - (B) basin
  - (C) pond
  - (D) river
18. The sculptor spent hours in his \_\_\_\_\_ creating his new sculpture.
- (A) garage
  - (B) studio
  - (C) gallery
  - (D) room
19. Some animals in the \_\_\_\_\_ are kept in enclosures.
- (A) forest
  - (B) swamp
  - (C) farm
  - (D) zoo
20. Mr Jacobs owns an apple \_\_\_\_\_ in Australia.
- (A) orchard
  - (B) orchid
  - (C) farm
  - (D) tree
21. Slides, seesaws, monkey bars and swings are fun equipment found at the \_\_\_\_\_.

- (A) playground
- (B) gymnasium
- (C) beach
- (D) park

22. Mouth-watering smells float towards us as we walk past the \_\_\_\_\_.

- (A) market
- (B) bakery
- (C) granary
- (D) factory

23. The horses' loud neighing alerted Framer Brown to the fire in the \_\_\_\_\_.

- (A) stable
- (B) pond
- (C) paddock
- (D) pen

24. The Hindus and Buddhists pray at the \_\_\_\_\_.

- (A) temple
- (B) church
- (C) mosque
- (D) chapel

#### **EXERCISE 14**

**Fill in the blank in each sentence with the most appropriate word.**

1. We celebrated my sister's graduation with a party at an expensive \_\_\_\_\_.

- (A) hawker center
- (B) restaurant
- (C) shop
- (D) stall

2. The final football match will be held at the \_\_\_\_\_ tonight. (A) field

- (B) court
- (C) stadium
- (D) gallery

3. Nuns at the \_\_\_\_\_ live very simply.

- (A) church
- (B) convent
- (C) monastery
- (D) temple

4. The toys from China will be stored at the \_\_\_\_\_ before they are transported to the company's office.

- (A) storeroom
- (B) warehouse
- (C) granary
- (D) harbour

5. Children with no parents and relatives are sent to live in the \_\_\_\_\_.

- (A) home
- (B) hospital
- (C) orphanage

(D) community center

6. Nathan was sent to \_\_\_\_\_ for committing a crime.

- (A) nursery
- (B) camp
- (C) court
- (D) prison

7. Gregory had to clean the pigs' \_\_\_\_\_ as part of his chores.

- (A) sty
- (B) pen
- (C) stable
- (D) paddock

8. Wild animals live in their natural habitat in the \_\_\_\_\_.

- (A) jungle
- (B) pet shop
- (C) zoo
- (D) enclosures

9. Jews perform their ceremonies and prayers in the \_\_\_\_\_.

- (A) synagogue
- (B) temple
- (C) mosque
- (D) church

10. He bought his own \_\_\_\_\_ on the 10th floor.

- (A) apartment
- (B) terrace
- (C) attic
- (D) house

11. Mother went to the \_\_\_\_\_ to buy some medicine for her headache.

- (A) hospital
- (B) clinic
- (C) shop
- (D) pharmacy

12. We brought our bicycles to the \_\_\_\_\_ and had a nice time cycling there.

- (A) playground
- (B) field
- (C) park
- (D) stadium

13. All the ships are docked at the \_\_\_\_\_.

- (A) quay
- (B) hanger
- (C) harbour
- (D) pier

14. My aunt operates a \_\_\_\_\_ at my school canteen.

- (A) stall
- (B) restaurant
- (C) center
- (D) shop

15. Another word for hospital is \_\_\_\_\_.

- (A) sanatorium
- (B) clinic
- (C) polyclinic
- (D) asylum

16. The play 'Othello' was staged at the Rex \_\_\_\_\_ last night.

- (A) cinema
- (B) stadium
- (C) auditorium
- (D) theater

17. We watched in awe as the \_\_\_\_\_ landed on the moon.

- (A) acrobats
- (B) pilots
- (C) adventurers
- (D) astronauts

18. The \_\_\_\_\_ looked at my mother's prescription and got her medication ready.

- (A) doctor
- (B) nurse
- (C) surgeon
- (D) pharmacist

19. To prove her innocence, Kelly hired a \_\_\_\_\_ to defend her in court.

- (A) judge
- (B) lawyer
- (C) helper
- (D) secretary

20. The \_\_\_\_\_ shouted at Rex for not being serious during football practice.

- (A) teacher
- (B) leader
- (C) coach
- (D) invigilator

21. The emergency heart operation was carried out by the \_\_\_\_\_ last night.

- (A) nurse
- (B) surgeon
- (C) doctor
- (D) operator

22. The bride and \_\_\_\_\_ looked very glamorous during the wedding ceremony.

- (A) man
- (B) groom
- (C) jockey
- (D) bridesmaid

23. This \_\_\_\_\_ is famous for carving figures out of rocks and boulders.

- (A) chauffeur
- (B) painter
- (C) sculptor
- (D) compere

24. The \_\_\_\_\_ discovered a new star in the solar system.

- (A) astronomer
- (B) astronaut
- (C) astrologer

- (D) archaeologist

### EXERCISE 15

**Fill in the blank in each sentence with the most appropriate word.**

1. My father's job as a/an \_\_\_\_\_ means he has to be responsible for the company's expenditure.

- (A) engineer  
(B) accountant  
(C) lawyer  
(D) helper

2. The old unoccupied bungalow is being looked after by the \_\_\_\_\_.

- (A) caretaker  
(B) gardener  
(C) architect  
(D) butler

3. The \_\_\_\_\_ poured the drinks that the club member ordered.

- (A) helper  
(B) bartender  
(C) chef  
(D) salesperson

4. We listened to the \_\_\_\_\_ as he predicted our future based on the movement of the stars.

- (A) astronomer  
(B) astrologer  
(C) astronaut  
(D) atheist

5. Henry wishes to be a/an \_\_\_\_\_ when he grows up. He wants to travel and discover new places and things.

- (A) traveler  
(B) hiker  
(C) explorer  
(D) astronaut

6. The \_\_\_\_\_ examined Rashid and said that he had flu.

- (A) surgeon  
(B) examiner  
(C) doctor  
(D) nurse

7. Cakes and biscuits of different patterns and taste were made by the famous \_\_\_\_\_.

- (A) chef  
(B) cook  
(C) confectioner  
(D) butler

8. Latif works as a \_\_\_\_\_ at the swimming pool and helps keep the swimmers safe.

- (A) cleaner  
(B) coach  
(C) manager  
(D) lifeguard

9. As a/an \_\_\_\_\_, Mr Jacobs has to look for clues to solve the case.

- (A) detective

- (B) spy
- (C) adventurer
- (D) explorer

10. He works as a \_\_\_\_\_ at the wet market nearby.

- (A) fisherman
- (B) fishmonger
- (C) waiter
- (D) butler

11. \_\_\_\_\_ study the stars and their movements.

- (A) Astrologers
- (B) Astronauts
- (C) Astronomers
- (D) Archaeologists

12. We ordered some iron rods and swords from the \_\_\_\_\_.

- (A) engineer
- (B) blacksmith
- (C) carpenter
- (D) cobbler

13. The \_\_\_\_\_ amazed everyone by turning the bird into a flower.

- (A) artist
- (B) amateur
- (C) conjurer
- (D) acrobat

14. Mr Lim has been building tables, chairs and cupboards for years. He is such a good \_\_\_\_\_.

- (A) builder
- (B) architect
- (C) technician
- (D) carpenter

15. Sally sent her favourite sandals to the \_\_\_\_\_ when the straps came off.

- (A) butcher
- (B) butler
- (C) cobbler
- (D) conjurer

16. The \_\_\_\_\_ at the circus swung around gracefully on the trapeze.

- (A) singers
- (B) magicians
- (C) conjurers
- (D) acrobats

17. The museum's \_\_\_\_\_ explained the origin of some of the exhibits at the museum to the tourists.

- (A) caretaker
- (B) manager
- (C) engineer
- (D) curator

18. We paid the cost of our purchase to the \_\_\_\_\_.

- (A) cashier
- (B) salesperson
- (C) waiter
- (D) accountant

19. Mother ordered two kilograms of mutton from the \_\_\_\_\_.

- (A) butcher
- (B) chef
- (C) grocer
- (D) florist

20. To learn the skills to be a good baker, David had to be a/an \_\_\_\_\_ to the chief baker for a year.

- (A) waiter
- (B) helper
- (C) guard
- (D) apprentice

21. J.K. Rowling is the \_\_\_\_\_ of the hugely popular Harry Potter books.

- (A) creator
- (B) curator
- (C) composer
- (D) author

22. The whole football team was punished by the \_\_\_\_\_ for misbehaving during practice.

- (A) coach
- (B) teacher
- (C) instructor
- (D) apprentice

23. Although it was raining heavily, the \_\_\_\_\_ still went out to sea in his fishing boat.

- (A) fisherman
- (B) fishmonger
- (C) sailors
- (D) scuba diver

24. The \_\_\_\_\_ of the Freddy Frog books drew very nice pictures of the frog.

- (A) author
- (B) editor
- (C) writer
- (D) illustrator

### EXERCISE 16

**Fill in the blank in each sentence with the most appropriate word.**

1. The museum's \_\_\_\_\_ explained the origin of some of the exhibits at the museum to the tourists.

- (A) caretaker
- (B) manager
- (C) engineer
- (D) curator

2. We paid the cost of our purchase to the \_\_\_\_\_.

- (A) cashier
- (B) salesperson
- (C) waiter
- (D) accountant

3. Mother ordered two kilograms of mutton from the \_\_\_\_\_.

- (A) butcher
- (B) chef
- (C) grocer
- (D) florist

4. To learn the skills to be a good baker, David had to be a/an \_\_\_\_\_ to the chief baker for a year.

- (A) waiter
- (B) helper
- (C) guard
- (D) apprentice

5. J.K. Rowling is the \_\_\_\_\_ of the hugely popular Harry Potter books.

- (A) creator
- (B) curator
- (C) composer
- (D) author

6. The whole football team was punished by the \_\_\_\_\_ for misbehaving during practice.

- (A) coach
- (B) teacher
- (C) instructor
- (D) apprentice

7. Although it was raining heavily, the \_\_\_\_\_ still went out to sea in his fishing boat.

- (A) fisherman
- (B) fishmonger
- (C) sailors
- (D) scuba diver

8. The \_\_\_\_\_ of the Freddy Frog books drew very nice pictures of the frog.

- (A) author
- (B) editor
- (C) writer
- (D) illustrator

9. Yusuf, Mr Jack's \_\_\_\_\_, has driven him everywhere in Singapore.

- (A) chauffeur
- (B) chef
- (C) butler
- (D) helper

10. My father used a/an \_\_\_\_\_ to make our new home look nicer.

- (A) architect
- (B) engineer
- (C) interior designer
- (D) maid

11. The \_\_\_\_\_ asked me whether I was interested in buying the wallet.

- (A) salesman
- (B) cashier
- (C) cobbler
- (D) waiter

12. We bought some roses from the \_\_\_\_\_ for our mother.

- (A) hawker
- (B) florist
- (C) designer
- (D) gardener

13. Designing buildings is the job of a/an \_\_\_\_\_.

- (A) architect
- (B) engineer

- (C) designer
- (D) builder

14. Fresh, green vegetables can be found at the \_\_\_\_\_ stall.

- (A) butcher's
- (B) grocer's
- (C) hawker's
- (D) cobbler's

15. The \_\_\_\_\_ announced the name of the next performer for the show.

- (A) actor
- (B) announcer
- (C) compere
- (D) juggler

16. The \_\_\_\_\_ made the cake for my sister's birthday according to my instructions.

- (A) baker
- (B) chef
- (C) chauffeur
- (D) cook

17. George was advised by the \_\_\_\_\_ to take better care of his teeth.

- (A) dentist
- (B) nurse
- (C) doctor
- (D) surgeon

18. We bought some fresh apples and oranges from the \_\_\_\_\_.

- (A) florist
- (B) grocer
- (C) fruiterer
- (D) hawker

19. Rahul is the famous \_\_\_\_\_ whose paintings have been sold for millions of dollars.

(A) sculptor

- (B) artist
- (C) designer
- (D) performer

20. Benny went to the \_\_\_\_\_ to get his hair cut.

- (A) barber
- (B) hairdresser
- (C) haberdasher
- (D) hatter

21. The \_\_\_\_\_ wrote an interesting article about the war in Iraq.

- (A) author
- (B) journalist
- (C) illustrator
- (D) composer

22. \_\_\_\_\_ Albert cooked a delicious mutton dish for us at the restaurant.

- (A) Chef
- (B) Cook
- (C) Chauffeur
- (D) Waiter

23. The \_\_\_\_\_ of the new song for the club is Terrence.

- (A) author
- (B) writer
- (C) creator
- (D) composer

24. A \_\_\_\_\_, who looks after sick people, needs to be very patient.

- (A) doctor
- (B) surgeon
- (C) nurse
- (D) dentist

### EXERCISE 17

**Fill in the blank in each sentence with the most appropriate word.**

1. Madam Lim, the \_\_\_\_\_, cuts the cloth to size and starts sewing.

- (A) cutter
- (B) saleswoman
- (C) tailor
- (D) dresser

2. We called for the \_\_\_\_\_ when the lights in our house went out.

- (A) technician
- (B) engineer
- (C) electrician
- (D) mechanic

3. Wong works as a/an \_\_\_\_\_ for the furniture company. He sends the furniture to the customers' homes.

- (A) delivery man
- (B) postman
- (C) office boy
- (D) salesperson

4. The \_\_\_\_\_ sentenced the criminal to five years in jail.

- (A) lawyer
- (B) policeman
- (C) victim
- (D) judge

5. "Time's up. Put your pens down. I will come around and collect your papers," announced the \_\_\_\_\_.

- (A) tester
- (B) invigilator
- (C) principal
- (D) hostess

6. Although the weather was stormy, the \_\_\_\_\_ managed to land the airplane safely.

- (A) pilot
- (B) driver
- (C) chauffeur
- (D) astronaut

7. The \_\_\_\_\_ blew the whistle when he spotted a foul committed by one of the players during the match.

- (A) umpire

- (B) coach  
(C) trainer  
(D) teacher
8. We gave our orders to the friendly \_\_\_\_\_ in the restaurant.  
(A) waiter  
(B) helper  
(C) salesman  
(D) cashier
9. The flowers in the school grew so well under the care of the \_\_\_\_\_.  
(A) gardener  
(B) florist  
(C) botanist  
(D) cleaner
10. Fred the \_\_\_\_\_ herded all the sheep under his charge and brought them safely down the hill.  
(A) farmer  
(B) shepherd  
(C) shearer  
(D) zookeeper
11. Since we lost our house keys, we had to call the \_\_\_\_\_ to break our lock.  
(A) locksmith  
(B) mechanic  
(C) blacksmith  
(D) jockey
12. The manager asked his \_\_\_\_\_ to type out the letter for him immediately.  
(A) secretary  
(B) helper  
(C) treasurer  
(D) security guard
13. Cleaning and cooking are part of Gina's duties as a \_\_\_\_\_.  
(A) domestic helper  
(B) cleaner  
(C) chef  
(D) waiter
14. The \_\_\_\_\_ showed us to our seats in the darkened theater.  
(A) waiter  
(B) attendant  
(C) usher  
(D) actors
15. Taking the piece of wood, the \_\_\_\_\_ started to create a work of art.  
(A) artist  
(B) painter  
(C) carpenter  
(D) sculptor
16. Her wedding pictures were taken by a professional \_\_\_\_\_.  
(A) photographer  
(B) pilot  
(C) potter  
(D) porter

17. Mother lost her \_\_\_\_\_ of keys at the market.

- (A) bouquet
- (B) bunch
- (C) group
- (D) collection

18. Look at that \_\_\_\_\_ of soldiers. They are marching so smartly.

- (A) troupe
- (B) troop
- (C) group
- (D) army

19. Father found a \_\_\_\_\_ of mice near the garden fence.

- (A) litter
- (B) nest
- (C) hive
- (D) brood

20. The naughty boys were attacked by a \_\_\_\_\_ of bees.

- (A) flock
- (B) swarm
- (C) pack
- (D) nest

21. We threw away the old \_\_\_\_\_ of drawers and replaced it with a new one.

- (A) stack
- (B) board
- (C) chest
- (D) bundle

22. Sergeant Alan managed to catch the \_\_\_\_\_ of thieves who were targeting homes around this area.

- (A) group
- (B) band
- (C) gang
- (D) tribe

23. Fred was very upset when he lost his \_\_\_\_\_ of stamps.

- (A) album
- (B) stack
- (C) group
- (D) collection

24. The \_\_\_\_\_ of spectators cheered loudly when the national team came onto the field.

- (A) crowd
- (B) group
- (C) choir
- (D) party

### EXERCISE 18

**Fill in the blank in each sentence with the most appropriate word.**

1. The \_\_\_\_\_ of ants scurried into their nests.

- (A) group
- (B) hill

- (C) army  
(D) horde
2. Principal Tan congratulated the \_\_\_\_\_ of athletes on winning the championship.  
(A) group  
(B) team  
(C) batch  
(D) troop
3. The hikers discovered a \_\_\_\_\_ of bats in he cave.  
(A) swarm  
(B) deck  
(C) bevy  
(D) colony
4. We saw a \_\_\_\_\_ of buffaloes in the field.  
(A) group  
(B) herd  
(C) flock  
(D) flight
5. My dog gave birth to a \_\_\_\_\_ of puppies.  
(A) brood  
(B) nest  
(C) bevy  
(D) litter
6. We bought a \_\_\_\_\_ of playing cards for the party.  
(A) deck  
(B) sack  
(C) bunch  
(D) packet
7. The boys gathered a \_\_\_\_\_ of information from the Internet.  
(A) horde  
(B) mountain  
(C) wealth  
(D) cache
8. Singapore Airlines has a large \_\_\_\_\_ of aircrafts.  
(A) fleet  
(B) flight  
(C) group  
(D) board
9. The hunter carried a \_\_\_\_\_ of arrows on his back on his hunting.  
(A) band  
(B) pack  
(C) bundle  
(D) quiver
10. Mother took out a \_\_\_\_\_ of bread she was toasting from the toaster.  
(A) piece  
(B) slice  
(C) bundle  
(D) batch

11. The school has a large \_\_\_\_\_ of books in the resource room.  
(A) library  
(B) bundle  
(C) stack  
(D) pile
12. A \_\_\_\_\_ of cash was found hidden under the dustbin behind my house.  
(A) bundle  
(B) pile  
(C) fleet  
(D) bunch
13. My aunt's rose bushes were destroyed by a/an \_\_\_\_\_ of caterpillars.  
(A) army  
(B) swarm  
(C) nest  
(D) flock
14. Robbers ran away with a \_\_\_\_\_ of jewels from the jewelry shop.  
(A) bundle  
(B) sack  
(C) cache  
(D) ring
15. Mr Tan's delivery company has a \_\_\_\_\_ of lorries.  
(A) group  
(B) flight  
(C) convoy  
(D) batch
16. The library has a/an \_\_\_\_\_ of maps in its reference section.  
(A) stack  
(B) pile  
(C) collection  
(D) atlas
17. Robin Hood and his \_\_\_\_\_ of men robbed from the rich and gave to the poor.  
(A) group  
(B) troupe  
(C) troop  
(D) band
18. The old man left behind a \_\_\_\_\_ of art pieces when he died.  
(A) group  
(B) carton  
(C) collection  
(D) pile
19. When the ship arrived in Singapore, the \_\_\_\_\_ of sailors disembarked and went shopping.  
(A) fleet  
(B) crew  
(C) board  
(D) clutch
20. A \_\_\_\_\_ of soldiers were sent to the area where there was fighting.  
(A) crew

- (B) squad
- (C) band
- (D) troupe

21. Astronomers observe and record the movements of the \_\_\_\_\_ of stars.

- (A) clutch
- (B) clutter
- (C) collection
- (D) galaxy

22. Tina stumbled down a \_\_\_\_\_ of stair and broke her ankle.

- (A) pile
- (B) row
- (C) block
- (D) flight

23. We made use of a \_\_\_\_\_ of camels to travel across the desert.

- (A) pack
- (B) swarm
- (C) pride
- (D) flock

24. The girls saw a \_\_\_\_\_ of butterflies at the garden early this morning.

- (A) flight
- (B) nest
- (C) cluster
- (D) pack

### **EXERCISE 19**

**Fill in the blank in each sentence with the most appropriate word.**

1. Mother bought a \_\_\_\_\_ of eggs from the farmer.

- (A) packet
- (B) clutch
- (C) cluster
- (D) batch

2. Driving down in Australia, we came across a \_\_\_\_\_ of kangaroos in a field.

- (A) herd
- (B) band
- (C) troop
- (D) pride

3. Indonesia is made up of a \_\_\_\_\_ of islands, both big and small.

- (A) chain
- (B) bunch
- (C) colony
- (D) collection

4. At the wedding, the \_\_\_\_\_ of ladies were all dressed in glittering clothes.

- (A) troop
- (B) cohort
- (C) bevy
- (D) cluster

5. Farmer Tim's crops were destroyed by a \_\_\_\_\_ of locusts.

- (A) plague
- (B) swarm
- (C) nest
- (D) flock

6. A/An \_\_\_\_\_ of onlookers gathered at the accident site.

- (A) group
- (B) crowd
- (C) congregation
- (D) assembly

7. \_\_\_\_\_ of penguins are usually found in the cold regions of the world.

- (A) Prides
- (B) Troops
- (C) Flocks
- (D) Colonies

8. \_\_\_\_\_ of large frogs can be found in the Amazon Jungle.

- (A) Armies
- (B) Clusters
- (C) Swarms
- (D) Broods

9. The choir sounds like a \_\_\_\_\_ of angels; they sing so beautifully !

- (A) chorus
- (B) fellow
- (C) group
- (D) band

10. Mrs Lim's \_\_\_\_\_ of flowers in the garden was destroyed in the thunderstorm last night.

- (A) bunch
- (B) bouquet
- (C) stalk
- (D) bed

11. The \_\_\_\_\_ of tourists bought some souvenirs from the gift shop at the museum.

- (A) flock
- (B) gang
- (C) herd
- (D) bunch

12. We were pleased when the \_\_\_\_\_ of workmen finished renovating our house ahead of time.

- (A) board
- (B) gang
- (C) brood
- (D) batch

13. Grand Motoring has a \_\_\_\_\_ of cars for hire.

- (A) fleet
- (B) flight
- (C) network
- (D) collection

14. The old wooden hut was hidden by the \_\_\_\_\_ of trees.

- (A) clump
- (B) hedge
- (C) stack
- (D) ring

15. Nina accidentally broke her \_\_\_\_\_ of pearls this morning.

- (A) string
- (B) rosary
- (C) bunch
- (D) row

16. Benny and Fred collected a large \_\_\_\_\_ of firewood and started to build a fire near their campsite.

- (A) stack
- (B) bundle
- (C) cluster
- (D) pack

17. Plans were made by the \_\_\_\_\_ of students to surprise their favorite teacher on Teacher's Day.

- (A) class
- (B) batch
- (C) board
- (D) company

18. A/An \_\_\_\_\_ of policemen was mobilized to look for the kidnapper.

- (A) troop
- (B) army
- (C) band
- (D) posse

19. As the speech ended, the \_\_\_\_\_ of worshippers stood up and sang.

- (A) audience
- (B) crowd
- (C) spectators
- (D) congregation

20. We watched in awe as a \_\_\_\_\_ of antelopes ran across the plains.

- (A) herd
- (B) pride
- (C) team
- (D) brood

21. A \_\_\_\_\_ of dolphins followed the cruise ship as it sailed through the waters.

- (A) school
- (B) band
- (C) flock
- (D) flight

22. The two lost children trembled in fear as they heard the howling of a \_\_\_\_\_ of wolves.

- (A) herd
- (B) pride
- (C) pack
- (D) horde

23. We took pictures of the \_\_\_\_\_ of mountains; it was so majestic.

- (A) group
- (B) range

- (C) row
- (D) band

24. His case was brought before a \_\_\_\_\_ of experts who will evaluate it.

- (A) board
- (B) crew
- (C) staff
- (D) panel

## EXERCISE 20

**Fill in the blank in each sentence with the most appropriate word.**

1. The girls were helping to shell the \_\_\_\_\_ of peas for dinner.

- (A) pods
- (B) bundles
- (C) stalks
- (D) bunch

2. He took out his new \_\_\_\_\_ of shoes and put it on.

- (A) pair
- (B) set
- (C) cluster
- (D) pack

3. Every morning, we wake up to the music of a \_\_\_\_\_ of jays in the trees.

- (A) band
- (B) crew
- (C) flight
- (D) bevy

4. Children love to feed the \_\_\_\_\_ of swans in the pond.

- (A) herd
- (B) bevy
- (C) flight
- (D) bank

5. Mother bought a \_\_\_\_\_ of grapes at the market.

- (A) bundle
- (B) string
- (C) cluster
- (D) bunch

6. The \_\_\_\_\_ of actors rehearsed the play that they are going to stage daily.

- (A) cast
- (B) group
- (C) bevy
- (D) band

7. A \_\_\_\_\_ of snakes was discovered in a bush in the garden.

- (A) nest
- (B) cluster
- (C) colony
- (D) flight

8. Ramesh keeps a \_\_\_\_\_ of hamsters in his house.

- (A) bunch

- (B) herd
- (C) nest
- (D) horde

9. The whole village was excited when the gypsies arrived in their colorful \_\_\_\_\_.

- (A) homes
- (B) wagons
- (C) cars
- (D) caravans

10. Farmer Brown shooed all the hens into their \_\_\_\_\_ before night falls.

- (A) nest
- (B) bran
- (C) coop
- (D) yard

11. Be careful ! Don't go into the lion's \_\_\_\_\_. It might attack you.

- (A) den
- (B) cave
- (C) burrow
- (D) lodge

12. Police managed to catch the mad man who was attacking the pedestrian and sent him to the \_\_\_\_\_.

- (A) hospital
- (B) asylum
- (C) morgue
- (D) monastery

13. On seeing the cat, the mouse scurried into its \_\_\_\_\_ and hid there.

- (A) nest
- (B) hutch
- (C) burrow
- (D) pen

14. Sergeant Omar ordered all the soldiers to return to their \_\_\_\_\_ after training.

- (A) homes
- (B) chalets
- (C) dens
- (D) barracks

15. Nancy is now living in a \_\_\_\_\_ as she is studying to be a nun.

- (A) church
- (B) temple
- (C) churchyard
- (D) convent

16. Harry kept his pet rabbit in a \_\_\_\_\_.

- (A) burrow
- (B) kennel
- (C) basket
- (D) hutch

17. The mole scurried into its \_\_\_\_\_ when it sensed danger.

- (A) nest
- (B) hole

- (C) burrow
- (D) den

18. Farmer Tony went to the pigs' \_\_\_\_\_ to give the pigs their food.

- (A) stable
- (B) barn
- (C) coop
- (D) sty

19. The ant got caught in the spider's \_\_\_\_\_ and could not escape.

- (A) lair
- (B) web
- (C) nest
- (D) hole

20. Beavers live in homes called \_\_\_\_\_ in the wild.

- (A) warrens
- (B) dens
- (C) lofts
- (D) lodges

21. The criminal was found guilty and sent to \_\_\_\_\_.

- (A) home
- (B) prison
- (C) monastery
- (D) palace

22. The pigeon flew towards its \_\_\_\_\_ in the tree.

- (A) hive
- (B) nest
- (C) eyrie
- (D) hole

23. Scorpions can naturally be found in the \_\_\_\_\_.

- (A) forests
- (B) deserts
- (C) arctic
- (D) jungles

24. Gypsies travel from place to place in \_\_\_\_\_.

- (A) caravans
- (B) wagons
- (C) trucks
- (D) igloos

## **EXERCISE 21**

**Fill in the blank in each sentence with the most appropriate word.**

1. The dog was resting in its \_\_\_\_\_.

- (A) nest
- (B) kennel
- (C) lair
- (D) burrow

2. The wolf headed back to its \_\_\_\_\_ after hunting.

- (A) den
- (B) cave

- (C) lair  
(D) stable

3. At the farm, horses are kept in a \_\_\_\_\_.

- (A) stable  
(B) pen  
(C) sty  
(D) coop

4. Nancy went to live in a \_\_\_\_\_ when she decided to become a nun.

- (A) monastery  
(B) temple  
(C) mosque  
(D) convent

5. Bats are normally found in \_\_\_\_\_.

- (A) trees  
(B) caves  
(C) holes  
(D) lairs

6. In the \_\_\_\_\_, we can find alligators and frogs.

- (A) swamp  
(B) desert  
(C) pond  
(D) river

7. There are a few monkeys living in the \_\_\_\_\_ tree behind my house.

- (A) river  
(B) tree  
(C) hole  
(D) warren

8. Pet rabbits are kept in \_\_\_\_\_.

- (A) kennel  
(B) warrens  
(C) holes  
(D) hutches

9. We were surprised to find out that Red Indians live in tents called \_\_\_\_\_.

- (A) wigwams  
(B) tents  
(C) forms  
(D) cottages

10. Some animals have \_\_\_\_\_ as homes, for example, the snail.

- (A) scales  
(B) shells  
(C) lairs  
(D) sties

11. A tiger returns to its \_\_\_\_\_ to rest after a hard day of hunting food.

- (A) den  
(B) stable  
(C) lair  
(D) lodge

12. Mother found some mouse \_\_\_\_\_ in the garden.

- (A) nests
- (B) burrows
- (C) hives
- (D) cells

13. Pat's pet owl returns to its \_\_\_\_\_ every night.

- (A) nest
- (B) barn
- (C) tree
- (D) coop

14. The pigs in the \_\_\_\_\_ squealed loudly when the farmer tried to catch them.

- (A) sty
- (B) barn
- (C) stable
- (D) pen

15. Lumberjacks live in \_\_\_\_\_ when they are working in the forest.

- (A) caravans
- (B) wagons
- (C) camps
- (D) log cabins

16. The king and queen returned to their \_\_\_\_\_ after traveling all over the country.

- (A) apartment
- (B) cabin
- (C) castle
- (D) caravan

17. The alligator's \_\_\_\_\_ are starting to appear from the cracked eggs.

- (A) babies
- (B) hatchings
- (C) pups
- (D) chicks

18. Hens, \_\_\_\_\_ and chicks were pecking away at the grains the man threw for them.

- (A) bulls
- (B) cocks
- (C) drakes
- (D) boars

19. The cow gave birth to a \_\_\_\_\_ this morning.

- (A) calf
- (B) doe
- (C) kid
- (D) foal

20. A school of dolphins and their \_\_\_\_\_ were seen trailing the yacht in the sea.

- (A) pups
- (B) fry
- (C) foals
- (D) cubs

21. The duck and \_\_\_\_\_ watched their ducklings swimming in the pond.

- (A) duckling
- (B) doe
- (C) cygnet

- (D) drake  
22. Many bear \_\_\_\_\_ have been bred in captivity in the zoo.  
(A) calves  
(B) kids  
(C) cubs  
(D) pups  
23. The vixen licked its \_\_\_\_\_ lovingly.  
(A) kid  
(B) doe  
(C) calf  
(D) pup  
24. Farmer Ang owns a camel that had given birth to three \_\_\_\_\_.  
(A) babies  
(B) vixens  
(C) kids  
(D) calves
- EXERCISE 22**
- Fill in the blank in each sentence with the most appropriate word.**
1. The mother goose and her \_\_\_\_\_ waddled together to the pond.  
(A) goslings  
(B) cygnets  
(C) foals  
(D) calves  
2. Mary found a nest of owls and their baby \_\_\_\_\_ on the tree.  
(A) owlets  
(B) nestlings  
(C) kids  
(D) wrens  
3. I kept my pet rabbit and her \_\_\_\_\_ in the yard behind my house.  
(A) babies  
(B) pups  
(C) foals  
(D) bunnies  
4. People came to the park to watch the swans and their \_\_\_\_\_ swim gracefully in the pond.  
(A) colts  
(B) goslings  
(C) cygnets  
(D) ducklings  
5. Farmer Brown's sow gave birth to a \_\_\_\_\_ this morning.  
(A) pig  
(B) suckling  
(C) pup  
(D) cub  
6. The fawn and its mother, a beautiful \_\_\_\_\_, were prancing happily in the field.  
(A) fox  
(B) bear

- (C) deer
- (D) kangaroo

7.The kangaroo carried its \_\_\_\_\_ in its pouch everywhere it goes.

- (A) joey
- (B) cub
- (C) kid
- (D) foal

8.We found a dead cub near the forest. The \_\_\_\_\_ must be feeling very sad.

- (A) lioness
- (B) elephant
- (C) dog
- (D) giraffe

9.Look at that cute \_\_\_\_\_ clinging to its mother, the koala.

- (A) pup
- (B) joey
- (C) calf
- (D) chick

10. The female mole is feeding its \_\_\_\_\_ with some food.

- (A) pup
- (B) gosling
- (C) kid
- (D) calf

11. We looked at the female moose teaching its \_\_\_\_\_ how to hunt.

- (A) calf
- (B) foal
- (C) sow
- (D) boar

12.Four \_\_\_\_\_ have hatched from the ostrich's eggs.

- (A) chicks
- (B) joeys
- (C) ducklings
- (D) foals

13.The male ox, called a \_\_\_\_\_ and the cow are grazing in the field.

- (A) boar
- (B) bull
- (C) cock
- (D) buck

14.The male penguin carries its \_\_\_\_\_ on its feet everywhere it goes.

- (A) fry
- (B) chick
- (C) nestling
- (D) pup

15.The pet pigeon's eggs hatched last night and now there are three \_\_\_\_\_ in the cage too.

- (A) chicks
- (B) squabs
- (C) fowls
- (D) pups

16.A male pig is called a \_\_\_\_\_.

- (A) bear
- (B) boar
- (C) sow
- (D) bull

17. Look at that cute \_\_\_\_\_ clinging to its mother, the koala.

- (A) pup
- (B) joey
- (C) calf
- (D) chick

18. The female mole is feeding its \_\_\_\_\_ with some food.

- (A) pup
- (B) gosling
- (C) kid
- (D) calf

19. We looked at the female moose teaching its \_\_\_\_\_ how to hunt.

- (A) calf
- (B) foal
- (C) sow
- (D) boar

20. Four \_\_\_\_\_ have hatched from the ostrich's eggs.

- (A) chicks
- (B) joeys
- (C) ducklings
- (D) foals

21. The male ox, called a \_\_\_\_\_ and the cow are grazing in the field.

- (A) boar
- (B) bull
- (C) cock
- (D) buck

22. The male penguin carries its \_\_\_\_\_ on its feet everywhere it goes.

- (A) fry
- (B) chick
- (C) nestling
- (D) pup

23. The pet pigeon's eggs hatched last night and now there are three \_\_\_\_\_ in the cage too.

- (A) chicks
- (B) squabs
- (C) fowls
- (D) pups

24. A male pig is called a \_\_\_\_\_.

- (A) bear
- (B) boar
- (C) sow
- (D) bull

### EXERCISE 23

**Fill in the blank in each sentence with the most appropriate word.**

1. Female rabbits are called \_\_\_\_\_.

- (A) does
- (B) sows
- (C) hens
- (D) fowls

2. The ape and its \_\_\_\_\_ are swinging around in the tree.

- (A) pup
- (B) fawn
- (C) calf
- (D) baby

3. \_\_\_\_\_ is what a male donkey is known as.

- (A) Jack
- (B) Boar
- (C) Bull
- (D) Cock

4. The beaver and its family of five \_\_\_\_\_ are heading for the nearby bushes.

- (A) chicks
- (B) foals
- (C) pups
- (D) kittens

5. The \_\_\_\_\_ goat and the \_\_\_\_\_ goat are fighting with each other.

- (A) cow ... bull
- (B) nanny ... billy
- (C) sow ... hog
- (D) bull ... boar

6. Owls give birth to \_\_\_\_\_.

- (A) pups
- (B) owlets
- (C) kids
- (D) cubs

7. The spectators watched the elephant and its \_\_\_\_\_ wading in the water.

- (A) baby
- (B) pup
- (C) colt
- (D) calf

8. My aunt gave birth a few weeks ago and she named her \_\_\_\_\_ Andrea.

- (A) baby
- (B) pup
- (C) joey
- (D) kitten

9. Hunters could not go near the injured leopard and its \_\_\_\_\_.

- (A) pup
- (B) cub
- (C) calf
- (D) kid

10. Up in the tree, the monkey could be seen cradling its \_\_\_\_\_ in its arms.

- (A) kid
- (B) puppy

- (C) infant
- (D) eaglet

11. The male horse is also called a \_\_\_\_\_.

- (A) boar
- (B) billy
- (C) foal
- (D) stallion

12. Lilly watched as the hawk flew back to its nest to feed its \_\_\_\_\_.

- (A) eyas
- (B) nestling
- (C) kitten
- (D) pup

13. Fishermen found the dead shark and its \_\_\_\_\_ on the beach.

- (A) cub
- (B) fry
- (C) pup
- (D) kit

14. A herd of cattle and their \_\_\_\_\_ were seen near the river.

- (A) calves
- (B) kits
- (C) cubs
- (D) foals

15. The female bear, called a \_\_\_\_\_, brought some honey for its \_\_\_\_\_.

- (A) doe ... cub
- (B) sow ... doe
- (C) sow ... cub
- (D) sow ... calf

16. The \_\_\_\_\_ is feeding its cub.

- (A) deer
- (B) elephant
- (C) she-wolf
- (D) bily-goat

17. The \_\_\_\_\_ in the nest wait eagerly for the eagle to bring them food.

- (A) cubs
- (B) pups
- (C) kids
- (D) eaglets

18. The male elephant, called a \_\_\_\_\_, used its trunk to lift the log.

- (A) boar
- (B) cock
- (C) buck
- (D) bull

19. My neighbor found some grasshoppers and their \_\_\_\_\_ in her garden.

- (A) wrigglers
- (B) larvae
- (C) grubs
- (D) nymphs

20. The female buffalo and its \_\_\_\_\_ waded through the river.

- (A) cub
- (B) kid
- (C) whelp
- (D) calf

21. The \_\_\_\_\_ rammed its antlers into the hunter's stomach.

- (A) stag
- (B) boar
- (C) bull
- (D) stallion

22. Some butterflies and their \_\_\_\_\_ were found in the garden.

- (A) caterpillars
- (B) nymphs
- (C) grubs
- (D) wrigglers

23. The \_\_\_\_\_ trotted after the deer, as they looked for food.

- (A) pup
- (B) calf
- (C) fawn
- (D) fry

24. We found an owl's nest and there were a few \_\_\_\_\_ in them.

- (A) kids
- (B) chicks
- (C) goslings
- (D) owlets

#### **EXERCISE 24**

**Fill in the blank in each sentence with the most appropriate word.**

1. Every morning I wake up to the sound of the rooster \_\_\_\_\_.

- (A) bleating
- (B) mooing
- (C) cackle
- (D) crowing

2. Terry's cat \_\_\_\_\_ softly as he rubs its stomach gently.

- (A) groans
- (B) purrs
- (C) coos
- (D) hoots

3. During the animal show, the elephant \_\_\_\_\_ loudly, frightening some children.

- (A) brayed
- (B) barked
- (C) bays
- (D) trumpeted

4. Residents of this block are irritated by the \_\_\_\_\_ of the crows every morning.

- (A) whistling
- (B) chirping
- (C) cawing
- (D) twittering

5. In the park, the \_\_\_\_\_ monkeys will become angry if we don't feed them.

- (A) screaming
- (B) squeaking
- (C) croaking
- (D) chattering

6. The sound of wolves \_\_\_\_\_ in the jungle really frightened the lost kids.

- (A) barking
- (B) howling
- (C) growling
- (D) bellowing

7. It's nice to hear the \_\_\_\_\_ of the sparrows in the morning.

- (A) chirping
- (B) humming
- (C) bleating
- (D) squealing

8. Farmer George was alerted to the fire in the barn by the horse's \_\_\_\_\_.

- (A) neigh
- (B) bray
- (C) bellow
- (D) howl

9. When the ducks saw the farmer approaching, their \_\_\_\_\_ grew louder.

- (A) gurgling
- (B) quacking
- (C) cooing
- (D) growling

10. The loud \_\_\_\_\_ of the guard dog scared the robbers away.

- (A) howling
- (B) growling
- (C) barking
- (D) crowing

11. As the man put more things onto the donkey's back, it \_\_\_\_\_ loudly.

- (A) neighed
- (B) screamed
- (C) brayed
- (D) bayed

12. We traced the mouse to its nest by listening to its \_\_\_\_\_.

- (A) squeaks
- (B) mewing
- (C) shrieks
- (D) squawks

13. Parrots \_\_\_\_\_ loudly as Harry entered the pet shop.

- (A) squeaked
- (B) chirped
- (C) cooed
- (D) screeched

14. The pig \_\_\_\_\_ and slipped away as Greg tried to catch it.

- (A) hissed
- (B) squealed

- (C) growled
- (D) bellows

15. The bees' \_\_\_\_\_ could be heard from afar as they buzzed around the newly built hive.

- (A) hums
- (B) hisses
- (C) coos
- (D) whistles

16. As it charged at the intruder, the bull let out a loud \_\_\_\_\_.

- (A) roar
- (B) groan
- (C) bray
- (D) bellow

17. As they are being sheared, the lambs \_\_\_\_\_ loudly in fear.

- (A) moo
- (B) bleat
- (C) caw
- (D) roar

18. King Harry is always soothed by the \_\_\_\_\_ of the lark.

- (A) singing
- (B) cooing
- (C) screeching
- (D) hooting

19. Tina saw some flies \_\_\_\_\_ around the food at the hawker center.

- (A) hissing
- (B) whistling
- (C) buzzing
- (D) cooing

20. As Yati walked by the pond, she could hear the \_\_\_\_\_ of the frogs.

- (A) braying
- (B) croaking
- (C) bleating
- (D) crowing

21. The hen \_\_\_\_\_ noisily at its chicks when they went too far from her.

- (A) crowded
- (B) cooed
- (C) cawed
- (D) clucked

22. Sounds of \_\_\_\_\_ hyenas could be heard in the desert at night.

- (A) singing
- (B) barking
- (C) howling
- (D) laughing

23. The \_\_\_\_\_ of the wren outside my window woke me.

- (A) crowing
- (B) lowing
- (C) warbling
- (D) cooing

24. When the moon is full, wolves in the jungle can be heard \_\_\_\_\_ at it.

- (A) barking
- (B) yelling
- (C) screaming
- (D) howling

**EXERCISE 25**

**Fill in the blank in each sentence with the most appropriate word.**

1. Mike backed away from the \_\_\_\_\_ snake.

- (A) hissing
- (B) buzzing
- (C) howling
- (D) lowing

2. The sight of the turkey \_\_\_\_\_ around the pen made the children laugh.

- (A) gobbling
- (B) crowing
- (C) clucking
- (D) quacking

3. Henry puts his hand in the cage and picked up the \_\_\_\_\_ rabbit.

- (A) squealing
- (B) squeaking
- (C) cawing
- (D) bleating

4. Miss Tan just taught us that giraffes \_\_\_\_\_ when they are scared.

- (A) bleat
- (B) low
- (C) crow
- (D) roar

5. \_\_\_\_\_ seagulls swooped down onto the beach as we watched over the cliff.

- (A) Chattering
- (B) Rumbling
- (C) Screaming
- (D) Trumpeting

6. The \_\_\_\_\_ monkeys fought over the food the visitors threw to them.

- (A) gibbering
- (B) screaming
- (C) croaking
- (D) screeching

7. The \_\_\_\_\_ of the cows could be heard as the sky turned dark.

- (A) mooing
- (B) bellowing
- (C) braying
- (D) bleating

8. The horse \_\_\_\_\_ in pain as the vet checked its injured hoof.

- (A) whinnied
- (B) brayed
- (C) crowed
- (D) cawed

9. Troy and Danny ran away, as fast as they could, from the \_\_\_\_\_ bear.

- (A) braying
- (B) howling
- (C) bellowing
- (D) growling

10. Listening to the birds \_\_\_\_\_ is very relaxing.

- (A) chirping
- (B) purring
- (C) humming
- (D) hooting

11. When the elephant was attacked by the hunter, it \_\_\_\_\_ in anger.

- (A) bellowed
- (B) screamed
- (C) brayed
- (D) trumpeted

12. At dawn, the rooster \_\_\_\_\_ loudly.

- (A) cawed
- (B) cooed
- (C) crowed
- (D) croaks

13. The swallow \_\_\_\_\_ softly as it dives for food in the lake.

- (A) coos
- (B) screams
- (C) hums
- (D) twitters

14. Princess Aurora awoke when she heard the \_\_\_\_\_ of the swan. It was in trouble !

- (A) cry
- (B) hoot
- (C) quack
- (D) warble

15. The \_\_\_\_\_ of the grasshoppers in my uncle's garden kept me awake all night.

- (A) chirping
- (B) cawing
- (C) chattering
- (D) cooing

16. Fred was startled to hear his pet guinea pig \_\_\_\_\_; it was stuck in its wheel !

- (A) scream
- (B) squeak
- (C) purr
- (D) chatter

17. The deer \_\_\_\_\_ sweetly as it gambols around in the open field.

- (A) sings
- (B) neighs
- (C) bells
- (D) cries

18. Crows \_\_\_\_\_ in the early morning is a problem in my area.

- (A) crowing
- (B) cawing

- (C) cooing
- (D) chirping

19. Every night, Kelly hears the \_\_\_\_\_ of the owl in the woods nearby.

- (A) tooting
- (B) cooing
- (C) chirping
- (D) hooting

20. Randy is trying to get his \_\_\_\_\_ parrot to stop being so noisy.

- (A) screeching
- (B) hooting
- (C) chirping
- (D) cawing

21. The \_\_\_\_\_ peacocks scared the children who were visiting the zoo.

- (A) screeching
- (B) clucking
- (C) screaming
- (D) quacking

22. Stray cats love to rub themselves against Aisyah's legs and \_\_\_\_\_ contentedly.

- (A) bum
- (B) purr
- (C) bleat
- (D) coo

23. The audience at the circus gasped when the lion let out a mighty \_\_\_\_\_.

- (A) growl
- (B) bark
- (C) bellow
- (D) roar

24. The pigs \_\_\_\_\_ with pleasure as they gobbled down their food.

- (A) bleated
- (B) grunted
- (C) purred
- (D) growled

## EXERCISE 26

**Fill in the blank in each sentence with the most appropriate word.**

1. During the fire in the stable, the horses \_\_\_\_\_ in fright and tried to escape.

- (A) whinnied
- (B) bleats
- (C) screams
- (D) bellowed

2. The goats \_\_\_\_\_ noisily as they made their way down the mountains.

- (A) neighed
- (B) brayed
- (C) bays
- (D) bleated

3. In the documentary, vultures could be seen \_\_\_\_\_ as they swoop down on the carcass.

- (A) screaming

- (B) shrieking
- (C) cawing
- (D) crowing

4. Jackie threw the grains towards the \_\_\_\_\_ chicks.

- (A) chirping
- (B) cooing
- (C) cheeping
- (D) clucking

5. The couple fed the \_\_\_\_\_ doves near the church.

- (A) cooing
- (B) cawing
- (C) crowing
- (D) croaking

6. Swarms of flies can be seen \_\_\_\_\_ over the dead animal.

- (A) humming
- (B) buzzing
- (C) droning
- (D) bleating

7. After the heavy rain, frogs can be heard \_\_\_\_\_ merrily to one another.

- (A) croaking
- (B) crowing
- (C) cawing
- (D) cackling

8. The goose \_\_\_\_\_ angrily at the boy who pulled its tail.

- (A) quacked
- (B) clucked
- (C) cackled
- (D) croaked

9. I tried to catch the turkey but it just \_\_\_\_\_ loudly and ran away.

- (A) quacked
- (B) bled
- (C) clucked
- (D) gobbled

10. The \_\_\_\_\_ ape drew a lot of laughs from the audience at the animal show.

- (A) chattering
- (B) gibbering
- (C) bellowing
- (D) screaming

11. The angry bull \_\_\_\_\_ at the farmer.

- (A) bellowed
- (B) brayed
- (C) howled
- (D) trumpeted

12. It is said that a dog's \_\_\_\_\_ is worse than its bite.

- (A) bark
- (B) howl
- (C) trumpet
- (D) growl

13. The young lambs \_\_\_\_\_ after the ewe as it trotted away.

- (A) bleated
- (B) mewled
- (C) bayed
- (D) brayed

14. Wolves could be heard \_\_\_\_\_ in the middle of the night.

- (A) braying
- (B) howling
- (C) growling
- (D) barking

15. The \_\_\_\_\_ of birds in the cage relaxes Daryl after a hard day at work.

- (A) hooting
- (B) humming
- (C) purring
- (D) tweeting

16. Jenny's pet rabbit \_\_\_\_\_ in delight when she plays with it.

- (A) squeals
- (B) purrs
- (C) bleats
- (D) coos

17. The eagle \_\_\_\_\_ down and caught the rabbit in a flash.

- (A) swooped
- (B) soared
- (C) fluttered
- (D) flitted

18. At the sound of a whistle, the horse \_\_\_\_\_ over to its owner.

- (A) lumbered
- (B) strutted
- (C) gamboled
- (D) galloped

19. The matador skilfully evaded the \_\_\_\_\_ bull.

- (A) charging
- (B) trotting
- (C) soaring
- (D) ambling

20. Don't \_\_\_\_\_ around like a peacock; you're not that handsome !

- (A) walk
- (B) fly
- (C) strut
- (D) prowl

21. The children were delighted to see the rabbits \_\_\_\_\_ around in the field.

- (A) crawling
- (B) hopping
- (C) trotting
- (D) loping

22. The mouse \_\_\_\_\_ out of the house when it heard the cat.

- (A) scampered
- (B) ran

- (C) leapt
- (D) climbed

23. We watched as the snake \_\_\_\_\_ through the grass and attack the mouse.

- (A) slither
- (B) slid
- (C) slip
- (D) swoop

24. Butterflies \_\_\_\_\_ around the colorful flowers in the park.

- (A) hop
- (B) flit
- (C) dive
- (D) frisk

### **EXERCISE 27**

**Fill in the blank in each sentence with the most appropriate word.**

1. During our PE lesson, we had to \_\_\_\_\_ like ducks. It was fun.

- (A) glide
- (B) waddle
- (C) squat
- (D) walk

2. A few hens \_\_\_\_\_ towards the farmer as he came carrying a sack of grain.

- (A) ran
- (B) scampered
- (C) strutted
- (D) prowled

3. As the matador waved the red cloth, the bull \_\_\_\_\_ at it.

- (A) waddled
- (B) wandered
- (C) soared
- (D) charged

4. Bees \_\_\_\_\_ from flower to flower at the park.

- (A) soared
- (B) flew
- (C) flitted
- (D) flaps

5. The crow \_\_\_\_\_ away as the boy approached it.

- (A) swung
- (B) flapped
- (C) flitted
- (D) frisked

6. When it saw the two boys, the bear \_\_\_\_\_ away slowly.

- (A) lumbered
- (B) galloped
- (C) prowled
- (D) bounded

7. As soon as John reaches home, his dog will \_\_\_\_\_ to him and lick him.

- (A) gallop

- (B) crawl
- (C) waddle
- (D) run

8. Horses \_\_\_\_\_ around the field early in the morning.

- (A) loped
- (B) strutted
- (C) galloped
- (D) scampered

9. The documentary is showing how apes love to \_\_\_\_\_ from tree to tree.

- (A) troop
- (B) scamper
- (C) swoop
- (D) swing

10. It was fun watching the lambs \_\_\_\_\_ around in the paddock.

- (A) wandering
- (B) frisking
- (C) ambling
- (D) bounding

11. As the injured hyena lay in the grass, the lion \_\_\_\_\_ around it.

- (A) prowled
- (B) ambled
- (C) wandered
- (D) leaped

12. The beautiful nightingale \_\_\_\_\_ into the sky when it was freed from the cage.

- (A) fluttered
- (B) soared
- (C) flitted
- (D) swung

13. As tourists threw grains onto the ground, the doves came \_\_\_\_\_ down.

- (A) soaring
- (B) fluttering
- (C) ambling
- (D) swooping

14. Gina was horrified to find a beetle \_\_\_\_\_ around in her locker.

- (A) fluttering
- (B) crawling
- (C) flying
- (D) scampering

15. Silently, the eagle \_\_\_\_\_ down and snatched the young rabbit hiding in the bushes.

- (A) soared
- (B) swooped
- (C) flitted
- (D) flew

16. The rooster \_\_\_\_\_ around near the pen, looking for grains.

- (A) trotted
- (B) bounded

- (C) stole  
 (D) strutted

17. After getting food from the visitors, the monkey \_\_\_\_\_ up the tree swiftly.

- (A) swung  
 (B) flew  
 (C) charged  
 (D) climbed

18. Henry tries his best to catch the \_\_\_\_\_ rabbits but he wasn't fast enough.

- (A) bounding  
 (B) jumping  
 (C) leaping  
 (D) trotting

19. A big, fat turkey came \_\_\_\_\_ towards us at the farm.

- (A) strutting  
 (B) trotting  
 (C) lumbering  
 (D) galloping

20. With a heavy load on its back, the donkey wasn't able to \_\_\_\_\_ very fast.

- (A) trot  
 (B) gallop  
 (C) waddle  
 (D) bound

21. The wolf \_\_\_\_\_ round its prey before pouncing.

- (A) loped  
 (B) strutted  
 (C) ambled  
 (D) trotted

22. We watched from our window as the swallows \_\_\_\_\_ down onto the beach.

- (A) soared  
 (B) flew  
 (C) swooped  
 (D) dived

23. The \_\_\_\_\_ hyenas at the edge of the forest made us nervous.

- (A) loping (B) crawling  
 (C) galloping (D) prowling

24. Sparrows \_\_\_\_\_ down at the breadcrumbs thrown onto the grass.

- (A) bounded  
 (B) flitted  
 (C) soared  
 (D) lumbered

### **EXERCISE 28**

**In each of the following items you must choose the suggested answer which best completes the given sentence.**

1. I must \_\_\_\_\_ for the mess that my dog made in your garden.

- (A) apologize  
(B) pledge  
(C) complain  
(D) appeal  
(E) atone
2. In the \_\_\_\_\_ to his book the author paid tribute to his wife and children for being patient with him.  
(A) summary  
(B) preface  
(C) synopsis  
(D) bibliography  
(E) epilogue
3. The new military junta has \_\_\_\_\_ established itself in power.  
(A) smoothly  
(B) sternly  
(C) strictly  
(D) routinely  
(E) firmly
4. The government has been able to \_\_\_\_\_ investors from overseas because of its stability and efficiency.  
(A) seduce  
(B) attract  
(C) induce  
(D) convince  
(E) trap
5. A man who wished to remain \_\_\_\_\_ has donated a large sum of money to a local charity.  
(A) anonymous  
(B) pseudonymous  
(C) autonomous  
(D) synonymous  
(E) anomalous
6. The boy confessed under \_\_\_\_\_ of punishment to having mutilated a library book.  
(A) fear  
(B) threat  
(C) pledge  
(D) promise  
(E) pressure
7. It is claimed that women can \_\_\_\_\_ with stress better than men.  
(A) cope  
(B) copy  
(C) manage  
(D) endure  
(E) persevere
8. Details of the company's reorganization will be \_\_\_\_\_ to the press soon.  
(A) narrated  
(B) declared  
(C) broadcast  
(D) related  
(E) released

9. Racial \_\_\_\_\_ have once again flared up in the province. ( )
- (A) dissatisfactions
  - (B) discussions
  - (C) disturbances
  - (D) disasters
  - (E) distractions
10. I was asked to \_\_\_\_\_ in a dispute at the workshop.
- (A) mediate
  - (B) initiate
  - (C) meditate
  - (D) negotiate
  - (E) instigate
11. The government intends to place a \_\_\_\_\_ on public spending.
- (A) commission
  - (B) bar
  - (C) constriction
  - (D) barrier
  - (E) restraint
12. A journalist must be \_\_\_\_\_ and accurate in reporting news.
- (A) biased
  - (B) subjective
  - (C) objective
  - (D) influential
  - (E) prejudiced
13. The dance was specially \_\_\_\_\_ for the occasion.
- (A) composed
  - (B) assembled
  - (C) designed
  - (D) invented
  - (E) choreographed
14. A person with a contagious disease must be \_\_\_\_\_ to prevent the spread of the disease.
- (A) ostracized
  - (B) exiled
  - (C) eliminated
  - (D) isolated
  - (E) barred
15. John was granted \_\_\_\_\_ from national service because he was suffering from tuberculosis.
- (A) exit
  - (B) exemption
  - (C) postponement
  - (D) exception
  - (E) discharge
16. He is of the \_\_\_\_\_ that examinations should be abolished.
- (A) consensus
  - (B) opinion
  - (C) idea
  - (D) conclusion
  - (E) belief

17. The government should adopt drastic measures to reduce traffic \_\_\_\_\_ in the city.

- (A) flow
- (B) expansion
- (C) congestion
- (D) crowding
- (E) confusion

18. Securing \_\_\_\_\_ is easier on a regional basis than on a worldwide scale.

- (A) corroboration
- (B) co-operation
- (C) amalgamation
- (D) combination
- (E) concurrence

19. Trade unions were first organized in the early nineteenth century to represent workers in their struggle against \_\_\_\_\_ by employers.

- (A) indoctrination
- (B) injustice
- (C) suppression
- (D) exploitation
- (E) utilization

20. He is entering into \_\_\_\_\_ with his elder brother, who manages a law firm.

- (A) association
- (B) confederation
- (C) agreement
- (D) company
- (E) partnership

## **EXERCISE 29**

**In each of the following items you must choose the suggested answer which best completes the given sentence.**

1. The salesgirl charged me the same \_\_\_\_\_ for each of the two shirts.

- (A) cost
- (B) expense
- (C) disbursement
- (D) price
- (E) credit

2. The patient is making good \_\_\_\_\_ and should be discharged from hospital soon.

- (A) impetus
- (B) progress
- (C) advance
- (D) development
- (E) headway

3. It's my \_\_\_\_\_ that the man is not sincere.

- (A) impression
- (B) interpretation
- (C) conjecture
- (D) elaboration
- (E) prediction

4. To increase \_\_\_\_\_, the company will embark on an expansion program.

- (A) efficiency
- (B) productivity
- (C) production
- (D) competitiveness
- (E) quantity

5. The country enjoyed a trade \_\_\_\_\_ for two successive years.

- (A) excess
- (B) surplus
- (C) quota
- (D) boom
- (E) deficit

6. The verdict was announced by the judge after a short \_\_\_\_\_.

- (A) interruption
- (B) interval
- (C) recess
- (D) lull
- (E) respite

7. The factory worker received \_\_\_\_\_ for the loss of his arm when he was at work.

- (A) pension
- (B) gratuity
- (C) repayment
- (D) compensation
- (E) remuneration

8. Most people are familiar with Darwin's \_\_\_\_\_ of evolution.

- (A) ideal
- (B) conception
- (C) law
- (D) theory
- (E) thesis

9. There are two and a quarter million \_\_\_\_\_ living in Singapore.

- (A) population
- (B) populace
- (C) people
- (D) citizens
- (E) subjects

10. The host at the party is a man with a remarkable \_\_\_\_\_ for names.

(A) memory (B) reminiscence (C) recollection (D) remembrance (E) intelligence

11. The \_\_\_\_\_ was thrilled to be blessed by the bishop who came from Rome. (A)

apprentice (B) probationer (C) disciple (D) neophyte (E) amateur

12. The fraud \_\_\_\_\_ will come before the court next month. (A) situation (B) incident (C)  
trial (D) condition (E) case

13. The insurance company will pay for the \_\_\_\_\_ to the car. (A) danger (B) damage (C)  
casualty (D) injury (E) wreck

14. Among the Chinese, it is a \_\_\_\_\_ to give red packets containing money on New Year's Day.

(A) duty (B) prescription (C) custom (D) convention (E) habit

15. Could you name an English playwright in the sixteenth century \_\_\_\_\_ with William Shakespeare ? (A) simultaneous (B) synchronous (C) coincidental (D) synonymous (E) contemporaneous
16. She was \_\_\_\_\_ of the result of the interview which she attended. (A) uneasy (B) jittery (C) apprehensive (D) nervous (E) frightened
17. Although he comes from an educated and wealthy family, he is surprisingly \_\_\_\_\_ in his behaviour. (A) unintelligent (B) uncouth (C) unstable (D) unaccountable (E) unpredictable
18. Knowing she is \_\_\_\_\_ to criticism, you should have been more careful with your remarks. (A) exposed (B) liable (C) sensitive (D) impressionable (E) credulous
19. From a distance it is not possible to tell that these flowers are \_\_\_\_\_.  
(A) fictitious  
(B) unnatural  
(C) synthetic  
(D) artificial  
(E) simulated
20. Being a \_\_\_\_\_ actor, he can play the role of a psychopath or a statesman equally well.  
(A) versatile  
(B) changing  
(C) fickle  
(D) variable  
(E) inconstant
21. Her \_\_\_\_\_ adviser suggested that she dropped the case if she feared publicity.  
(A) lawful  
(B) legitimate  
(C) licensed  
(D) licit  
(E) legal
22. This is a \_\_\_\_\_ company; it is controlled by a larger one.  
(A) subsidiary  
(B) substantive  
(C) subservient  
(D) subordinate  
(E) subject
23. Be \_\_\_\_\_ of any stranger who comes to the house and asks to be admitted.  
(A) calculating  
(B) punctilious  
(C) scrupulous  
(D) vigilant  
(E) wary
24. He recast his sentences to obtain a more \_\_\_\_\_ effect.  
(A) elaborate  
(B) expressive  
(C) solid  
(D) lucid  
(E) vivid
25. I am \_\_\_\_\_ to know what he said to you in private.

- (A) curious
- (B) nosy
- (C) inquisitive
- (D) prying
- (E) desirous

26. The doctor warns her that the \_\_\_\_\_ effect of the drug may be harmful.

- (A) additive
- (B) successive
- (C) cumulative
- (D) curative
- (E) corrective

27. We could not make out what he said as he was quite \_\_\_\_\_ in his speech.

- (A) erratic
- (B) incorrect
- (C) verbose
- (D) nervous
- (E) incoherent

28. Please \_\_\_\_\_ the epilogue to half its present length.

- (A) abridge
- (B) simplify
- (C) condense
- (D) compress
- (E) abbreviate

29. The new programmer had such a \_\_\_\_\_ nature that he never disturbed anyone or asked for special favors.

- (A) docile
- (B) diligent
- (C) candid
- (D) avid
- (E) gullible

30. The crime was so \_\_\_\_\_ that the police would not discuss the bloody details with the press.

- (A) heinous
- (B) chronic
- (C) benign
- (D) abject
- (E) candid

### **EXERCISE 30**

**In each of the following items you must choose the suggested answer which best completes the given sentence .**

**Example :**

1. lacking in interest : \_\_\_\_\_
2. never dying : \_\_\_\_\_
3. to fill with air, gas, etc : \_\_\_\_\_
4. that can be seen : \_\_\_\_\_
5. that can be read : \_\_\_\_\_
6. against the law : \_\_\_\_\_

7. the chief facts of a passage : \_\_\_\_\_
8. to relinquish one's position or employment : \_\_\_\_\_
9. one of a very few : \_\_\_\_\_
10. to put off to a later date : \_\_\_\_\_
11. that cannot be heard : \_\_\_\_\_
12. that cannot be divided : \_\_\_\_\_
13. that cannot be separated : \_\_\_\_\_

**EXERCISE 31**

1. Like a snake :
2. Like a wolf :
3. Like a tiger :
4. Like a sheep :
5. Like a pig :
6. Like a lion :
7. Like a horse :
8. Like a fox :
9. Like a fish :
10. Like an eagle :
11. Like an elephant :
12. Like a dog :
13. Like a crow :
14. Like a cow or ox :
15. Like a cat :
16. Like an ass :
17. Like a bear :
18. Like a wild beast :

**EXERCISE 32**

1. The science and art of cultivating the soil. A\_\_\_\_\_.
2. The science of the structure of animal bodies. A\_\_\_\_\_.
3. The science of the structure of plants. B\_\_\_\_\_.
4. The science of the normal functions of living things, especially animals. P\_\_\_\_\_.
5. The science of diseases. P\_\_\_\_\_.
6. The science of the origin and the history of words. E\_\_\_\_\_.
7. The science of the earth's crust. G\_\_\_\_\_.
8. The study of insects. E\_\_\_\_\_.
9. The science of the sun, moon, stars and planets. A\_\_\_\_\_.
10. The science of life and living things. B\_\_\_\_\_.
11. The science of the production and the distribution of wealth ( goods ) E\_\_\_\_\_.
12. The art of compiling a dictionary. L\_\_\_\_\_.
13. The science and study of the human mind and its processes. P\_\_\_\_\_.
14. The study of antiquities, especially pre-historic remains. A\_\_\_\_\_.

**EXERCISE 33**

1. Egg-laying animals are : \_\_\_\_\_
2. Flower-bearing plants are : \_\_\_\_\_
3. Triplets are : \_\_\_\_\_
4. Quadruplets are : \_\_\_\_\_
5. Uxorial means : \_\_\_\_\_
6. Filial means : \_\_\_\_\_
7. Manual means : \_\_\_\_\_
8. Kleptomania means : \_\_\_\_\_
9. A bibliophile is a : \_\_\_\_\_
10. The fear of animals is called : \_\_\_\_\_

Ablutophobia – fear of bathing, washing, or cleaning

Achluophobia – fear of darkness

Acrophobia – fear of heights

Agoraphobia – fear of helplessness and of leaving safe places

Agrizoophobia – fear of wild animals

Agyrophobia – fear of crossing the road

Aichmophobia – fear of sharp or pointed objects

Ailurophobia – fear of cats

Algophobia – fear of pain

Amychophobia – fear of being scratched

Androphobia – fear of men

Anthophobia – fear of flowers

Anthropophobia – fear of people or the company of people, a form of social phobia

Aquaphobia – fear of water.

Arachnophobia – fear of spiders

Astraphobia – fear of thunder and lightning

Atychiphobia – fear of failure

Automatonophobia – fear of anything that falsely represents a sentient being

Autophobia – fear of ones potential actions or capabilities

Aviophobia, aviatophobia – fear of flying

Barophobia – fear of gravity

Blood-injection-injury type phobia – a DSM-IV subtype of specific phobias

Chaetophobia – fear of hair

Chemophobia – fear of chemicals

Chiroptophobia – fear of bats

Chromophobia – fear of bright colors

Chronophobia – fear of time and time moving forward

Cibophobia, sitophobia – aversion to food, synonymous to anorexia nervosa

Claustrophobia – fear of having no escape and being closed in

Cleithrophobia – the fear of being trapped

Coulrophobia – fear of clowns (not restricted to evil clowns)

Cyberphobia – fear of or aversion to computers and of learning new technologies

Decidophobia – fear of making decisions

Dentophobia, odontophobia – fear of dentists and dental procedures

Disposophobia – fear of getting rid of or losing things – sometimes wrongly defined as compulsive hoarding

Dysmorphophobia, or body dysmorphic disorder – a phobic obsession with a real or imaginary body defect

Emetophobia – fear of vomiting

Ergasiophobia – fear of work or functioning, or a surgeon's fear of operating

Ergophobia – fear of work or functioning

Erotophobia – fear of sexual love or sexual abuse

Frigophobia – fear of becoming too cold

Gamophobia – fear of marriage, commitment

Gelotophobia – fear of being laughed at

Gephyrophobia – fear of bridges

Genophobia, coitophobia – fear of sexual intercourse

Gerascophobia – fear of growing old or aging

Gerontophobia – fear of growing old, or a hatred or fear of the elderly

Globophobia - fear of balloons, or balloons popping, a branch of phonophobia

Glossophobia – fear of speaking in public or of trying to speak

Gymnophobia – fear of nudity

Gynophobia – fear of women

Hadephobia, stigiophobia, stygiophobia – fear of Hell

Halitophobia – fear of bad breath

Haphephobia – fear of being touched

Heliophobia – fear of sunlight

Hemophobia, haemophobia – fear of blood

Hoplophobia – fear of weapons, specifically firearms (generally a political term but the clinical phobia is also documented)

Hylophobia – fear of trees, forests or wood

Hypnophobia, somniphobia – fear of sleep

Ichthyophobia – fear of fish, including fear of eating fish, or fear of dead fish

Koumpounophobia - fear of buttons.

Lipophobia – fear or avoidance of fats in food

Melissophobia – fear of bees

Monophobia – fear of being alone or isolated or of one's self

Myrmecophobia – fear of ants

Mysophobia – fear of germs, contamination or dirt

Necrophobia – fear of death and/or the dead

Neophobia, cainophobia, cainotophobia, centophobia, fear of newness, novelty

Nomophobia – fear of being out of mobile phone contact

Nosocomephobia – fear of hospitals

Nosophobia – fear of contracting a disease

Nyctophobia, achluophobia, lygophobia, scotophobia – fear of darkness

Obesophobia – fear of obesity

Oikophobia – fear of home surroundings and household appliances

Ombrophobia – fear of rain

Omphalophobia – fear of navels

Ophthalmophobia – fear of being stared at

Osmophobia, olfactophobia – fear of bad odours

Panphobia – fear of everything or constant fear of an unknown cause

Papaphobia – fear of the Pope

Pediophobia – fear of dolls (a branch of automatonophobia: fear of humanoid figures)

Phagophobia – fear of swallowing

Pharmacophobia – fear of medications

Phasmophobia - fear of ghosts or phantoms

Philophobia – fear of love

Phobophobia - fear of fear itself or of having a phobia

Phonophobia – fear of loud sounds

Pogonophobia – fear of beards

Pyrophobia – fear of fire

Radiophobia – fear of radioactivity or X-rays

Scopophobia – fear of being looked at or stared at

Sesquipedalophobia – fear of long words

Sociophobia – fear of people or social situations

Somniphobia – fear of sleep

Spectrophobia – fear of mirrors

Stygiophobia – fear of Hell

Taphophobia, taphephobia – fear of the grave, or fear of being placed in a grave while still alive

Technophobia – fear of technology (see also Luddite)

Telephone phobia – fear or reluctance of making or taking telephone calls

Tetraphobia – fear of the number 4

Thalassophobia – fear of the sea, or fear of being in the ocean

Thanatophobia – fear of dying

Thermophobia – fear of heat

Tokophobia – fear of childbirth or pregnancy

Traumatophobia – a synonym for injury phobia: fear of having an injury

Triskaidekaphobia, terdekaphobia – fear of the number 13

Trypanophobia, belonephobia, enetophobia – fear of needles or injections

Trypophobia – fear of holes or textures with a pattern of holes

Turophobia - fear of cheese

Uranophobia, ouranophobia – fear of Heaven

Workplace phobia – fear of the workplace

Xanthophobia – fear of the colour yellow

Xenophobia – fear of strangers, foreigners, or aliens

Xylophobia, hylophobia, ylophobia – fear of trees, forests or wood

## **COMPREHENSION**

### 1

Have you faced the inevitable when your car gets a scratch or dent from people who park too close to you or when a motorcyclist misjudges the gap and scrapes the fender on your car ? Well, these minor scrapes should not cause you too much concern, especially when you take your vehicle back to a 'Body and Paint Centre'. The B & P centers, located in most major towns, have all the facilities to get your car looking virtually as good as new for a very little cost. But best of all, they will give you the best job you can find for your car that comes with a guarantee too.

Big or small, the job is never too difficult for the B & P centers and each vehicle will be given the same four steps in making your car smile again. firstly, the surface ahs to be prepared for proper paint adhesion. This means that any dents are taken out and where necessary, putty is used to smoothen parts that have either been welded or knocked back into place. The quality of the putty is important as poor quality putty will crack over time. After the putty is applied and cured, sanding is done to ensure that there are no rough edges where the putty and original bodywork meet.

The base primer is then applied. The correct primer is critical for different surfaces and this must be carefully matched to the different kinds of paintwork, such as metallic and mica. Once the primer has been cured, the surface is cleaned. this is to ensure that the surface is dust and grease-free. even hand marks that are invisible to the naked eye can cause paint defects, so solvents are used to clean the surface of all contaminants. Once all the surfaces have been cleaned and the surrounding areas masked off with special non-absorbent sheets, the vehicles get pushed into temperature-controlled booths for the spray job.

The spray painting process itself starts with careful matching of the color. Each of these B & P centers are equipped with paint-mixing equipment that is able to provide the painters with a tint that is as close as possible to what is on the vehicle. While most paints may look the same under normal daylight conditions, it can look very different under different light sources, a phenomenon known as Metamerism.

This i why B & P centers have special light boxes which are lit using different lighting to perfectly match the color and tint of the vehicle to be painted. The B & P centers work closely with the assembly plant as well as the paint manufacturer to ensure that the exact formulation is achieved consistently.

Once the paint is matched, the spray painter has to prepare the temperature of the booth to set the curing requirement of the paint thinner. Different paint processes also require different temperature settings, so the spray painter will have to follow strict procedures to get consistent results. Filtration from he top and bottom of the booth ensures that no dust or overspray settles back on the vehicle that would otherwise rob the surface of a brilliant shine. Each vehicle undergoes a complete process of respray, including a base coat, color coat and top coat. Then it receives three layers of lacquer to give it that deep sheen. Once the paint is cured in the booth, it is pushed out and polished. Here it also undergoes a final QC before being released to the customer.

- 1.(a) What is the 'inevitable' that the writer was referring to ?
- (b) Why shouldn't one be too concerned with it ?
- 2.(a) What does the expression 'making your car smile again' mean ?
- (b) Explain the use of 'putty'.

- 3.(a) Give one example of the 'contaminants' to the surface of the car.  
 (b) How are the contaminants got rid of ?  
 4.(a) What is meant by 'Metamerism' ?  
 (b) How can it be overcome ?  
 5.(a) How does the spray painter ensure that the right temperature setting is used for spraying ?  
 (b) What is the last process before the resprayed car is released to the customer ?

## **COMPREHENSION**

### 2

Teenagers today are undergoing lots of changes. They are between the ages of 13 to 19. Many of them are undergoing physical and emotional changes. These are the stages in the teenagers that are unavoidable.

The teenage life is full of happiness, sadness, enjoyment and it can be interesting too. This is because in the teenage life that a teenager is subjected to physical growth, hormonal changes and even dilemmas. They may be in a stage of conflict like undergoing puppy love. This is only a normal part of life.

Making friends is part and parcel of a teenager's life. The teenager should enjoy life by making friends with peers and participate in healthy activities such as camping, picnic, kayaking, swimming and so on. Through friends, a teenager learns to joke, laugh and play to release stress and tension. By making friends, the teenager learns to sweeten his or her joys and even eases the bitterness of life's downtime. Many teenagers are very conscious of their physical outlook. It is at this part of their life that beauty strikes as the main self-image. They love to follow up with the latest trends for dressing, hairstyle and even look good with their physical image. Some girls and boys go on a crash diet to slim down in order to look attractive. Others may suffer from acne and pimples that may scar their external beauty. Another stage in a teenager is the teenager's love life. There are chemical changes in the body and so the teenager tends to have a sense of feelings for the opposite sex. They will experience love and rejection. These sometimes will affect their studies.

Parents tend to play a role in a teenager's life. Parents today are overly concerned over their children's well-being. They like to control their freedom and have a say in what the teenagers do. Hence, we have cases of disagreements, disputes, quarrels and even runaways from homes among some teenage girls. There are also negative problems that may pop out during a teenage life. A teenager is not well guided may fall into the wrong path. Some teenagers are involved in drugs trafficking, smoking, drinking and smuggling of illegal products into the country. Others tend to vent their anger by vandalizing public property. We have those with no regard and respect for the elders.

The mass media has an influence over the lives of many teenagers. Violent action movies, obscene shows and pornography surfed from the Internet can bring a disastrous effect on a teenager's life. There will be more harm than good if nothing is done.

### *From paragraph 1*

- 1.(a) What is the age range of a teenager ?  
 (b) What are the changes that a teenager undergoes ?

### *From paragraph 2*

- 2.(a) Why is it that a teenage life is full of ups and downs ?  
 (b) What kind of conflict does a teenage face ?

*From paragraph 3*

- 3.List **two** activities that a teenager can get involved in.

*From paragraph 4*

- 4.What are the **two** things that a teenager likes to keep up to date with ?

*From paragraph 8*

- 5.State why parents are worried about their teenagers. Answer in your own words.

## **COMPREHENSION**

### 3

The word ‘leader’ is rather prominent these days. What and who is a leader ? The Webster’s Dictionary clearly defines a leader as a person of good talent in commanding influence to a group of followers. It also defines a leadership as that ingredient of personality that causes men whether male or female to follow.

A leadership is an influence process. It is the ability to motivate others to do something, believe in something or act in a certain way. The leadership style is the pattern of behaviors used to influence others.

What makes a good leader ? Leaders are people who do the right thing. A leadership provides the vision, so that the management gets things done. Many people have been put in leadership positions but they lack the training, particularly in the non-profit-making organizations or those of public interest. Leadership can be learned. There are many classes of tools for effective leadership.

A leader must have a vision. The leader must state in concrete ideas how programs will work, who will be served, what outcomes are expected from a project, what technology will be used and how the organization will get there.

To articulate the future clearly, the leader should be able to focus. Tell people what you want and expect from them and never waste their time. There are always distractions and personality conflicts but leaders should be able to see beyond them to what it will take to get the job done effectively. Leaders are also risk-takers. They must learn from their success and failure. This may sound like a cliche but if you do things the way they have always been done and never take a chance, you will always get what you had before. Leaders should always reward risk-taking in others.

A leader must be able to empower others. Teach people how to accomplish a task. Never do it for them even if you can do it faster or better. Part of the empowerment process in an organization is to ensure that the leader listens to everyone’s suggestions, incorporate ideas as needed and give credit to those who deserve recognition. Learning to give positive feedback is crucial !A leader must learn what motivates people and then act accordingly. Bill Gates inspires his employees with both his vision and financial rewards. Praise (tell the folks they have done well), appreciation (a simple ‘thank you’ regularly will earn the leader the respect), recognition (awards, credit on a report, a letter of commendation) or the truth about problems (being clear about consequences) are all motivators.

It is not surprising that if we look around and observe the leaders of every nation, we can come to term that a leader has a quality that makes people listen. Leaders should have a holding court, which is a kind of quality in them to strike the attention of listeners to turn to them. When they speak, people listen. That is the kind of quality needed.

A good leader is able to change plans or tactics without hesitation the moment the old methods are not working well. An effective leader should be clear-headed, self-confident and sure of himself but

always ready to learn. His mental flexibility allows him to be sensitive to the needs of change and on the lookout for the best new methods.

It is only of justice and humanitarianism ground that a leader should have a strong sense of justice, especially seasoned by sympathy. The leader should be warm and direct. This quality is important, especially if the leader is going to touch on the lives of a nation where the people range from the old, young, feeble, weak, educated and uneducated and humans from all walks of life.

The leader of tomorrow is changing from the top-down management style to a friendly approach.

Therefore, working together creates the concern for work and productivity that both sides look for.

*From paragraph 1 and 2*

- 1.(a) What is a leader ?(b) What type of process must a leader possess ?

*From paragraph 2*

- 2.(a) Why must a leader influence his followers ?(b) What is the leadership style ?

*From paragraph 3*

- 3.List a quality of a good leader and state why it is important

*From paragraph 5*

- 4.What is meant by being able to focus ? Give **two** reasons.

*From paragraph 9*

- 5.Explain why leaders are important to have a holding court. Answer in your own words.

## **COMPREHENSION**

### 4

#### Effective Public Speaking

Interaction or communication is important to achieve total excellence in relaying a message or a conversation. The speaker or speakers play a vital role to ensure the intended message is being relayed. It is not easy to talk well but sales personnel, insurance agents and direct selling agents are able to achieve their targets because of their influential talks.

The first requisite for a good speaker is to have a good voice. The speaker must have a voice that is neither too loud, too low, inaudible, nor harsh. What the speaker needs is a voice that is sweet and far-reaching. A god voice is sometimes God's gift. Some people are gifted with the voice that can arrest and attract you. However, an experienced speaker will comment that this can be cultivated to the required quality.

The expression on the look is also important. It is good to have a good expressive face. No one likes to see a face that has an ugly expression on the physical outlook. Put on a happy look because a smile speaks a thousand words.

The physical appearance and gestures of the speaker are very important too. The audience will be sitting in a room looking at a speaker who must be pleasant though not necessarily beautiful. As the saying goes, 'mankind normally judges a person by the looks'. Therefore, this criteria is important to ensure everyone gives the due respect and attention. Some speakers try to tempt their audience with their physical gestures. However, overdoing will not help. It only distracts the attention of the listeners and soon, you will be surprised that people might be leaving the room.

The length of a speech is a matter of importance. An hour is long enough for a good public speech. The secret of success is the art of omission. Leave the audience with a feeling that you have spoken effectively. Bear in mind the pulse of the audience. Stop before the audience gets tired or restless.

An effective speaker must arouse the interest of his audience. It is important to retain the attention of his audience. Practice makes perfect. It's easier said than done, but learn to adapt to the situation.

Adding a little humor is also a powerful tool. It is alright to make the audience laugh their way out once in a while. This is a part of the traits of an effective speaker.

Good anecdotes and stories are great aids to speaking. Of course the speaker must avoid becoming a bore by telling stories only. However, make it a point by sharing a short story that amuses or anecdotes that can send a nerve sensation to the minds of the listeners. Quotations are very useful in speaking.

But they are most apt when they come to you spontaneously.

A day or two before the presentation, prepare your speech in advance. The best preparation is to make a mental note of the points. Plan how to begin the speech and also to close the speech. Ensure that the speech is logical and closely argued. Make sure that all the points have been well stressed.

Another criteria to take into consideration is the language. Use standard English if you are required to present them. Never use bombastic language. The language must be simple, easy to understand and clear.

Finally, always do a research on your audience. Study the audience carefully. Who are they ? What do they want to listen and their needs ? Address them at the beginning of your presentation. Watch and see how they react. Remember to adjust your speech to the audience. There are different kinds of audience. Some are easy to address. Others may be slightly hostile. So adapt to the situation. Employ all the weapons of an effective speaker to convince your audience and make them realize that there is a good deal to be said from your point of view.

*From paragraph 1*

1. List **two** types of people who need to talk well.

*From paragraph 1*

- 2.(a) Why is interaction considered to be important ?(b) What is the role of a speaker ?

*From paragraph 2*

- 3.(a) What does a speaker need so as to attract the audience ?*From paragraph 3*(b) Write a phrase that states expression is important.

*From paragraph 4*

- 4.(a) Why must one not overuse gestures ?(b) Why is physical appearance important ?

5. Why is it important to study the audience earlier before the presentation of a speech ? Answer in your own words.

## **COMPREHENSION**

### 5

We often come across the glamorous image of an air hostess or pilot greeting passengers on board. In fact, so powerful is the image within us that today the ever-smiling face of an air hostess has come to represent the epitome of hospitality, glamour and ultimate fantasy of flying and seeing the world.

Flying across the globe and moving subtly, the crew attendants meet and greet the passengers first and make them comfortable for the journey ahead. Right from the moment the plane pulls up in front of the aerobridge, they are at the aircraft door with a warm smile, welcoming and guiding passengers on board to their seats. Once airborne, they make the passengers comfortable by rolling out the cartload

of goodies, food and drinks, chocolates and coffee, snacks and tea. Superficially though their services may appear to be trivial but they have lots of responsibilities on their shoulders, which include **executing** flight commander's instructions, coordinating security arrangements and ensuring passengers' overall safety as well. In case of an emergency during the flight, they take the responsibility and determine the most appropriate step to deal with the situation.

With various domestic and international airlines increasing their services, there is no doubt that the expansion is going to bring in a recruitment drive for every new route demands additional basic cabin crew members. Therefore, we are now witnessing a huge spurt in the demand for trained basic cabin crew. This explains why there is an increase in interviews conducted by many airlines. At the interviews for air steward and air stewardess, the applicants are asked about their eyesight, interest in the job and how they can handle difficult passengers. The government of some countries are keen on going liberal with an open sky policy. In this respect, India is emerging as a major aviation hub in South Asia. This expansion is going to bring in a recruitment drive, as for every new route added, it demands additional basic cabin crew members.

For corporate or airline flying careers, there are several routes to go but most people end up taking one of the two general paths. They either train through the military and then, fly commercially when they get out or go through civilian route by studying aviation at a college or privately and then, working as a flight instructor to build experience and work the way up into a larger aircraft. Chances are better if they join an Air Training Corps or a Combined Cadet Force while they are still at school or college. If you have any interest in a flying career, you can do a college program and major specifically in aviation. Many other universities and community colleges offer flight programs. Going to a well-known college to do your major is always helpful when you go job hunting. even though many pilots study aviation in college, many others do not. Another option is to do your college studies anywhere you like and do your flying 'on the side' be it through a flight school at your local airport or through a larger private flight school like Flight Safety International.

*From paragraph 1 and 2*

1.Why is it mentioned that the air hostess is the epitome of hospitality and glamour ?

*From paragraph 2*

2.(a) The word 'unimportant' can be replaced with \_\_\_\_\_.(b) The word **executing** refers to \_\_\_\_\_.

*From paragraph 2*

3.(a) What must the air hostesses do in an emergency during the flight ?(b) What must the crew attendants do first when the plane pulls up in front of the aerobridge ?

*From paragraph 3*

4.(a) The demand for airline crew has increased. Why ?(b) Which country is becoming a major aviation hub in South Asia ?

*From paragraph 4*

5.How can people work towards a career as a pilot ?

## **COMPREHENSION**

### 6

The liver is the main organ in our body. It is capable of converting drugs into forms that can be readily eliminated from the body. Given the diversity of drugs in use today and the complex burden drugs

impose upon the liver, it is not surprising that a broad spectrum of adverse drug's effects on liver functions and structures has been documented.

Many drugs may affect the liver adversely in more than one way. The effects range from mild and transient changes in the liver function to complete liver failure, maybe even resulting in death.

Therefore, the use of the following drugs requires careful monitoring of their effects on the liver during the entire course of treatment. The damage done to the liver and the loss of liver cells prevent the liver from functioning normally. Besides playing an important part in the digestion of food, the liver has a major role in metabolizing drugs and making proteins, including those that help the blood to clot.

A serious liver disease is cirrhosis. It is the scarring of the liver involving the formation of fibrous tissue associated with the destruction of the normal constitution of the organ. It can be the result of long-standing injury, most commonly due to alcohol in excess. Of course, there are a number of other important causes. Cirrhosis is a serious condition. Only thirty per cent of patients will survive five years after its diagnosis. The outlook is worse if the cause is alcohol and the patient continues to drink. The rate of cirrhosis in a country is directly related to the average alcohol consumption in that country. Half of all cases of cirrhosis happening in a country are due to alcohol excess. A country with a large group of heavy alcohol drinkers is likely to have more people suffering from cirrhosis.

The symptoms of liver cirrhosis depend on how much damage has occurred to the liver. In the early stages, there may be no symptoms at all. The disease may be discovered as a result of an investigation for another illness. As the disease progresses, weakness, lack of energy, loss of appetite, nausea and weight loss may develop. In later stages, the liver is struggling to perform all its functions and some or all of the symptoms may be present. Jaundice, that is, the yellowing of the skin, is one of the symptoms. The shape and appearance of the nails may change. They may be more curved and maybe white rather than pink. Skin changes too. About a quarter of jaundice patients will have darkening of the skin. Fluid retention is common at some stages in cirrhosis. In the very late stages of the disease, serious complications may occur. These include vomiting of blood, either from ulcers in the stomach or from leaking varicose veins in the lower end. This is serious and requires hospital treatment.

Apart from removing the cause, cirrhosis of the liver cannot be treated. The approach towards it is, therefore, to deal with it in order to reduce the complications of the disease. Some of the other approaches are taking water tablets for the treatment of fluid retention in the legs. A daily dose of vitamins, mineral supplements and calorie supplements can help to maintain nutrition.

*From paragraph 2*

- 1.(a) What type of effects do drugs have on the liver ?*From paragraph 3*(b) What is cirrhosis ?

*From paragraph 2*

- 2.List **two** functions of the liver.

*From paragraph 3*

- 3.(a) What is the main cause of cirrhosis ?*From paragraph 4*(b) Which country has more cases of cirrhosis ?

*From paragraph 5*

- 4.Name **two** symptoms of cirrhosis.

*From paragraph 6*

- 5.What does the writer suggest with regards to cirrhosis ? Answer in your own words.

7

Advertising was initially meant to make people aware of the goods available in the market. It was as simple as announcing what you have in your store or the services you offer in your premises. Over the years, advertising has evolved into a major industry that goes beyond informing to persuading and influencing. It is a form of brainwashing consumers.

Advertising has become a type of culture with ardent followers. In the process, it attracts enviable attention from manufacturers and service providers who fancy an edge over their competitors.

Unfortunately, in keeping with the ever-increasing demands of the manufacturers, the advertisers have resulted to creating unnecessary wants and excess consumption in most of us. This is a craving for harmful products that we are better off without. It preys on our minds rendering us completely irrational. The billboards (hoardings), television and radio advertisements target us from a very early age, forming our view of the world as we grow into adults. The buzzwords in advertising are, 'you are cool, type, sophisticated, of the hook', if you use this or that product.

The notion that the media is primarily in place to give us news is not very true. If the truth may be told, the media is there to gather enough audience, package them into a pricey commodity and sell it to the advertisers. The advertisers, on the other hand, are always on the lookout for a target audience to persuade them that this product or service is better than that of the competitor.

Advertising does influence people. Most of the advertisements are filled with images that equate emotional well-being with material acquisition and associate independence and leisure with consumption of alcohol. Advertising also makes people lavish their affect on products rather than real people, thereby destroying human relationships. We have become **trapped in the web of advertising** where products like brands of beer and cigarette take over our minds, doing away with our core family values.

When you look critically at most of the advertisements on the television, you will discover how persuasive the advertisers are in deciding for us what, when, how much and why to buy. But most people think that they are not influenced by advertisements. This is precisely what the advertisers want us to think, that in the end 'the people decide'. If you think deeply, nobody in his profit-minded sense will pay so much money to make a thirty second advertisement, which might not be seen by a hundred people, leave alone convince them to buy. How we strike a healthy balance between the two will definitely have a direct bearing on the future of our country. It is unfortunate that alcohol and tobacco advertising forms a sizable chunk of the industry.

*From paragraph 1*

- 1.(a)What has advertising become ?
- (b) What was the initial aim of advertising ?

*From paragraph 2*

- 2.What are the **two** effects of advertising ?

*From paragraph 4*

- 3.(a) Which word in this paragraph means *gaining* ?
- (b) Which word has the same meaning as the word *heap* ?

*From paragraph 4*

- 4.What does the phrase **trapped in the web of advertising** mean ?

*From paragraph 5*

5.In what ways have advertisers influence our actions ?

## **COMPREHENSION**

### 8

The rapid industrial development in Malaysia has created significant industrial waste pollution problems that need immediate attention. Domestic waste and industrial waste are discharged unto surface water through the sewage systems. In some cases, industrial waste is released directly unto surface water.

On land, the release of industrial waste is closely controlled. However, offshore oil and manganese extraction lead to direct discharge of pollutants into the seas. Radioactive waste is dumped at sea in large concrete barrels to decay. Often, the barrels will start to have defects after a while.

Representatives of factories often ship waste onto sea to dump it illegally because it is very expensive to have their water purified. Oil is released into the sea through oil tankers and shipwrecks and pesticides are applied to water to control aquatic pests. Paints on boats will decay during long trips on the ocean and will eventually end up in the water.

The effects of pollutants are noticed mostly in small inland seas and lakes. This is because the oceans have a natural dilution system for incoming pollutants whereas lakes have no effective outlet. The pollutants can exist in water in different states. They can be dissolved or they can be in suspension, which means that they exist in the form of droplets or particles. These pollutants can travel farthest when they are in solution in a river that is fast flowing.

High-rate microbial processes have been studied in recent years in the attempt to develop cost-effective and yet, full-scale waste treatment technologies. Management of industrial waste is a growing concern in Malaysia. The waste if improperly **segregated** or disposed off can lead to dangerous results. Therefore, the proper management of such toxic and **hazardous** waste requires discipline, vigilance and at times, just common sense.

The co-disposal of toxic industrial waste together with municipality in landfill disposal sites can cause potential release of toxic material into environment through leaching. The best approach to waste management is not to produce waste but to produce less waste. this aim can be promoted in several ways such as applying proper waste management, selecting processes that produce less waste, recycling and reusing generated waste and therefore, reducing the volume of waste that must undergo disposal.

In Malaysia, the control of hazardous wastes is governed by the Environmental Quality Act 1974. A hazardous waste is a solid or liquid or gas that could pose dangers to human health or the environment. Under the Environmental Quality Regulations, scheduled wastes are required to be handled properly and as far as is practicable, be rendered innocuous prior to disposal. These categories of wastes shall be disposed off at prescribed premises only and be treated at prescribed premises or treatment facilities only. Currently, 107 categories of scheduled wastes are listed under these regulations. Generally, they cover acute hazardous and toxic hazardous chemicals if abandoned, discarded or intended to be discarded or disposed into the atmosphere, placed on any soil or surface of any land or inland wasters. The industrial waste has to be treated through projects waste treatment. Appropriate cost-effective measures in industrial waste treatment technology will be developed. The aims are to achieve cost-effective industrial waste management through the development of appropriate microbial treatment and detoxification technologies, characterization and evaluation of landfill and identification of resident microbes.

*From paragraph 1*

- 1.Name **two** types of waste.

*From paragraph 2*

- 2.Give **two** causes of the pollution of the sea.

*From paragraph 3*

- 3.When do pollutants in a river travel farthest ?

*From paragraph 4*

- 4.(a) The word **segregated** refers to \_\_\_\_\_.(b) The word **hazardous** refers to \_\_\_\_\_.

*From paragraph 5*

- 5.Why does the writer say the best way is to produce less waste ? Write your answer in your own words.

## **COMPREHENSION**

### 9

Time has changed. In this modern era, women are taking a positive role in society. They are seen at par with men and because of liberalization, women have the rights to vote and say. Today, women are more mature than men. They are becoming more independent and are very **competitive** even in the corporate world. They are unlike their fore sisters, mothers or grandmothers, who rely on men for support.

As we look around, we can see that women are now boldly involved in politics. Politics refer to how a country is being administered by a group of people elected by its nation. Through their involvement in politics, women have proven that they are equally capable as men to lead. They are able to shoulder responsibilities and heavy matters concern in the world issues due to good exposure, caliber and support from the women's liberalization rights.

Next, as we observe around, there are also women involved in business. They have proven to rule the business world and build an empire with ripple effects. Some venture into cottage industries like making handicrafts and cookies while there are others who are able to lead an empire in business industry, marketing and insurance. These women have the potential, qualifications and expertise to mark a change in their lives. With the influence of the mass media and Western values, women are becoming very bold, brave, adventurous, capable and responsible. As such, men are now able to accept women into the workforce and take them as their equals.

In the sports arena, women are bold to take a stance to show their physical ability. This is unlike the past where women were supposed to be behind the doors and in the confinement of their homes. With women's liberation and the advancement in science and technology, women have shown themselves to be a sports enthusiasts and performers. we have people like Shalin Zulkifli and Nurul Huda Abdullah who have excelled in the area of bowling and swimming proving themselves that they can also be as good as our male counterparts. They are good role models and from their bold involvements, more young girls are encouraged to participate in the field of sports. With this, a vast variety of facilities have been made available to women so that they can prove themselves to be physically fit to compete in the various competitions. By involving themselves, women are also becoming confident, healthy and energetic. Young girls who are actively involved in sports are less likely to be involved in drugs, social ills and know what they want in life. They have made the country proud of their great success. Education has played a significant role towards the welfare of women. Education has enabled women to be knowledgeable and skillful to face the challenges in life. Women are considered the weaker

gender, have more feminine features and motherly instincts like patience, love, care and understanding. Therefore, they are good educators in molding the future leaders of tomorrow.

Moreover, in any tertiary level of education, women play a main role. In fact, women are good role models for future mothers.

Most women today have more than a role. They are a mother, a wife and a breadwinner. They are on the move all the time. As a mother, the women know her children's needs. As mothers have their own natural instincts, they are able to care for their children better. They teach, train and guide the lives of their innocent children to learn and adapt to the challenges in life. These are rather marvelous for a woman.

*From paragraph 1*

- 1.(a) Why are women at par with men ?(b) What does the word **competitive** mean ?

*From paragraph 2*

- 2.(a) What is politics ?(b) How has politics affected the role of women ?

*From paragraph 3*

- 3.List **two** types of cottage industry.

*From paragraph 3*

- 4.What have caused women to be different today unlike before ? Give **two** reasons.

*From paragraph 5*

- 5.Explain the role of education towards women.

## **COMPREHENSION**

### **10**

Because of its strength, majesty and fierceness, the lion is called the King of the Beasts. It and the tiger are the largest members of the cat family. A full-grown male lion, standing just over a meter high and weighing about 225 kilograms, may be more than 3 meters long from his nose to the tip of his tail. Today the lion is generally thought of as an African animal, and lions are certainly much commoner in Africa than anywhere else, but there are also a few in the west of India. Once they lived in Europe and the East as well, but they have now become extinct in these areas due to irresponsible human activities.

The lion can be told apart immediately from the lioness because of the enormous, heavy mane of hair that covers its powerful head and shoulders. The coloring of lions may be golden or reddish brown, nearly black or almost silver grey. The mane is nearly always darker than the rest of the coat, and the underpart of the body is lighter than the back. Lionesses are smaller and lighter in color than male lions.

Like other cats, lions have soft-padded feet. In the tuft of hair at the tip of their long tails is a single spur, or claw-like object, but no one knows its use or the reason for its existence. Sandy or rocky plains or open grasslands with scattered trees are the haunts of lions, and their coats blend very well with the background of sun-scorched land. Often they live in huge families which are sometimes known as prides. The deep-throated, thunderous roar of the lion is one of the most terrifying sounds in nature.

Lions generally hunt at night, spending the day sleeping or lying up in cover or in the shade of rocks and trees. The lion hunts by lying in wait for its prey beside a water hole or by stalking it patiently across the open plain. The kill is made quickly, the lion pulling down its victim in a lightning-fast rush and killing it with a blow of its paw. A full-grown male lion can drag an animal as large as a horse in

its jaws. Lions often hunt in groups and it is said that some lions will lie in ambush while others drive prey towards them.

Although they are dangerous animals to disturb, lions do not often attack human beings. Sometimes, however, an old lion that is getting too slow to catch the swift wild creatures will turn his attention to men, and sometimes a younger lion becomes a regular man-eater, often by accident. Lions will often attack cattle and other domestic animals, breaking into enclosures and carrying off their prey.

Young lions are generally born three at a time, but sometimes there are only two and occasionally as many as six. Both the male and female may help to look after the young, and the lioness is a devoted mother. The cubs have spots when they are born. Some scientists think that this is because lions may once have been forest animals and had markings to camouflage themselves. Lions have no natural enemies, but have been hunted by man, who both feared and respected the lion's strength. Lions are today protected in game parks and reserves in Africa other countries.

*Answer the following questions using complete sentences*

- 1.What are the attributes of the lion that it is accorded the title ‘King of the Beasts’ ?
- 2.Why is the lion commonly thought of as an African animal ?
- 3.In what way is the lion more majestic in appearance than the lioness ?
- 4.What do animals in the cat family have in common ?
- 5.List one way you think the soft-padded feet may be useful to the lion.
- 6.How is the strength of the lion demonstrated ?
- 7.Do you agree that in the wild, an old lion is potentially more dangerous to human beings than a young one ? Explain.
- 8.How do some people explain the presence of spots on lion cubs at birth ?
- 9.What evidence is there that man has caused great harm to the lion ?
- 10.What has man done to ensure that the lion will survive ?

## **COMPREHENSION**

### 11

After the death of Jo, and the escape of two of his companions with their recovered bombs, the Ricop commander ordered an intensified search of the plain. The searchers worked in twos, not threes, to maximise the number of patrols. The leader of the first patrol knew that the aliens were cunning and desperate, and it was surprised when they found the two of them almost immediately. Perhaps tiredness was making them careless.

The two, both young and small, were standing in the middle of the track that led to the plain, almost as if they wanted to be seen. When the Ricops spotted them, they turned and ran off between the rocks. They moved slowly, as if every tired, and the patrol was soon right behind them. “Pursue and exterminate,” ordered the patrol leader. “The commander advise no prisoners to be taken. They must be exterminated !”The aliens disappeared once they were among the rocks and the Ricops were forced to hunt for them. Although there were only two of the, they moved confidently forward, quite sure of their ability to deal with the escapees.

Zip and Parot collapsed panting behind a rock. “Are you all right, Parot ?” gasped Zip.”Just about. Never run so fast in my life !”Zip peered from behind the rock. “They’re coming. Ready ?” Parot nodded. They sprang from the rock and sprinted off with the pursues hot on their heels. They reached the giant boulder they had carefully chosen. The path was narrow here, and the Ricops would have to

move in single file. They waited. When the two pursuers came in sight, Zip stepped from hiding, then instantly ducked back. even so, he moved only just in time. The blast from its gun charred the rock above his head.

The patrol leader ordered, "Give protective fire," and moved off alone. The second Ricop followed more slowly, its gun swiveling suspiciously all around. The patrol leader rounded the boulder and moved cautiously along the trail that bordered the ice pool. Suddenly Zip appeared from behind one of the rocks, disappearing again almost immediately. The Ricop moved forward. Another blast from its gun seared the rocks very close to Zip. It was near to the edge of the pool now. Suddenly Parot appeared from hiding. He charged the pursuer gripping it from behind so that the gun could not be aimed at him. He shoved the Ricop by force towards the ice pool.

Slowly he edged it towards the pool. The Ricop resisted with all its strength. All the time it was calling, "Assist ! Assist ! I am being attacked !" Further down the trail, Zip saw the second Ricop speed forward to answer the call, and realized that he had to delay it. He dashed across the trail and the pursuer swung round in pursuit. Zip's foot turned on a small rock and he crashed to the ground, sprawled helplessly on the path as his pursuer bore down on him.

As his enemy was about to fire, Parot jumped on it from the top of a near-by boulder. He had a piece of cloth in his hands which he threw over the Ricop, covering the eye-stalk completely. The Ricop spun around helplessly, shrieking, "Vision circuits impaired. I am losing control.

"Somehow Parot stayed perched on top of the Ricop, holding the cloth firmly in place. Zip recovered and ran to grab the Ricop's gun and jammed it upwards, so that the blast of its firing exploded harmlessly into the air. Between them, they shoved the helpless Ricop along the path taken by the patrol leader. As they rounded the boulder, they gave it a mighty shove that sent it splashing into the ice pool. The water bubbled and hissed, and its cries ended abruptly as it shared the fate of its leader.

*Answer the following questions using complete sentences*

1. Why was there an urgent and intensified search of Jo's escaped companions ?
2. How did the Ricop commander ensure that the two escapees were located quickly ?
3. Why were the two aliens found so quickly ?
4. What were the Ricops supposed to do when they find the aliens ?
5. The patrol leader described the aliens as cunning. How was it correct in its assessment ?
6. List two reasons why the two escapees chose the giant boulder to carry out their plan.
7. What did the patrol leader do when it was attacked ?
8. What did Zip hope to achieve by dashing across the path of the second Ricop ?
9. How did Parot destroy the patrol leader ?
10. What are Ricops ?

## **COMPREHENSION**

### 12

The earliest men must have thought that the vivid lightning flash and the roaring voice of thunder that followed it were the anger of the gods, especially when they sometimes saw other men struck and killed by lightning. In fact, lightning is a gigantic electric spark. If wires connected to the two terminals of an electric battery are brought very close together, a little spark will jump between them. Lightning flashes are enormous electric sparks jumping from one part of a thundercloud to another, or from the cloud to the ground.

Lightnings may be up to eight kilometers long, and to jump such distances they need a voltage or electrical pressure several hundred times as great as that of the electricity supplied to our houses. Scientists do not fully understand how this great electrical pressure is built up in a thundercloud. But when sufficiently charged, the thundercloud will emit a lightning flash which takes place in the form of a long spark which follows the path of least electrical resistance. It often appears as a zigzag line called forked or chain lightning, which leaps from the cloud to the ground in less than one-tenth of a second. Where it strikes the ground, solid rock may be melted by the huge power of the electrical discharge. It is this kind of lightning that sometimes kills people. However, there is not much risk of being struck by lightning unless you are at or near the highest point in the neighborhood or are sheltered under a tall tree standing by itself. Indoors there is little risk.

Sheet lightning is a flash from one part of a thundercloud to another or from one cloud to the next. Summer lightning or heat lightning is the reflection in the clouds of flashes a long way off. The thunder that follows a lightning flash is caused by the sudden expansion of the air, since nay electric spark causes a very large rise in temperature in the nearby air.

A building is not likely to be struck if protected by a lightning conductor. This device was invented in 1752 by Benjamin Franklin. It consists of a spiked metal rod fixed above the highest point of the building and connected by a copper strip to rods or wires buried in the ground. its principal function is to prevent lightning, or at any rate reduce its severity by discharging the cloud harmlessly. The spikes direct a stream of neutralizing charges at the cloud above, disarming it and rendering it harmless. If lightning does occur, the discharge will not be so strong and the metal of the conductor is an easy path to earth. Thus the electricity passes harmlessly through the conductor instead of tearing through the building.

The sparks in an electric drill or a motor car engine give out radio waves which cause interference in radio or television sets. Lightning flashes are gigantic sparks, and so can cause interference over large distances. This is heard as scratching and crackling sounds on a radio.

Although lightning does a great deal of damage throughout the world, it has one good effect. The flash causes the nitrogen and the oxygen in the air to combine, and when dissolved in the raindrops, they fall to the earth as natural nitrates. Nitrates are a valuable fertilizer. This means they help plants and crops to grow.

*Answer the following questions using complete sentences*

- 1.What did early man think a thunderstorm was ?
- 2.When do thunderclouds send out a flash of lightning ?
- 3.What are some unsafe places to be at during a thunderstorm ?
- 4.Why do we sometimes see lightning when the weather is still fine ?
- 5.What causes the thunder ?
- 6.How does one make his home safe from lightning ?
- 7.Benjamin Franklin made our homes a safer place to be in. Explain.
- 8.Describe how a lightning conductor disarms a thundercloud.
9. Why do we sometimes hear crackling sounds on our radios ?
- 10.In what way is lightning a farmer's friend ?

### **COMPREHENSION**

Chips, the policeman's son, had a labrador pup called Mitzi. Mitzi's parents had been excellent police dogs so what more natural than that she, too, should be given a trial at Training School ? She'd seemed healthy and strong, with sturdy legs and a proud, firm head.

It required less than a week, however, to discover that Mitzi wasn't going to make it. She just didn't have the right qualities. Obedience, for example: on the third day her handler tried teaching Mitzi to run and fetch a stuffed rabbit. Mitzi merely thought this was some kind of joke and instead of bringing it back and dropping it at the handler's feet, she tore it apart and hid it in somebody's allotment, knocking down several bean poles along the way. On the forth day, Mitzi was taught to jump through an open window. Instead, she picked a closed one. You could hear the smashing of glass for miles. The inspector who lived in the house wasn't too pleased.

That was the end of Mitzi's career as police dog. With some hesitation, her handler, who was a neighbor of Chips, had suggested that Mitzi might turn out to be a reasonable house dog and pet. Even more hesitantly, Chips' father had agreed to give her a try. Chips, who had never had a dog before, was delighted. He started his own course of training at once. Sometimes he wondered if his neighbor was all that good as a dog handler. Perhaps he simply had not understood Mitzi. Mitzi had a mind of her own, but she could be obedient in her own way.

Most evenings Chips took Mitzi for walks along the nearby canal, or the wide river beyond. This particular day, late in October, was misty, muddy and damp. And Mitzi's collar came out again, somehow. It couldn't have actually broken in two; and the lead could not have snapped because Chips' father had insisted on it being as stout and thick as a halter for breaking in a wild stallion. The reason for these not infrequent partings of company was that Mitzi was big for her age, just as Chips was small for his. When Mitzi got it into her mind to tug, Chips had either to let go or take off and fly like a kite on a string.

When Mitzi disappears, in her own time she would pick up Chips' footsteps and return to him, but not tonight, not yet. Seeing and hearing no evidence of Mitzi's whereabouts, Chips tried his familiar canal path with the iron bridge a couple of hundred yards along towards the faint lights of an estate. Mitzi would turn up eventually wagging her tail, showing her teeth, up to her thighs in thick, oozing black mud which smelt of garbage.

Too right ! There she was, at last, something remarkably like a grin on her doggy face. Chips didn't bother to refit Mitzi's slipped collar. She followed him closely for a while, perhaps thinking Chips could somehow protect her from another spanner flung at her from one of the men in the workshops. He wandered back towards the walkway along the big river, crossing the access road bypassing the weir. Here were big cargo boats, sitting out on the shimmering water waiting high tide with tugs blinking in the mist like fireflies. Chips found half a bar of chocolate in his pocket. He sat in a shelter, put his feet on the slatted seats, and gave Mitzi a piece of chocolate and watched her sniff along the edge of the walk.

Suddenly a girl came whizzing by, traveling with incredible speed and skill on a skateboard. There were bulging shopping bags in each hand. She reached the shelter and caught sight of Chips. She saw Mitzi too, dashing out of nowhere. Mitzi liked little girls, especially if they were moving fast. She bounded after the girl who slithered in alarm to a standstill. She abandoned the skateboard and picked up one of the bags she had dropped. The contents had spilled: tea, a burst bag of sugar, a scatter of buns.

"Sorry," said Chips. "She doesn't mean any harm. That sugar ..." "You'd better buzz off," she said." Only trying to help."

"Leave me alone."

Chips let her go. He had tried his best to help. He looked around and discovered he had lost Mitzi again.

1. Why did it seem natural that Mitzi should be sent for training ?
2. In what ways did Mitzi appear physically fit to be a police dog ?
3. What did the short time of training establish about Mitzi ?
4. Who was Mitzi's handler at Training School ?
5. Give one excuse Chips made for Mitzi's failure.
6. Why did Chips let Mitzi go when she tugged ?
7. Describe the state Mitzi usually returns in after running off on her own.
8. What had the girl probably been doing before she met Chips and Mitzi ?
9. We are told Mitzi likes little girls. What does she like to do to them ?
10. Why do you think the girl asked to be left alone ?

## **COMPREHENSION**

### **14**

If you are constantly under stress, grabbing hit-or-miss meals and not exercising regularly, you may feel you need vitamin supplements. This need may be heightened by the constant indoctrination of vitamin manufacturers who tend to promote their products for economic rather than health reasons. But what are vitamins, and are supplements really necessary ?Vitamins are metabolic catalysts that regulate the biochemical reactions within your body. The body cannot manufacture the chemical substances known as vitamins. To date, scientists have discovered 13 vitamins, each with a specific function. For example, Vitamin B1 helps convert glucose into energy while Vitamin D controls the way your body uses calcium in bones.

If you have a vitamin deficiency, it may cause impaired performance and a supplement can correct that problem. Sometimes poor eating habits are responsible for your vitamin deficiency. A hearty eater who generally enjoys a balanced diet with occasional binges can rest assured that a nutritional deficiency will not develop overnight. You can survive in spite of deprivation of every vitamin every day because you store vitamins in your body — some in stockpiles that can last a year. The average, healthy person, for instance, has enough Vitamin C stored in the liver to last six weeks. Hence, a weekend without orange juice will not result in a nutritionally unsound body. Fat-soluble vitamins (A, D, E, K) which accumulate in body tissues, have as a rule, large reserves. Therefore if you eat regularly and adequately, you're more likely to become deficient in water-soluble vitamins (B-complex, C) which are excreted in urine.

But how much vitamins does one really need ? The Recommended Daily Allowances (RDAs), first developed by the Americans in 1943 during the second World War are broad guidelines for planning and procuring food supplies for the troops as well as standards for good nutrition. They include a large (about 30 percent) margin of safety to account for individual differences and to cover the nutritional needs of 98 percent of all healthy Americans, including those with higher-than-average needs. For example, while the RDA for Vitamin C is 60 milligrams, the amount in a six-ounce glass of orange juice, the minimum daily requirement is only 30 milligrams. It is on this basis that the RDAs may have to be revised soon.

Regardless of the government's rules, regulations and RDAs, you as an individual, are responsible for nourishing your body with a variety of wholesome foods. According to current thinking, if you exercise regularly, burn off calories and replace them with at least 1,500 calories daily from a variety of nourishing foods. You'll get the vitamins you need. However, if you are one with a limited food intake, you may risk marginal vitamin deficiencies. For you, a standard multi-vitamin and mineral supplement might be a wise idea. take the supplement in moderation and consider them an 'insurance policy'; not an alternative to wholesome food choices.

While sufficient amounts of vitamins is needed for the body to function optimally, an excess of vitamins offers no competitive edge. No scientific evidence exists to prove that extra vitamins enhance performance. Despite commercial claims to the contrary, supplements will not increase strength or endurance, prevent injuries or illness, provide energy or build muscle. On the contrary, an overdose of some of the vitamins, especially of the fat-soluble Vitamins A and D, may cause severe bodily harm. The body cannot eliminate excess Vitamin A quickly and this can cause damage to the bones, skin, liver and various other organs. An overdose of Vitamin D may lead to increased calcium deposits in the large blood vessels, the heart, kidneys, lungs and other organs. An excess intake of the vitamins of the B-complex and Vitamin C has fortunately, little effect on the body because these vitamins are soluble in water and can easily be expelled from the body through the kidneys. This is a blessing for the ardent followers of some quacks and food fad advocates who never tire of advising us to take an additional supply of the Vitamin C in our daily diet. Whatever your choice, you must recognize and take responsibility for the needs of your body.

*Answer the following questions using complete sentences*

- 1.What are vitamins and what do they do ?
- 2.What is the recommended way of meeting our nutritional needs ?
- 3.How long can the average, healthy person go without Vitamin C and not suffer any health problem ?
- 4.Name one way Vitamin K is different from Vitamin C.
- 5.What was the original purpose of developing the RDA ?
- 6.Why is it necessary to revise the RDA ?
- 7.Who are those who may need a multi-vitamin supplement ?
- 8.Vitamins cannot replace wholesome food choices. Explain.
9. What claims do manufacturers sometimes make to improve sale ?
- 10.Why does an overdose of Vitamin B-complex do little or no harm to the body ?

## **COMPREHENSION**

### 15

There are many reasons why people decide to keep a dog and find themselves faced with the question: which kind of dog shall I choose ? They may be looking for a replacement for a lost, faithful and trusted housemate; they may need a companion because they live alone; they may want a playmate for their children and a way of teaching them responsibility and care for other creatures; they may seek a pet to share the life of a childless home; or they may wish to acquire a status symbol to compete with the lady next door who attracts so much attention with her strikingly fashionable dog. Whatever the reason for wanting a pet, no one should rashly rush into acquiring a dog. They should not only

consider their own interests as prospective owners but, first and foremost, think of the happiness of their future companion.

If you choose your dog with care, your life will be enriched for years by a friend who will give much love and satisfaction and cause little annoyance. If, on the other hand, a dog is acquired without forethought or only because of its looks, you will risk being bitterly disappointed.

A dog placed in unsuitable, uncongenial surroundings will feel unhappy and will not show his true character. It may become sullen and start growling and misbehaving, perhaps even becoming so undisciplined and aggressive that it proves unacceptable to his new owner who will blame the failure on the animal or its breed instead of admitting that the fault lay in his ill-considered choice. In keeping a pet the owner is taking on a considerable responsibility, and if, for instance, the pet is only wanted as a status symbol, it would be best to think again.

The first question to ask yourself is whether your way of life and personal circumstances allow you to keep a dog. The time which you can make available for the dog is very important. It is necessary to be able to give it sufficient attention because no dog can do without it. You need time to prepare his meals, to give it its daily brush, to take it for a walk for at least an hour a day and moreover to let it out two or three times a day, which means going with him and not letting him loose on the street.

A second, no less important question concerns the attitudes of all the members of the family. Is everybody happy with the idea of having a dog ? Its arrival may give rise to friction. Children so easily promise to look after and take out their new companion, but as soon as the novelty wears off they forget the responsibilities they have undertaken. It is vital that the mistress of the house wants to have a dog, for it is she who, during the absence of her husband and children, will probably have most to do with the new house pet. She may have to cope with the less agreeable jobs such as cleaning up the mud which will be brought into the house in bad weather, removing dog hairs from carpets and furniture and coping with those other little mishaps which occur. The main burden of house-training the dog will fall on her if the dog is a young one. She will also have to look after it if it is ill.

If all the family are agreed that they want a dog there is another problem to consider. What is to be done with the dog during holidays ? Can it always be taken along ? If not, are there friends able and ready to offer hospitality, or will it have to go to a boarding kennel ? in the latter case you should not wait until the day before leaving to look around for a good kennel. As you might expect, boarding out your dog may prove quite expensive; expenses that must be added to the dog licenses, the unavoidable vet's bills and the cost of food which you should not economize on the quantity. Remember that any possession that brings joy also involves care and responsibility and the dog is no exception. If, after considering all these points, you still have an unquenchable desire to own a dog, you may then decide what kind of dog to choose.

*Answer the following questions using complete sentences*

- 1.What educational value does a dog have for children ?
- 2.What does the entire passage suggest prospective dog owners do before deciding what kind of dogs to buy ?
- 3.What should dog owners consider as more important than their own happiness ?
- 4.How are dog owners sometimes responsible for aggressive and unacceptable behavior in their pets ?
- 5.Why is a person's way of life an important consideration in his decision to keep a dog ?
- 6.Keeping a dog takes up a lot of time. How is it spent ?
- 7.What could be a possible result if not everyone in the family agrees to have the dog ?

8. Who usually ends up taking care of the dog ?
9. What can people do with their dogs when they go away for holidays ?
10. List some ways how dog owners spend money on their pets.

## **COMPREHENSION**

### 16

England was once the most powerful country in the world. It covers more than half of a rocky island that lies off the coast of continental Europe. England, Wales, Scotland, and Northern Ireland together are known as the United Kingdom of Great Britain and Northern Ireland. Without Northern Ireland, they are called Great Britain. Some people say the British Isles or just Britain.

The rocky coasts of Britain have protected it from attack. It has been nearly 1,000 years since enemy soldiers landed there. Because they lived on an island, the English people had to travel first by boat whenever they wanted to go anywhere outside their own country. The English people have been good sailors for a very long time; since the days when they first built their own ships and sailed all over the world. This enabled England to build the greatest empire the world has ever known. In the late 1800s England ruled nearly one-fourth of the world's land area and one-fifth of its people. It ruled large parts of Asia, Africa and North America. It ruled Australia, New Zealand, Canada and most of India. It rules places in South and Central America and more than 1,000 islands. England became very rich from its trade with the empire countries. English ships brought home products and materials from these countries and carried back things made in English factories.

But one day the people in the American colonies decided they wanted to run their own government and did not want to pay taxes any longer to England. So they rebelled and finally won their freedom. Since then other empire countries have also become free and independent. As these countries became free, most of them wanted to stay friends with England. So they formed a kind of huge club called the Commonwealth of Nations. Each nation in the Commonwealth is free to rule itself, but the heads of these nations meet with the queen and prime minister often to talk over their problems and try to advise and help each other.

Many of the world's finest writers, artists, and scientists are British. There are also many businessmen in Britain, which is one of the greatest manufacturing countries in the world. Much iron and coal is mined there. Steel is made there and shipbuilding is a big business. In 1956 Britain opened the world's first large-scale nuclear power station. It was the first country to make large amounts of electricity from nuclear energy.

To many people the British seem to be reserved at first; that is, they do not tell much about themselves until they know a person very well. They change their habits slowly. They don't like to change things just to be changing. Tea is a favorite with the British. Many like it in the morning and with sandwiches and cakes in the afternoon. After dinner they may raise their glasses and drink a toast to the queen's health. Some Englishmen like to spend time in their clubs, where they play cards, read newspapers, and sometimes have lunch or dinner. There are men's clubs like this throughout England. There are also pubs which are neighborhood places where people go to drink beer, meet other people, have friendly talks and play darts.

English people like to walk, even in the rain. Many don't like furnace heat in their homes. They find it too hot and dry. There are many English accents: the way words are pronounced, and they rarely

change. One Englishman often can tell what neighborhood another lives in just by his accent. The English have introduced a lot of new things to the world. Their music and singing groups have changed the style of music in many countries. Their capital city, London, is not only a center of government and business but also a center for new ways of thinking. The English love the old and familiar, but they are not afraid of the new.

*Answer the following questions using complete sentences*

1. Why has it been difficult for the enemies of England to attack it ?
2. What is it about England that makes its people good sailors ?
3. What made it possible for England to build the greatest empire the world had ever known ?
4. How did England benefit from its empire countries ?
5. Which empire country set the trend to break free from England.
6. Which countries are eligible for membership to the Commonwealth of Nations ?
7. Why isn't England the greatest empire anymore ?
8. What significant achievement did England make in nuclear technology ?
9. In what way is the British people considered reserved ?
10. How does the author show us the English people really like walking ?

### **COMPREHENSION**

#### **17**

Once upon a time there was just one little fire in the world. It belonged to the Great God of Fire who wouldn't let anyone else have it. Nobody had fire to keep themselves warm in their houses or caves. They had no fire to cook their food with until one day, an Indian chief's son named Boy-Who-Shoots-Arrow-Far caught a fox in a deep pit.

The fox told the Indian boy that if he was let out of the pit, he would tell where the Fire God kept his fire. The Indian boy replied that it was no secret because everyone knew the fire was kept in a hollow stone. The problem was no one knew where the stone was. The fox then claimed that he knew exactly where the stone was. It was kept in the Land of The Setting Sun where no Indians ever went.

A new problem then surfaced. They could still not get the fire because it was guarded by two old women who never sleeps. They had magical powers that enables them to run faster than any Indian or any animal. The desperate fox then devised a plan which the boy thought was a good one. The boy released the fox and they called all the animals together. All the animals from the woods came.

The fox told the gathering his plan. They agreed to help. The squirrel and the frog were very eager to help too. But the fox told the squirrel, "You can't run fast enough." And he told the frog, "You can't run at all. You can only hop." So the poor squirrel and the frog had to stay at home while the other animals hurried away and took their places in a long line that reached over the mountains and through the woods all the way to the Land of The Setting Sun.

The trick worked exactly the way the fox had planned. The Indian boy shot an arrow at the door to the old women's cave. The old women ran out to see what was happening, and the fox grabbed a burning stick from the fire and ran away with it. The two old women ran after him. The fox was a fast runner, but with their magic steps, the old women came closer and closer. The tired fox reached the Indian boy just in time and put the burning stick into his hand. The boy ran fast, but the old women ran faster. Just in time the Indian boy reached the bear who was waiting for him over the next hill. The bear put the burning stick into his mouth and ran. He passed it on to the waiting buffalo. The buffalo to the wolf,

the wolf to the coyote, the coyote to the deer, the deer to the elk, and to all the other animals, one after another, with the two old women running after them.

Finally it was the rabbit's turn to take the stick. Being the last one in the long animal chain, the rabbit was supposed to run the rest of the way and give the burning stick to the Indians. The Indians could quickly start so many fires that even if the old women took back their burning stick, the Indians would still have fire. But the rabbit had run so fast that he became tired before he reached the Indians. He came to the squirrel who was not supposed to be in the race at all because he couldn't run fast enough. The squirrel grabbed the stick and jumped into a tree. He leaped from tree to tree, but the burning stick caught his tail on fire. He bent his tail over his back and thumped it so hard to put the fire out that even today the squirrel's tail is still bent.

The two old women on the ground stayed right under the squirrel, and when he became too tired to leap any longer in the trees, the squirrel tossed the burning stick to the frog. The frog took two great hops, opened his big mouth and swallowed the fire, stick and all. The two old women were now so close that one of them grabbed the frog's tail and pulled it off. Before the old women could touch him again, the frog jumped into a pond. The old women jumped in after him. But they couldn't swim so fast as they could run. The frog swam across the pond and coughed up the fire into the hands of the waiting Indians. And ever since that day, the Indians have had fire.

*Answer the following questions using complete sentences*

1. Do you think the Great God of Fire is selfish ? Why do you think so ?
2. What knowledge did the fox have that the Indian boy didn't.
3. How were the two women equipped to guard the fire ?
4. Why was the fox trying so hard to help the Indian boy ?
5. Why was the frog left out of their plan ?
6. Who was the fifth runner in the line ?
7. How did the rabbit fail to do his part in their plan ?
8. According to the story, how is the frog then different from the frogs of today ?
9. How did the frog finally shake off the pursuing women ?
10. What do you think is the moral behind this story ?

## **COMPREHENSION**

### 18

All the guests were received with great honor. They were housed in beautiful palaces. They were feasted and entertained most splendidly. On the marriage day, the royal guests set out in their best clothes and jewels. They assembled on one side of a large field which was fenced on all sides. The King of Khosla arrived with his family, his ministers, court officials, and friends. He told the big gathering that his daughter, Satya, would marry the first prince who could yoke the seven wild bulls together. He then ordered the contest to begin.

The ceremony began with the beating of drums and the sounding of bugles. The pipers and trumpeters joined in. The music was exciting. Seven large cages were brought in. The attendants opened the doors of the cages. Seven huge, fierce-looking bulls rushed out. They moved about, challenging everyone. Every prince desired to win Satya and wanted to get in first to try his luck. Many of them rushed in together, in the hope of yoking the wild bulls. One king, who had won many battles and thought he was the strongest man to enter the contest, walked boldly towards one of the wild bulls. the bull

charged at him with great force. Hew as tossed, and he fell to the ground. The bull followed him but the brave man got up and ran for his life.

A prince, one who had killed many wild animals, rushed at one of the bulls. The bull gored him and he fell down unconscious. Another prince approached a bull. But he then felt frightened and ran out of the field. One prince who tried to catch one of the bulls was kicked by the animal. He withdrew with a broken leg. All the kings and princes tried their best but none of them was able to catch the bulls and yoke them together. Everybody was upset. Some of the princes said that the King of Khosla had set an impossible task for them. They said that the King must choose one of them to marry his daughter.

They argued that the marriage had been fixed and it must take place. The King of Khosla was very sad that the contest had failed. He ordered the bulls to be put back in their cages and taken away.

Suddenly, a new prince arrived in a chariot. It was Krishna. Krishna wanted to try his luck in the contest to win Satya. The King welcomed Krishna and told him about the terms of the contest. The defeated kings and princes looked on. The wild bulls were all standing in a row, with their heads raised high, as if celebrating their victory. Then they saw another man walking boldly towards them. They stared at him; he stared at them. For the first time the bulls seemed frightened. Krishna was strong and clever. He knew how to tackle these wild animals. Slowly, he walked around, caught the bulls one by one, and firmly yoked them together. The kings and princes were surprised. There were loud cheers for Krishna. The drummers, pipers, and buglers went into action with exciting loud music. The King of Khosla greeted Krishna. He placed Satya's hand in Krishna's. There was joy on all sides.

*Answer the following questions using complete sentences*

1. Why wasn't there a bridegroom at the beginning of the wedding ceremony ?
2. How did the King of Khosla show his enthusiasm about the contest ?
3. The ceremony at the beginning was a very noisy one. Where did the noise come from ?
4. Describe the eagerness with which the suitors tried to win Satya's hand in marriage.
5. Why did the king think his contest had failed ?
6. What did the defeated kings and princes try to make the King of Khosla do ?
7. Krishna approached the bulls differently from the others. How did he do it ?
8. How did everyone feel about Krishna's victory ?
9. Whose happiness do you think matched that of Krishna ?
10. Do you think a contest like this is a good way of choosing a husband for a princess ? Why ?

### **COMPREHENSION**

#### 19

Although Bertha was thirty she still had moments like this when she wanted to run instead of walk, to take dancing steps on and off the pavement, to bowl a hoop, to throw something up in the air and catch it again, or to stand still and laugh at nothing — at nothing, simply.

What can you do if you are thirty and, turning the corner of your own street, you are overcome, suddenly by a feeling of absolute bliss, as though you had suddenly swallowed a bright piece of that late afternoon sun and it burned in you, sending out a little shower of sparks into every particle, into every finger and toe.

Oh, is there no way you can express it without being 'drunk and disorderly' ? How idiotic civilization is ! Why be given a body if you have to keep it shut up in a case like a rare, rare fiddle.

"No, that about the fiddle is not quite what I mean," she thought, running up the steps and feeling in her bag for the key. She had forgotten it as usual. She rattled the letter box. "Thank you, Mary," she said as she went into the hall. "Is the nurse back ?""Yes, Maam." "And Sharon ?""She's fast asleep." "And has the fruit come ?" "Yes, Maam. Everything has come." "Bring the fruit up to the dining-room, will you ? I'll arrange it before I go upstairs."

It was dusky in the dining-room and quite chilly. But all the same Bertha threw off her coat; she could not bear the tight clasp of it another moment, and the cold air fell on her arms. But deep within her, there was still that bright glowing place, that shower of little sparks coming from it. It was almost unbearable. She hardly dared to breathe for fear of fanning it higher, and yet she breathed deeply. Mary brought in the fruit on a tray and with a glass bowl, and a blue dish, very lovely, with a strange sheen on it as though it had been dipped in milk."Shall I turn on the light, Maam ?"

"No, thank you. I can see quite well."

There were tangerines and apples stained with strawberry pink. Some yellow pears, smooth as silk, some white grapes covered with a silver bloom and a big cluster of purple ones. The last she had bought to tone in with the new dining-room carpet. Yes, that did sound rather far-fetched and absurd, but it was really why she had bought them. She had thought at the shop: "I must have some purple ones to bring the carpet up to the table." And it seemed quite sensible at the time.

When she had finished with them and had made two pyramids of these bright round shapes, she stood away from the table to get the effect, and it really was most curious. For the dark table seemed to melt into the dusky light and the glass dish and the blue bowl to float in the air. This, of course, in her present mood, was so incredibly beautiful, she began to laugh.

"No, no. I'm getting hysterical." And she seized her bag and coat and ran upstairs to the nursery.

*Answer the following questions using complete sentences*

1. How would you describe Bertha's feeling that afternoon ?
2. Why didn't Bertha do what she felt like doing ?
3. Under what circumstances does Bertha think people can do what they really want to do ?
4. "She had forgotten it as usual." What did she forget ?
5. Who do you think Mary is ?
6. Why did Bertha ask if the fruits had come ?
7. Although the room was quite cold, Bertha took off her coat. Why did she do that ?
8. What was Bertha's reason for buying the purple-colored grapes ?
9. Bertha thought her fruit arrangement was incredibly beautiful. What helped her think so ?
10. Why do you think Bertha was going to the nursery for ?

## **COMPREHENSION**

### 20

Ronnie had a younger brother named Tim. Tim was only six and a half years old. Being young, he was still innocent and gullible. He would believe many things that Ronnie told him because he thought that as the older brother, Ronnie would be right. Sometimes, Ronnie would play tricks on Tim because the **latter** was so trusting.

One such time was when Tim's milk tooth dropped last month. Ronnie and Tim were at a restaurant with their family for dinner. While Tim was drinking soup, he suddenly felt a weird sensation in his mouth. He wondered what **it** cold be. When he looked up to ask Ronnie about it, Ronnie burst out

laughing. Ronnie was laughing at how funny Tim looked without his front tooth. Shocked, Tim used his tongue to feel around his mouth. true enough, there was a gap in his teeth where his wobbly tooth used to be.

Tim then remembered the stories about how the tooth fairy would reward those who placed their teeth under their pillows. He used his spoon to fish around his bowl of soup for the tooth. He wanted to place it under his pillow that night. No matter how much he fished around, he simply could not find it. Ronnie then told him that he must have swallowed it by accident ! He taunted Tim that without the tooth, the tooth fairy was not going to visit him.

Upset by Ronnie's piece of information, Tim started to cry. Their parents then admonished Ronnie for antagonizing his brother. Ronnie felt bad so he quickly made up another story. This time, he said that even though Tim did not have a tooth to place under his pillow, he simply had to write a letter to the tooth fairy to explain and apologize to her. Tim immediately stopped sniffling and kept quiet, pondering over Ronnie's words.

That night, Tim wrote a note to the tooth fairy, just like what Ronnie said. The next morning, when Tim awoke, he felt around under his pillow and he found a dollar coin. Tim clutched the coin tightly in his hand and flashed a grin at his brother.

*Answer the following questions using complete sentences*

- 1.From paragraph one, how can we tell that Tim trusted his brother ?
- 2.What does 'latter' in paragraph one refer to ?
- 3.Explain clearly what 'it' in a paragraph two refers to.
- 4.Explain fully why Ronnie laughed.
- 5.Explain Tim's reason for looking in his soup.
- 6.What was the cause of Tim's crying ?
- 7.Which word in paragraph four implies that Ronnie's parents were angry with him for upsetting his brother ?
- 8.Quote the two-word phrase which suggests that Ronnie was guilty about his actions.
9. How did Ronnie mange to appease his brother ?
- 10.Why did Tim flash a grin at his brother ?

## **COMPREHENSION**

### 21

Michelle left the house to meet up with several friends at the shopping center. She skipped along the path, whistling a tune as she made her way there. They were meeting first for lunch. Michelle suggested that they had pizza for lunch and everyone cheered in agreement. Pizza was her favorite food. She especially loved eating the melted cheese on top of it. It would be a delicious and satisfying lunch.

Once everyone had filled their stomachs, they went to the cinema that was located on the top floor. There was a comedy screening and it was a unanimous decision to watch that. Despite just having had lunch, Michelle enjoyed munching on popcorn while watching movies. She shared a box with her friend. The movie was hilarious and all of them enjoyed it. At certain scenes, Michelle even laughed until she teared. When the movie was over, they were still talking about the funny scenes and laughing about **them**.

Michelle and her friends then went their separate ways to go home. When Michelle arrived home, she fished in her bag for the house keys. They were missing. She frowned and poured out all the contents of her bag onto the ground. Then, she sieved through them but still, the keys were nowhere to be found ! She must have left them in the house when she went out. To make things worse, her parents were both at work and would not be home for another two hours. She went over to her neighbor's house, thinking that if they were home, she could wait for her parents there. Unfortunately, her neighbors were out too.

With a sigh, Michelle went downstairs to look for a public telephone to call her mother. She explained her **situation** to her mother and her mother advised her to wait at the void deck for her. Michelle had no choice but to do just that. Luckily, Michelle was someone with the habit of carrying a story book with her everywhere she went. she went downstairs to read her book while waiting for her mother to return from work.

After that day, Michelle learnt her lesson. Her mother then attached her house keys to a lanyard so that it could be hung around Michelle's neck. Hopefully, in this way, Michelle would not forget her keys again.

*Answer the following questions using complete sentences*

- 1.In paragraph one, what were the **two** things Michelle did that show that she was eager to meet her friends ?
- 2.Quote the three-word phrase in paragraph one which suggests that Michelle's friends did not mind having pizza too.
- 3.Which word in paragraph two shows that everyone was in agreement to watch the movie ?
- 4.Suggest why Michelle had to share the popcorn with her friend.
- 5.What does 'them' in paragraph two refer to ?
- 6.Explain fully what Michelle did in an attempt to find her keys.
- 7.What was Michelle planning to do when she realized she was locked out of her house ?
- 8.What exactly does the 'situation' (paragraph four) refer to ?
9. Why was it lucky that Michelle had carried her story book with her ?
- 10.What preventive measure did Michelle's mother take after the incident ?

### **COMPREHENSION**

#### 22

Shelly's aunt was pregnant with her second child. She already had a son, Mike. This time, she was expecting a baby girl. She was due to deliver the baby in a month's time.

One Tuesday evening. Shelly and her parents were at an Italian restaurant having dinner. They were there to celebrate her parents' twentieth wedding anniversary. They had just finished their soup and were waiting for their pizza to arrive. Then, the phone of Shelly's mother rang. It was her grandmother calling. Apparently, her aunt was on her way to the hospital. She was about to have her baby early ! Her mother gasped at the unexpected news. After she put down the phone, she broke the news to them immediately. Shelly's father quickly called for the waiter and informed him of the **situation**. In a matter of ten minutes, the pizzas were packed and the bill was paid.

In the car, all of them were talking animatedly about the turn of events. They were very excited. Shelly was very anxious to meet her new baby cousin. When they arrived at the hospital, Shelly's grandparents and her other aunts and uncles were sitting around in the waiting room.

Half an hour later, Shelly's uncle appeared. On his face was a smile that stretched from ear to ear. Everyone knew by **this** that the baby had arrived. Everyone ran forward to congratulate him. However, they still could not see the baby yet. She had to be weighed, measured and cleaned up first. About half an hour later, the entire family piled into the hospital room to see Shelly's aunt. She was tired but otherwise feeling fine. The baby was adorable and so tiny. She looked so fragile. everyone took turns to carry the baby, including Shelly.

That night, Shelly's parents agreed that that was the most remarkable wedding anniversary they had ever had. They had celebrated it by becoming **an aunt and uncle once more**.

*Answer the following questions using complete sentences*

- 1.Quote the nine-word phrase which shows that Shelly's aunt was giving birth to her child in another four weeks.
- 2.Explain fully why Shelly and her parents were at the Italian restaurant.
- 3.Which word in paragraph two tells us that Shelly's mother was surprised to receive the phone call ?
- 4.Explain fully what the 'situation' in paragraph two refers to.
- 5.Name the two emotions that Shelly felt while in the car ride to the hospital.
- 6.Explain fully what 'this' in paragraph four refers to.
- 7.What did everyone do when they saw Shelly's uncle ?
- 8.How was Shelly's aunt feeling after giving birth ?
9. Why did Shelly find her new cousin fragile ?
- 10.In what way did Shelly's parents become 'an aunt and uncle once more' (paragraph five) ?

## **COMPREHENSION**

### **23**

Donna was on her way to the public library. She normally took a public bus but as it was such a beautiful day, she decided to take a leisurely stroll there instead. She hummed merrily to herself as she walked with a spring in her steps.

In the distance, Donna spotted a middle-aged lady in black-rimmed glasses. She looked awfully familiar but Donna just could not put her finger where she had seen the lady before. Was she a relative ? Was she a neighbor ? Donna racked her brains but her mind drew a blank. As the lady walked past Donna, she could not help but stare blatantly at the lady. This might seem to be a **rude gesture** but Donna's curiosity was piqued. The lady gave Donna a pleasant smile as she walked past. Donna was **embarrassed** to be caught staring and quickly gave a weak smile in return and looked away.

A little further on, Donna suddenly remembered. It was her primary school Science teacher !”Mrs Lee ! Mrs Lee ! Is that you ?” Donna let out a yelp of surprise, forgetting that she was in public. The lady stopped in her tracks and turned around. She looked at Donna quizzically. By this time, Donna had run up to her, huffing and puffing. “Mrs Lee, don't you remember me ? I am Donna, your ex-student from Fairways Primary school. You taught me when I was in Primary Four.” Now, it was the lady's turn to stare. she adjusted he glasses to get a clearer view of Donna's face. Then, she broke into a wide smile as a look of recognition crossed her face.

"Donna See ! I remember you now ! You were seated right at the front of the class. **This** is a surprise !" Mrs Lee exclaimed.

The two of them ended up going to a nearby coffee shop to sit down and have a chat. They reminisced about their memories of the school days. In the end, Donna did not make it to the public library. After all, how often does one get a chance to meet up with his or her ex-teacher after having left the school for so many years ?

*Answer the following questions using complete sentences*

- 1.Which word in paragraph one tells us that Donna usually took the bus to the library ?
- 2.How was Donna feeling as she walked to the library ?
- 3.Quote the five-word phrase in paragraph two which suggests that Donna was not able to recall who the lady was despite her best efforts to recall.
- 4.Explain fully what the 'rude gesture' in paragraph two refers to.
- 5.Why was Donna feeling 'embarrassed' (paragraph two) ?
- 6.What did Donna do which suggests that she forgot she was in public ?
- 7.Explain fully the **two** actions of the lady which suggest that she did not recognize Donna initially.
- 8.Explain fully what 'this' in paragraph five refers to.
9. Why did Donna and the lady proceed to a coffee shop ?
- 10.In what way was there a change of plans for Donna ?

## **COMPREHENSION**

### **24**

Suarez used to be a good student in school and a well-behaved boy at home. However of late, he had mixed with the wrong company. He lost interest in his studies and his grades were affected. His parents had received many phone calls from his teachers at school complaining about him. At home, he became a rebellious and disrespectful child to his parents. They had tried to coax him to change and even tried harsher methods like grounding him, but nothing seemed to work. He seemed to be spiraling from bad to worse. His parents were at a loss as to what to do with him. Then, an incident occurred which was the turning point in Suarez's life.

Two weeks ago, Suarez played truant from school. He went to a nearby shopping center to meet up with his group of undesirable friends. They loitered around the quiet shopping center, chatting with one another. Then, one of Suarez's friends suggested that they walk around the shops to kill time. In one of the shops, Suarez saw a comic book that he really liked. However, his pocket money was not enough to pay for the book so he surreptitiously slipped the book into his bag. Surprisingly, when the boys left the store, the security alarm did not sound.

Suarez was very relieved and happy that he had managed to pull off **the act** so successfully. He then went to the toilet as he was having a stomach ache. In the cubicle, he took out his cigarettes and lit up one of them. **This** caused the sound of an alarm to pierce the air. Suarez did not even realize that he was the cause of the noise until there was a banging on his toilet cubicle. The security guard demanded that Suarez come out of the cubicle at once. Suarez complied.

That day, the guard called up Suarez's parents down to the shopping center. He recounted the smoke detector incident to them and Suarez was fined for smoking in the toilet. In addition, when Suarez was caught, the guard did a routine check on Suarez's bag and discovered the stolen book. That got him

into **more trouble**. His parents managed to convince the guard not to report it to the police. From then on, Suarez realized the severity of his actions and has been trying to turn over a new leaf ever since.

*Answer the following questions using complete sentences*

- 1.What was the reason for Suarez's change ?
- 2.Why did Suarez's teachers call his parents ?
- 3.From paragraph one, name the **two** ways in which Suarez had changed at home.
- 4.Quote the three-word phrase in paragraph one which suggests that Suarez's parents did not know what to do with him.
- 5.From paragraph two, what did Suarez do instead of going to school ?
- 6.Which word in paragraph two slows that Suarez's friends were of poor character.
- 7.What does 'the act' in paragraph three refer to ?
- 8.Explain clearly what 'this' in paragraph three refers to.
9. Why was Suarez in 'more trouble' (paragraph four) ?
- 10.How did the incident affect Suarez ?

## **COMPREHENSION**

### **25**

Blair's younger cousin was going to celebrate her sixth birthday next month. He wanted to get a special gift but had no idea what a six-year-old girl might like. Besides, he did not have much money to spend on her present either.

One day, Blair was at the public library trying to pick some interesting books himself. The school holidays were approaching soon and he wanted to have a few books to occupy his free time. He browsed through the shelves, looking at many different genres of books. Then, he chanced upon the arts and crafts section. He saw that there were many books on painting, charcoal sketching, clay modeling, origami and so on.

As Blair scanned the books, one particular book caught his eye. It was a book on balloon sculpting. Blair's idea of sculpting had always been one that involved using a chisel to form a giant piece of rock into a statue. He had never heard of balloon sculpting. Out of curiosity, he pulled the book from the shelf and flipped it open. When he saw the pictures inside, he realized that balloon sculpting was actually using balloons to twist them into all sorts of shapes in order to create objects like a sword or a crown. As he looked through the colorful pages, an idea struck him ! He could make balloon sculptures for his cousin and her friends at her birthday party ! They ought to love **that** ! Excited with his idea, he borrowed the book.

At home, Blair told his mother about his idea. She agreed that it was an amazing idea. In fact, she even offered to pay for the balloons. That very day, Blair's mother took him out to buy some balloons to practice on. Blair diligently followed the instructions in the book. At first, he had difficulty twisting the balloons. He was afraid of bursting the balloons. When he realized that the balloons were very stretchable, he was more relaxed. As he practiced, he burst dozens of balloons but that never discouraged him. He continued to work hard on it.

By the day of the party, Blair was pretty good at balloon sculpting. Many of the children requested for all sorts of shapes. He tried his best to give them what they wanted. Most importantly, his cousin loved his idea. that made all his hard work worthwhile.

*Answer the following questions using complete sentences*

- 1.In paragraph one, what were the **two** problems Blair faced when deciding on a birthday present for his cousin ?
- 2.Explain fully why Blair was at the library.
- 3.Quote the two-word phrase in paragraph two which tells us that Blair did not deliberately look for the arts and crafts section of the library.
- 4.Why did Blair pick the book on balloon sculpting to browse ?
- 5.What was Blair's perception of sculpting ?
- 6.Explain fully what 'that' in paragraph three refers to.
- 7.Which word in paragraph three tells us that Blair felt enthusiastic about his idea ?
- 8.In what way did Blair's mother support his idea ?
9. How did Blair feel when he burst the balloons while practicing ?
- 10.in what way was Blair's 'hard work worthwhile' (paragraph 5)

## **COMPREHENSION**

### **26**

Eddie's father was the manager of a trading company in Thailand. He was a hardworking employee and was well-respected by his staff. Last week, he was promoted to become the regional manager of Asia. That was fantastic **news**. The only drawback to this piece of good news was that it required him to be based in Hong Kong. His father tried to negotiate with his boss to let him continue working from Thailand. Unfortunately, this was not possible. This meant that if he wanted to take on the job, he would definitely have to relocate to Hong Kong.

That evening, Eddie's father went home and discussed the matter with his mother. They weighed out the pros and cons of the relocation. Obviously, this was a great career prospect not to be missed. However, they were concerned about Eddie's schooling and friends. Eddie was an only child so his friends were very important to him. His parents were worried about how he would take the news. The relocation would mean a new school environment for Eddie. He would also have to make new friends. After dinner that same evening, Eddie's parents explained the **situation** to him. They tried to cushion the news by making the move seem exciting and adventurous. Eddie's initial reaction was one of shock. However, he kept an open mind and listened to all that his parents explained to him. He knew that for his father's sake, it was more sensible to move to Hong Kong so he agreed to their plans.

Eddie and his family had two months to move over to Hong Kong. There were so many things to prepare. Eddie's father had to settle his work duties here in Thailand. Eddie's mother had to search for a place to live in and a school for Eddie in Hong Kong. On top of all that, she also had to arrange for the movers to come. When she was looking for a school for Eddie, she would make sure that he was actively involved in the process. She wanted him to read about the schools and look at pictures of each school. This way, Eddie would feel more included in the relocation process and also, she could gauge how much he lied each school before making a decision. Soon, Eddie began a new chapter in his life.

*Answer the following questions using complete sentences*

- 1.What does the 'news' in paragraph one refer to ?
- 2.Quote the three-word phrase in paragraph one which suggests that the news had a downside.

- 3.From paragraph one, how can we tell that Eddie's father was not willing to move ?
- 4.What did Eddie's father do when he got home ?
- 5.Name the **two** concerns that Eddie's parents had regarding how the relocation would affect him.
- 6.What does 'the situation' in paragraph three refer to ?
- 7.Which word in paragraph three suggests that Eddie's parents tried their best not to alarm Eddie when they broke the news to him ?
- 8.Explain clearly what Eddie's reaction to the news was.
9. What was Eddie's mother's part in the relocation process ?
- 10.Why was Eddie also looking at information and pictures of the schools in Hong Kong ?

## **COMPREHENSION**

### **27**

Deborah checked in her luggage two hours before the flight was scheduled to depart. **This** was in line with standard airline regulations. She had arrived at the airport an hour ago. Her parents were worried that they might get caught in peak-hour traffic along the way and decided that it was better to be early than late. Thankfully, the roads to the airport were relatively clear.

Deborah and her parents were on their way to New York. Her sister had been working there for the past four years. She was a professional dancer and worked for a professional dance company in New York. Her job required her to travel all around the United States to perform. It was during one of these trips three years ago that her sister met Doug.

Doug was an American accountant. He had gone with a friend to watch the dance performance. His friend was also an acquaintance of one of the other dancers in the company. That was how Doug and Deborah's sister got to know each other. Now, the two of them were getting married next month. That was why Deborah and her parents were going to New York.

Deborah was going to be one of the flower girls at her sister's wedding. She and her parents had to be in New York to do the final fittings of their dresses and suits. They also had to be present for the wedding rehearsal. While they were there, they took the opportunity to do some sightseeing in New York. This was their first visit there. Deborah visited Times Square with all its bright lights and the majestic Statue of Liberty. Deborah bought souvenirs for a few of her friends back in Australia. Finally, the big day arrived. Everyone was giddy with excitement. Deborah's sister was a nervous wreck. She was worried that she might forget something or that something might go wrong. They had to keep reassuring her that everything was fine. In the end, the wedding ceremony proceeded without a hitch. It was a beautiful and touching ceremony. After the ceremony was over, all the guests were invited to a reception in the outdoor garden patio. It was a splendid day and the food was delicious.

*Answer the following questions using complete sentences*

- 1.What does 'this' in paragraph one refer to ?
- 2.Why were Deborah and her parents at the airport so early ?
- 3.Which word in paragraph two tells us that Deborah's sister danced for a living ?
- 4.What was the job requirement of Deborah's sister ?
- 5.Explain fully how Deborah's sister and Doug met.
- 6.Explain clearly why Deborah and her parents were taking the flight.
- 7.Explain fully the two things which Deborah and her parents had to do while in New York.

- 8.Quote the two-word phrase which shows that Deborah's sister was feeling edgy on her wedding day.
9. What was Deborah's sister worried about ?
10. Give the reason why Deborah's mother cried.

## **COMPREHENSION**

**28**

An avid model airplane collector.

Leon was an avid model airplane collector. He enjoyed assembling the parts of airplanes together. He would buy many collectible models and spend exorbitant amounts on them. Sometimes, one model airplane could cost him as much as three hundred dollars! He even had a special cabinet where he displayed the completed models. Once in a while, he would take the models out to dust and clean them. He did not actually play with them for fear that he would break something. He locked up this cabinet so that his younger brother, Ned, would not have access to his precious collection.

One day, Leon was in the middle of dusting his model airplanes. Halfway through, he suddenly had a bad stomach ache. He put his things down and dashed to the toilet. It was just at this moment when Ned came into the room to look for Leon. Their mother had sent him to call Leon down for his lunch. When he saw that the bedroom was empty and that the cabinet was unlocked, Ned could not resist the temptation to take a closer look. Leon had never let him touch one of his planes before and **this** was a rare opportunity for Ned.

Ned crept over to the table where Leon had been working. He gingerly picked up the plane and stared at it in awe. He was fascinated by the intricate details and design of the plane. It looked so realistic ! It was no wonder that Leon loved his collection so much. Just then, Ned heard the toilet flushing and he knew that Leon was coming into the room soon. He hastily put the plane down and accidentally used a little too much strength. One of the plane parts chipped off ! Ned gasped in horror but he had no choice but to hurry out of the room or Leon would know that he was the culprit.

Five minutes later, Ned could hear Leon complaining to their mother. Ned knew that he was in trouble. True enough, his mother hollered for him to go to the kitchen. She demanded for Ned to tell **the truth** and to apologize to Leon. Ned hung his head in shame. He admitted to his actions and promised not to repeat the offence again. At first, Leon was fuming but when he saw how apologetic Ned was, he forgave him.

*Answer the following questions using complete sentences*

- 1.Which word in paragraph one tells us that Leon's model airplanes were expensive ?
- 2.Explain fully the **two** things in paragraph one which Leon did which showed that he treasured his collection very much.
- 3.Quote the four-word phrase in paragraph one which shows that Leon did not allow his brother to touch his collection.
- 4.What made Leon leave his model airplane unattended ?
- 5.What was Ned's motive of being in his brother's room ?
- 6.Explain fully what 'this' in paragraph two refers to.
- 7.Why did Ned hastily put the plane down ?
- 8.Why was Ned in a hurry to rush out of his brother's room ?

9. What does ‘the truth’ (paragraph four) refer to ?

10. How did Leon react to Ned’s apology ?

## COMPREHENSION

### 29

Teenagers Eric Bennet and Dwayne Easter, aged seventeen, never in their wildest imagination dreamt that their exploring adventure at ‘**Devil Icebox**’ would turn into a near-death experience. They had been exploring deep within the forbidding-looking abandoned mine on Pilot Knob Mountain when disaster struck.

A huge boulder shifted drastically and Eric was hurled forward 20 feet into complete darkness. While he escaped with minor scratches, **Dwayne was not so lucky**. As huge parts of the hundred-year-old mine began to collapse, Dwayne was thrown backward and pinned by an immense grey boulder.

Trying to control his panic and tears despite the unbearable pain that was tearing at his lower body, Dwayne tried to catch his breath and then **lapsed into silence** as the pain transformed into numbness. Hearing Dwayne’s agonizing scream pierce the air, Eric picked up his torch and switched it on.

Following the cries of “My legs! Oh goodness, my legs!” Eric looked up to find Dwayne’s body dangling upside down over the side of a six-foot high ledge. His legs were pinned by a boulder.

**Quickly assessing the situation**, Eric picked his way through the rubble and got out of the cave, leaving Dwayne with the words, “I’ve got to get help.” Running all the way to the town of Pilot Knob in Missouri, Eric alerted Deputy Sheriff, Water Yates, who lost no time in gathering volunteers. Eric, Yates and three volunteer firemen then made their way to the mine where Dwayne had been hanging for about two hours.

“Help me!” cried Dwayne’s voice from somewhere in the darkness that encompassed the cave.

Moving nearer to Dwayne, Yates and the firemen saw that his shoes had been crushed to a width of about two inches. Although Dwayne’s feet were inside those shoes, there was very little bleeding and his pulse rate and skin color were also more or less normal. There was still the threat of shock, however, and Yates knew that if there was even any pressure around the boulder causing it to move, it would jeopardize the lives of not just Dwayne, but all of them waiting beneath it. Not wanting to alarm Dwayne, Yates whispered, “It’s bad, real bad,” to the others and urged them to get more medical help and volunteers to rescue Dwayne as well as the rescuers in case the entire mien collapsed.

By 6 p.m., nearly four hours after the accident, more volunteers had joined the rescue operation in the cave which had been filled with floodlights. The rescuers did not merely have to deal with the tension and trauma, but also with the bats that were flying wildly and slamming into their faces. Trying to alleviate Dwayne’s pain, nurse Lidi Eberhardt, a volunteer, injected Dwayne with a shock-retarding saline solution while another volunteer positioned himself directly beneath the ledge so that the weight of Dwayne’s body would rest on him instead.

Some portions of the boulder rested on solid rock while others were supported only by rubble. The boulder resting precariously on the ledge further posed a serious hazard to the rescuers. The first attempt to lift the boulder with the jack failed and the second caused it to be lifted slightly. **Hope turned to terror**, however, when the boulder suddenly started to shift and teetered dangerously on the ledge while the rescuers prepared themselves for death. Fortunately, it merely slid a few inches and then came to a miraculous stop with Dwayne still pinned beneath it. **Their spirits flagging, the volunteers conceived a new and daring plan.**

*Answer the following questions using complete sentences*

- 1.What is referred to as the ‘Devil’s Icebox’ (paragraph 1) ?
- 2.Quote a word in paragraph 1 that tells us the mine is not a safe place to enter.
- 3.What does the writer mean by ‘Dwayne was not so lucky’ (paragraph 2) ?
- 4.What was Dwayne experiencing concerning his lower body when he ‘lapsed into silence’ according to paragraph 2 ?
- 5.Why did Eric run out after ‘quickly assessing the situation’ (paragraph 3) ?
- 6.What were the positive signs about Dwayne’s injury ?
- 7.Explain **two** situations that could pose a great threat to the lives of the rescuers according to paragraph 4.
- 8.How dangerous was the position of the boulder ?
9. Explain why the writer wrote ‘hope turned to terror’ in the last paragraph.
- 10.‘Their spirits flagging, the volunteers conceived a new and daring plan.’ (paragraph 6). What were the rescuers’ feelings about the rescue operation at this point in time ?

## **COMPREHENSION**

### **30**

It was a quiet Friday evening on 19 December 1997 when Mother returned from a concert at 10.30 p.m. As she was about to retire for the night, she received a telephone call, and from her response, we knew **something was amiss**.

Hanging up the telephone, she dashed for the door, shouting, “There’s a plane crash ! One of my colleagues may be on it ! I’m going back to the office. Don’t wait up for me !” It was so ominous a message ! it turned out that the colleague was indeed on that ill-fated flight returning from Jakarta to Singapore. She was initially due back in Singapore on Wednesday, 17 December, but a series of meetings with clients had delayed her return to Friday instead.

The airplane, SilkAir MI 185, had taken off from the Jakarta airport at 3.30 p.m. However, shortly after take-off, the plane radioed the Jakarta air-control tower that it would be heading back to land at the airport due to some areas of concern regarding the plane. The air-control tower directed the plane to the nearest airport at Palembang. Unfortunately, it never made it to the airport. It crashed, taking all one hundred and four people on board to their watery graves.

Salvage efforts were soon undertaken by the Singapore Navy and the Indonesian authorities. They managed to dredge up a considerable amount of the plane’s wreckage and some body parts, but no complete body was ever recovered. The two black boxes that were designed to record dialogues between the pilot and the co-pilot, and the exchange between the pilots and the air-control tower were recovered from the sea, but no message could be retrieved from them.

Singapore Airlines and SilkAir flew families of the deceased to and from Singapore to Palembang in the initial days of the rescue and salvage work at the site of the crash. however, it was a heartrending scene portrayed time and again on local television of family members weeping over the **inevitable outcome** that they would never be able to see their loved ones again.

A last rite, performed by the various religious leaders of the various faiths, was organized by the Singapore government at the Indoor Stadium. Thousands turned up to pay their respects to the one hundred and four victims of the plane crash. it was a time of national grieving for the tragic loss of so

many lives. At the same time, all the friends of my mother's colleague banded together to lend emotional support to the latter's family. There was only so much anyone could do for the families and loved ones of the dead. The last rite provided some consolation for those left behind as the dead could now rest in peace.

*Answer the following questions using complete sentences*

- 1.Explain what is meant by 'something was amiss' (paragraph 1), according to the passage.
- 2.Why did the colleague of the writer's mother return on the ill-fated flight on Friday instead of Wednesday ?
- 3.Why did the pilot radio the Jakarta air-control tower ?
- 4.From paragraph 4, quote the two-word phrase that tells us the plane had crashed into the sea.
- 5.What was found from the sea off Palembang ?
- 6.Which word in paragraph 5 has the same meaning as 'extracted' ?
- 7.How did Singapore Airlines and SilkAir help the families of the deceased ?
- 8.What was the 'inevitable outcome' (paragraph 6) ?
9. Which two-word phrase in the last paragraph tells us that all Singaporeans felt terribly sad for the loss of all the victims of the plane crash ?
- 10.Why does a religious leader conduct a last rite ?

## **COMPREHENSION**

### 31

"Wake up !"I jumped out of bed so violently that I almost knocked my mother down."What's wrong with you ?" Mother asked with concern. "These days, you have been acting so weirdly. You walk around in a doze and you have nightmares every night !"Eh ... oh... nothing, Mother," I stammered, hoping to think of a better excuse to appease her. "I must have been eating too much before bedtime and so I have not been sleeping well. I guess that's why I am so tired in the day too." I cast my eyes downwards, not daring to meet her gaze."In that case, no more food for you after nine." She gave me another concerned look and left the room.I could not tell her what was bothering me. No one would believe me or they would think it was a figment of my imagination. Ever since I started reading this book called 'Read On if you Dare !' by an **anonymous writer**, I had been experiencing strange things while I was awake and in my sleep.I felt as if I was being watched all the time. Sometimes, I could feel its presence so close that my hair would stand on end. I tried to shake off this **paranoia** but I continued to feel its eerie presence around me. Sometimes, this strange formless entity would pursue me as I ran to get away from it. At night, I dreaded to go to sleep because of this recurring nightmare that did not make sense to me at all.Throughout this time, I could not stop reading this book. I felt drawn to it in a mysterious way. There was a strange force pulling me towards it and forcing me to flip the pages and read on. Finally, I could not bear this madness any more. I went to seek the help of an old man. Old Man Li, as he was known in my neighborhood, was rumored to be a witch doctor.My first encounter with him was frightening. His house was dark and gloomy. It smelt of burning incense. He recited a few chants and performed an unusual ritual. He sprinkled some magical dust on the book that he claimed would dispel the evil spirit that resided within its pages. After a few more visits, my nightmares stopped and I did not feel its presence any more. I could not thank Old Man Li enough. As soon as I got home, I burnt the storybook although **its memory would forever be engraved in my mind.**

*Answer the following questions using complete sentences*

1. Why do you think the writer cast his eyes downwards and did not want to meet his mother's gaze ?
2. Why did the writer not tell his experiences to his mother ?
3. What was strange about the writer's behavior ?
4. What does an 'anonymous writer' mean according to the passage ?
5. What was the 'paranoia' (paragraph &) the writer was referring to in the passage ?
6. Why do you think the writer sought the help of Old Man Li and not anyone else ?
7. What was the unusual ritual Old Man Li performed ?
8. Explain in your own words why Old Man Li performed this ritual.
9. Was Old Man Li successful in his attempt ? Support your answer with evidence from the passage.
10. What did the writer mean by 'its memory would forever be engraved in my mind' (paragraph 9) ?

## **COMPREHENSION**

### 32

The next time you go to a theater to watch a play, give the actors and the people involved in putting up the entire play he applause they truly deserve. he performance you get to see is the end product of a few months of hard work.

The birth of a play lies in the mind of the playwright. He may have an interesting story to tell. He may also feel strongly about a recent debate on a topic like inter-racial marriages and consequently, write a play about this.

Another crucial person involved is the director. he is the person who decides how the play should be acted out. Directors have different styles of presenting plays, even identical plays. hat is why you sometimes get to see plays of the same title being staged by different theater groups at different points in time.

The second stage of 'assembling' a play involves mainly the production team and the designers. The production team consists of the production manager, stage managers and the designers. Sometimes, the production manager and the stage manager may be the same person. This depends on the size of the theater company and the budget for the entire production. The bigger the company, the more funds it will probably have and hence, the budget will allow for more people to be involved.

The production manager ensures that the plans drawn up by the costume, sound and light designers are carried out. Stage managers sit in during rehearsals and take note of the director's wants. The light designers design the lighting to give the play its various moods and help convey the story behind it. They decide what color and type of lights to use. Sound designers try to create the sound effects the director wants, adding on others they think is necessary for the play to achieve its intended effect. For example, a comedy would have contrasting lights and sound effects from a tragedy. It is also at this stage that the actors are selected. If the company ha its own company of actors and actresses, then time need not be wasted on auditions. If this is not the case. then audition advertisements will be placed in the newspapers.

Once the 'cast' (which is made up of the actors and actresses) is formed, rehearsals will commence. The cast usually continue with their rehearsals till the day before their actual performance. The day of performance is the busiest day for a particular group of people we call the 'crew'. They help the stage managers ensure the costumes and props are put in place help clean up the theater before the performance and also help the lighting designers to fix the lights at the precise positions.

In a theater, you watch the play without knowing the process of putting it up. the next time, do remember to applaud not just for the actors and actresses, but also for the ‘unseen’ people involved as well.

*Answer the following questions using complete sentences*

- 1.How long does it take to prepare a play for staging ?
- 2.What are two possible reasons for a playwright to write a play ?
- 3.Why are the same plays staged by different directors at different points in time ?
- 4.Under what circumstance will the production manager and the stage manager not be the same person ?
- 5.Which line in paragraph 5 suggests that the stage manager works more closely with the director than the production manager ?
- 6.in which two aspects are lighting important to the play as a whole ?
- 7.Why do some theater companies need to organize an audition for actors and actresses ?
- 8.When do rehearsals usually end ?
9. Who are the ‘unseen’ people involved in the production of a play ?
- 10.Why are the people ‘unseen’ ?

### **COMPREHENSION**

#### 33

One evening, I was passing through the cold wilderness of South Canada. Suddenly, I heard a growl and there before me was a white timber wolf caught in a trap. I tried approaching the wolf but it backed away, furiously straining at the steel jaw trap. On closer observation, I noticed that the wolf was a female and her teats were full of milk. That could only mean one thing — somewhere in the wilderness were wolf pups anxiously waiting for their mother.

I knew that earning the wolf’s trust was impossible, so I decided to look for the pups. The search seemed fruitless at first but thankfully, it had been snowing and after some time, I found paw marks in the snow. I followed the trail deeper into the forest and finally came to a small cave. I could not hear anything, but I was sure the pups were inside. It was too much of a risk to enter; the pack might be inside. I decided to imitate the voice of a mother wolf calling out to its young. My attempt was not in vain for soon, five little pups appeared. The pups looked shy but when I extended my hands, they came towards me and started sucking my fingers. Apparently, they were very hungry. Slowly, I picked them up and put them in my bag and headed to where their mother was trapped.

The mother wolf was not thrilled to see me. It stood erect and started growling. Immediately, I released the pups and they rushed to their mother, sucking its teats. After a while, I walked towards the wolf in the hope of freeing it but every time I moved in its direction, the wolf would growl menacingly. To my surprise, the wolf had actually marked its territory by urinating. I could also sense its agitation and I knew it was hungry at the same time. I decided to find some food for it.

By then, it was snowing heavily and so, I opened a can of chicken stew which I extended to the wolf. It was hesitant at first but extreme hunger prompted it to gobble the food up. This went on for two days. The wolf was till trapped and I still did not win its confidence. Meanwhile, I played with the pups much to the agitation of their mother.

On the third day, I awoke suddenly because the pups were sniffing at my face. I looked at the mother wolf and saw its tail wag a little. Had I won its trust ? I slowly placed my hand on the wolf's injured leg. The wolf winced but did not attack or threaten me. I inspected the steel jaw trap and realized that only three toes were trapped. Using a fork, I applied pressure on the trap. The trap sprang open and the wolf was free.

Whimpering, the wolf limped about while nursing its swollen toes. I knew my presence was not further needed, so I took my bag and began to set off. Just then, the wolf limped towards me and started licking my fingers. I was **shocked**. Such a contact went against the laws of nature. A few minutes later, the wolf gave a howl and left with her pups. I did not know what that meant, but in the three days spent with the wolf and her pups, I realized that despite the laws of nature, a bridge had been created between our worlds.

*Answer the following questions using complete sentences*

- 1.What did the wolf do when the writer approached it ?
- 2.How did the writer know that the mother wolf had wolf pups around ?
- 3.How was the writer convinced the pups were inside the cave ?
- 4.How did the wolf react when it saw the writer return with the pups ?
- 5.Why do you think the wolf reacted the way you have described in the previous question ?
- 6.How did the wolf mark its territory ? What do you think that means ?
- 7.Why do you think the mother wolf became agitated whenever the writer played with the pups ?
- 8.How did the wolf show that it trusted the writer ? Give two instances.
9. How did the writer free the wolf ?
- 10.Why was the writer 'shocked' (last paragraph) when the wolf licked his fingers ? Explain in your own words.

## **COMPREHENSION**

### **34**

Many are well aware that Johann Gutenberg invented printing. On the other hand, do we know who invented paper ? Ts'ai Lun's name has never gained as much popularity as Gutenberg's. Researchers have discovered that the former invented paper about the year 105 AD. However, many major encyclopaedias and standard history textbooks seldom mention him. Not a great deal is known about Ts'ai Lun's life.

According to certain Chinese records and the official history of the Han Dynasty, he was an employee of the imperial court about 1800 years ago. Around the year 105 AD, he presented Emperor ho Ti with samples of paper. The emperor was so pleased with his invention that he promoted and bestowed on him an aristocratic title. However, he became involved in a political problem which soon led to his downfall. Upon being disgraced, he committed suicide. The Chinese have always credited Ts'ai Lun with the invention of paper, and his name is well known in China. Other aspects of his biography are hardly known, if not vague. However, his contribution to society is too important to ignore.

Today, paper is so common that we take it for granted, and it is hard to imagine what the world would be like without it. In China, before Ts'ai Lun's invention, most books were made of bamboo.

Obviously, such books were extremely heavy and clumsy. Some books were written on silk, but that was too expensive for general use. In the West, before paper was introduced, most books were written on parchment or vellum which was made of specially-processed sheepskin or calfskin.

The use of paper became widespread in China during the second century, and within the next few centuries, **the Chinese were exporting paper to other parts of Asia.** For a long time, they kept the technique of paper-making a secret. However, they were unable to keep it for too long. In 751 AD, some Chinese papermakers were captured by the Arabs, and not long afterwards, paper was manufactured in certain parts of the Arab world. The art of papermaking gradually spread to the rest of the area. It was only in the 12th century that the Europeans learnt the art from the Arabs. The use of paper gradually spread, and after Gutenberg invented modern printing, paper replaced parchment as the main writing material in the West.

Due to the existence of paper, books and other written materials can be produced so cheaply today and in such considerable amounts. The Chinese civilization advanced rapidly because of paper. However, the invention of printing by Gutenberg improved the use of paper. Gutenberg was born about the year 1400 in the city of Mainz, Germany. He improved the inefficient style of printing so that books could be produced in masses with speed and accuracy. This contribution to the art of printing was made in the middle of the century.

**Gutenberg did not gain much fame** or fortune through his invention during his time. His best known work is the Gutenberg Bible. It was printed at Mainz, around 1454. Although it was clearly printed with the equipment he had invented, his name did not appear on the Bible. This was the case for many of his books. In his lifetime, he did not appear to have been a good businessman either.

Both Ts'ai Lun and Gutenberg died leaving a tremendous impact on Man's progress. Their contributions during their era helped cultivate a better civilization for the Chinese and the Europeans respectively.

*Answer the following questions using complete sentences*

1. Why was Ts'ai Lun not well known for his invention for a long time ?
2. How did Ts'ai Lun rise in status ?
3. What were books made of in China before paper was invented ?
4. ‘... the Chinese were exporting paper to other parts of Asia.’ (paragraph 4). Although other parts of Asia were aware of the existence of paper, explain clearly why they did not make their own.
5. Why are books made of paper considered better than those made from other materials ?
6. Explain briefly how the knowledge of papermaking spread to Europe.
7. When did the West stop using specially-processed sheepskin or calfskin for writing ?
8. How were books printed before Gutenberg made some changes to the older form of printing ? State **two ways**.
9. ‘Gutenberg did not gain much fame ...’ (paragraph 6). Explain what could have been the reason for this.
10. Why did Gutenberg not gain much fortune from his invention during his time ?

## COMPREHENSION

### 35

The evolution of sports in the modern world is an interesting one. In the past, men took up spears to hunt animals for food. He who could use the spear most expertly would usually bring home a **bigger supply of food**. Nowadays, men take up spears only in sports, in what we now call ‘javelin throwing’.

What used to be essential skills in survival, such as running, shooting and jumping, are now skills that are tested primarily in the sports arena. Man no longer has to aim well to shoot at a deer grazing in the grassland or jump over difficult terrain in pursuit of his prey. What he does have to do now is to prove to others that he can shoot further or more accurately than the other competitors, or outrun his opponents in a race.

The pursuit of excellence in sports has become the desire and purpose of every true sportsman today. Sportsmen have to be armed with an indomitable spirit of determination and discipline in order to reach heights ordinary men can only dream of. Carl Lewis, one of the world's fastest men, ran the 100-meter race under ten seconds. Michael Jordan outjumped and outscored his opponents in many basketball matches in the United States. Michael Owen captured the hearts of millions of fans when he outsmarted the opposing team to dribble and kick home a crucial goal during the 1998 World Cup. These sportsmen lay claims to glory through their amazing feats in the sports they play and excel in. However, what significance does sports hold for the ordinary people — people who cannot perform extraordinary feats like the above-mentioned sports icons of modern times ? Thankfully, sports exist for another very vital reason. They **promote health**. When we engage in a sport, whether it is cycling, swimming, playing football or tennis, it helps to build up our physical as well as **mental strength**.

When the body is strong, it means that we are able to fight off infections or illnesses, such as cold or fever, better and faster than someone who is not **physically healthy**.

Sports also help to build up our mental strength. Engaging in any type of sports demands focus. One would not want to cycle right into the drain or be hit by a tennis ball coming right at you. Similarly, we need discipline to complete the various exercises. It takes time and effort to train to play basketball or to complete a long distance run.

Hence, sports have become an integral part of our lives and it is no wonder that the Singapore Government is trying to encourage a nation of healthy living by promoting sports.

***Answer the following questions using complete sentences***

1. According to the writer, how did sports evolve ?
2. What does the phrase 'bigger supply of food' (paragraph 1) refer to ?
3. What must a sportsman have to pursue excellence in any sport according to the passage ?
4. Why are those sportsmen mentioned in paragraph 3 famous ?
5. What does the phrase 'promote health' (paragraph 4) mean according to the passage ?
6. What does 'mental strength' (paragraph 4) refer to ?
7. When is a person 'physically healthy' (paragraph 4) ?
8. What is the phrase in paragraph 4 that has the same meaning as 'resist' ?
9. What is the Singapore Government trying to promote ?
10. Why do you think having a nation of healthy people is important ?

**COMPREHENSION**

**36**

As far as ancient rituals are concerned, one would be amazed to find what people had created to show their respect for nature. Regarding it as a religious and spiritual phenomenon, men even staked their lives to appease the spirits, which, they believed, resided in the Earth's natural elements. The wind, the

rain, the earth, the mountains and the trees with their supernatural powers maintained the existence of life on Earth.

In old civilizations, some tribes worshipped their kings, whom they believed represented certain forces of nature. They were hailed as gods and revered for the powers they were believed to possess. The Shilluk, an old African tribe, worshipped their leader believing that the founder of the tribe, Nyaking, was reborn as the leader himself. According to legends, Nyakang was the rain-giver. The members of **such tribes** associated their prosperity and even survival with the qualities and well-being of the king. If the king fell ill, it was considered a bad omen to the entire community. If the king was courageous and wise, the tribe would be blessed with a good and comfortable life ahead. However, in order to stay in office, the king had to abide by certain rules and regulations laid down by the tribe's ancestors. It was believed that if he became unworthy of his position and was allowed to stay, then the force of nature he represented would turn against the whole village.

In parts of Europe and Asia, it is still the custom to construct a straw figure and carry it through the village amidst the mourning and wailing of the women. The straw figure is supposed to represent the nature spirit. Each culture has its own unique way of worshipping the spirit. The figure can be buried, tossed into water or carried back to the village. As the latter is an act symbolizing life, the women rejoice while it is being carried back.

The ritual is also conducted by dressing up the straw figure in a man's shirt and taking it to the boundary of the neighboring village. The shirt is removed and hung on a young tree once the figure is torn to shreds by the women. The ritual ends with much celebration when the tree is cut down and brought back to the village. The whole process is supposed to symbolize the rebirth of man.

There are various other forms of nature worship which are unique to certain cultures. The more popular ones are sword dancing and what is commonly known in England as Morris dancing. These rituals pay tribute to the forces of nature in the hope that the village will be blessed with a good harvest and a fertile soil. According to the natives, **they also ensure that the cycle of the seasons does not falter.**

The Morris people are found in English villages and can be easily identified by their white pleated shirts, white trousers or skirts with bells at the knee and flowers on their hats. They use maces or wands while dancing. At times, lances are also used. **These items are considered symbols of fertility.** During the dance, the leader of the people is supposed to carry a sword with a piece of cake attached to the end. The cake is divided among the Morris men and women as the dance progresses. They are then expected to donate to the community's treasury.

*Answer the following questions using complete sentences*

1. To what extent did the ancient civilizations try to appease the divine spirits ?
2. Why did people worship the wind and the rain ? Explain in your own words.
3. Why did the Shilluk worship their leader ?
4. How was the fate of 'such tribes' (paragraph 2) affected by the qualities of their kings ?
5. When do you think a Shilluk leader had to be replaced immediately ?
6. Why was it important to the tribe that a Shilluk leader be replaced ?
7. According to the passage, how do certain cultures today ensure the fertility of their land ?
8. '... they also ensure that the cycle of the seasons does not falter.' (paragraph 5) Explain what this sentence means in your own words.
9. How can you spot a Morris woman in England ?

- 10.'These items are considered symbols of fertility.' (paragraph 6) With reference to the last two paragraphs, what is the 'fertility' referring to ?

## **COMPREHENSION**

### 37

Native Indian Americans, specifically the Navajos, played a crucial role in the Americans' success over the Japanese in the Second World War. They were the ones who provided a secret weapon that could be used to great advantage against the enemy.

Many of the Navajos were living on reservations (places allocated specially for them) in various American states. When they heard that Japan had bombed Pearl Harbor and that as a result, America entered the war, many of them decided that they would enlist and fight for America against the Japanese. This was in spite of the fact that years ago, the Navajos had fought against the American military for occupying their lands. Now they were fighting for the same military. Yet the Navajos still felt a sense of patriotism for America and many were determined to defend their country.

What special skill, then, could the Navajos provide ? Well, their uniqueness lay in their language. Like most of the Indians in America, their language was primarily an oral one, passed down from one generation to another. Few people, apart from the Navajos themselves, could understand their language. This meant that the Navajo language could be used as a mode of communication among American troops stationed in different areas. There need not be any fear that the Japanese would intercept and comprehend their messages. In contrast, English did not have this advantage. Many young Japanese were educated in American universities and so could easily understand English.

Before the Navajos came along, the Americans used modern technology to encode their messages. This was, however, not fool-proof as the enemy could easily intercept or even imitate this system to send false messages. Many of the officers in the military were **sceptical** of using the Navajo language as a code. It just seemed too effortless on the part of the Navajo speakers. Some officers even conducted a 'man against machine' test. Messages were sent out using both normal military equipment and through the Navajo speakers. The Navajo speakers sent the messages out to one another safely and accurately each and every time. In an experiment, navy officers were given a period of three weeks to decode a message in Navajo. In spite of that long period of time, they failed.

Working for the American military was not an easy task for the Navajo speakers. Some of them were given bodyguards because some American soldiers could not distinguish them from the Japanese. Their lives were in danger not only because of the enemy, but also because of their own fellow soldiers.

The work of the Navajos was kept a state secret. If any of them were asked what they did in the war, they would answer that they were radiomen. It was only in 1968 that the public came to know about the instrumental role of the Navajos and their important contribution.

*Answer the following questions using complete sentences*

- 1.What is the whole passage about ?
- 2.Why are the Navajos called 'Native Indian Americans' ?
- 3.What is so unique about the Navajos ?
- 4.Why were the Navajos involved in the war ?
- 5.Why was it ironical that the Navajos were willing to fight for the Americans ?

- 6.Explain the term ‘oral language’.
- 7.Why would the Navajo language be useful for the Americans during the war ?
- 8.What does the word ‘sceptical’ (paragraph 4) mean ?
9. What eventually ended the officers’ scepticism of using the Navajos’ language as a code ?
- 10.Why were the Navajos’ lives in danger from their own fellow American soldiers ? Explain in your own words.

## COMPREHENSION

**38**

By the age of thirty-six, American Scott Fisher had successfully climbed the big mountains of Asia and Alaska. However, he had promised himself to conquer the second-highest mountain in the world — might K2 of the Karakoram Range in Pakistan — which over the years had cost 33 climbers their lives, 13 in 1986 alone. The unusual name of the mountain was coined by the British. Fischer had decided to attempt the climb when he met another guide from Seattle, Ed Viesturs, in Kathmandu, Nepal, in May 1991. Viesturs had then just returned from a successful climb of Mount Everest. Fischer had almost reached the peak of Everest twice, but had to turn back due to bad weather or the need to rescue others. The bitterness of those defeats fuelled his desire to climb K2 despite the fact that climbers considered it the hardest peak to climb. **It is also equally difficult to descend.** Arriving in Pakistan on 8 June, 1992, they began their expedition with other climbers from different parts of the world. While climbing, they noticed huge glacier ice blocks looming in dangerous positions. Their routes had to be changed accordingly because of them. As Fischer was preparing to make a long, awkward step, an ice block shifted under his foot and threw him off-balance. **He plunged into a crevasse.** “Falling !” he screamed.

He became wedged between the walls of the deep crack. He felt a stab of excruciating pain in his right shoulders. His arm had been torn from its socket.

“Scott ! Scott ! Are you alright ?” Viesturs called out. “Ed, it’s my shoulder. I need help !” Fischer responded.

Sliding to the edge of the crevasse, Viesturs grabbed Fischer’s jacket and harness, and pulled him to safety. By then, Fischer’s shoulder was horribly swollen. The two tried to return to base camp. When the pain became unbearable for Fischer, Viesturs went by himself to get some help from other climbers. Among the six members who appeared after two hours was a doctor, Burt Stefanski. After injecting him with a painkiller, Stefanski grabbed his right wrist and pulled. With a loud crack, the arm popped back into its socket. he was then advised not to continue with the climb as it would be hazardous to his health.

For two weeks, he stayed patiently in the camp to rest while others continued with the expedition. Soon, he received the news that the expedition leader and a Russian had managed to reach the peak of K2. That spurred him to pursue his goal in spite of a wounded arm.

“Whatever it takes, I’ve to make it !” he told Viesturs as they resumed their climb. During the journey, they met with countless other problems. At one time, they were almost hit by an avalanche while moving to rescue others. In another instance, the mountain was struck by a fierce storm. Fighting against all odds, they struggled upwards and soon emerged into the magical world of intense blue sky. They realized they could go no further — they had reached K2’s summit. By then, another climber

had caught up with them. The remarkable beauty of the mountain stunned the trio. Viesturs was so choked with emotion that he could not talk. They whooped, raised their ice tools in triumph and hugged one another. The thirty-five minutes they spent on top of K2 would be a time the three would never forget.

Getting over their celebration, they realized their next task — the trip back to the camp. They had to return to the camp before dark. Fischer was aware that they could not remain in the snow-ravaged peak for long without shelter. Just as they were all set to return, they were faced with another problem. **The footprints they made on the snow were hardly visible.** With instinct and courage, they finally managed to struggle their way back to base camp. After fifty-three days on K2, Scott Fischer had reached his goal. He knew **he had earned it !**

*Answer the following questions using complete sentences*

1. From the first paragraph, how do we know that K2 is a dangerous mountain to climb ?
2. How do you think the British coined the name K2 ?
3. What increased Fischer's determination to climb K2 ?
4. 'It is also equally difficult to descend.' (paragraph 2) Explain clearly the meaning of this sentence.
5. 'He plunged into a crevasse.' (paragraph 3) Explain in your own words what had happened to Fischer.
6. How as Fischer medically treated for his injury ?
7. Why did Fischer become more determined to continue with the journey even with his injury ?
8. 'Fighting against all odds ...' (paragraph 10). What were the odds the writer was referring to ?
9. 'The footprints they made on the snow were hardly visible.' (paragraph 11) Explain why this was a problem for them.
10. Why do you think Fischer felt that 'he had earned it' (last paragraph) ?

## **COMPREHENSION**

### 39

In Central Africa, there lives a group of people called the Pygmies. Their average height is less than five feet. The origin of the word 'pygmy' used to refer to the distance between the elbow and the knuckles, in reference to the height of the people. One tribe of the Pygmies is called the Efe tribe. These people are semi-nomadic. During certain times of the year, they move around in the forest in search of food. The tribe continues to live in the jungle like their ancestors did, hunting and gathering, **almost totally unaffected by modernity.**

Scientists find studying the Efe so interesting because these people represent the closest we can ever get to our ancient ancestors. Their way of life remains so unchanged that learning about their lifestyle would open our eyes to how our ancestors lived as well.

The Efe are renowned as archers. Their skill as archers sets them apart from other tribes, who use different methods of hunting their prey. The Efe usually hunt in groups for animals like antelope. They surround the animal and shoot at it with arrows from different directions. The arrows have metal tips which are very lethal. The meat of the animal is divided among all the hunters who have participated in the hunt. The best parts of the animal, like the hind legs, are usually given to the hunter who made the first shot. The hunter who shoots the final arrow that brings down the animal also receives quite a

good piece of the animal. The hunters who do not manage to shoot the animal at all still get an equal share of whatever meat that is left.

The Efe also hunt for monkeys as a source of food. When they go monkey hunting, however, they go alone. With only one person, the hunter can minimize the noise that he makes so that he can successfully sneak up on the monkey. This is certainly not an easy task compared to other animals. Poison arrows are used in monkey hunting. The poison attacks the central nervous system of the monkey but it can take as long as fifteen minutes to take full effect, long enough to make an escape.

**Shooting a monkey does not always mean bringing one home for a meal.**

The Efe have **a great weakness for honey**, considered to be a delicacy. Every June, the trees start to flower and bees soon start to build beehives. Come July, the men start looking for honey. In spite of their height, they still manage to reach the hives by climbing up trees. With a basket of leaves and smouldering coals in one hand to **pacify the bees**, they reach into the beehive with the other hand and pull out the honey-comb. Those on the ground are always excited at the sight, fighting to get the first taste of the wonderful stuff. They usually stuff themselves with it, until their bellies are swollen. Sometimes, they eat all that they find, returning home to the women saying that they had no luck.

**Their full stomachs, of course, tell a different story.**

*Answer the following questions using complete sentences*

- 1.Why are the Efe called ‘Pygmies’ ?
- 2.Why is the tribe called semi-nomadic and not nomadic ?
- 3.Why do you think the Efe are ‘almost totally unaffected by modernity’ (paragraph 1) ?
- 4.Explain clearly why it is necessary for the Efe to hunt in groups, according to the passage.
- 5.Why are some hunters given a bigger share of the animal ? Give examples of who they are in your answer.
- 6.According to paragraph 4, why do you think it is not easy to sneak up on a monkey and capture it ?
- 7.’Shooting a monkey does not always mean bringing one home for a meal.’ (paragraph 4) Explain why this is so.
- 8.The Efe have ‘a great weakness for honey ...’ (paragraph 5). Explain in your own words what this means.
9. Why is it necessary for the Efe to ‘pacify the bees’ (paragraph 5) ?
- 10.’Their full stomachs, of course, tell a different story’ (paragraph 5). What does the writer mean by this sentence ?

## **COMPREHENSION**

### 40

“One small step for man, one giant leap for mankind.” This sentence captured the very essence of man’s first landing on the moon. In May 1961, the American President John F. Kennedy made a call for the first men to be sent to the moon. **This challenge was made** just days after the first man in America, Alan Shepard, went into space. President Kennedy’s challenge prompted everyone to work hard towards that goal — put a man on the moon and bring him home safely.

Three men were chosen for **this important mission** — Neil Armstrong, Michael Collins and Buzz Aldrin. All of them were experienced pilots, well versed in the science of physics and engineering. Going into space was something not to be taken lightly as there were many dangers involved. Already,

there were astronauts who had lost their lives. **Three men were killed in January 1967** in a pre-flight test. They were in a cabin that was filled with oxygen when a short circuit caused an electrical spark which in turn started a fire. It spread very quickly in the oxygen-filled cabin and all three men perished in that tragedy.

It was also a matter of pride for the Americans to be the first men on the moon. At that time, they were in the middle of a ‘space race’ with the Soviet Union. Each side tried to outdo each other in space. So far, the Soviets seemed to be ahead of the Americans. They were the ones who put the first satellite, Sputnik, into space in 1957. A Soviet cosmonaut became the first man in space. The American, Alan Shepard, only followed the following month. If the Americans succeeded in landing a man on the moon, they would then ‘win’ the race.

On 16 July, 1969, Armstrong, Collins and Aldrin prepared to be launched into space. Their spacecraft, named Apollo 11, was huge, made up of some six million parts. There were about ninety engines and motors. The astronauts were dependent on their spacecraft, for if it should fail, then they too would fail in their mission. Part of their spacecraft included a booster which when ignited, would be like a small nuclear bomb. Thus, although dangerous, it was required so as to push the spacecraft off earth and into space.

The men were cleared for the launch and were soon in space. In the weightlessness of space, the men were soon floating. They had to be well strapped and buckled when they were seated. Slowly, the Apollo 11 made its way away from the earth and nearer to the moon. On the way, the spacecraft was flooded with sunlight on one side while the other side was in complete darkness. If it remained this way for long, the sunlit side would burn up while the dark side would freeze. To avoid this, the spacecraft had to be put into a roll, thus ensuring the whole thing would be evenly heated and cooled. Apollo 11 only reached the moon after a number of days. The vast distance between the earth and the moon was the reason for this. Neil Armstrong was the first to step out onto the moon. His first step was broadcast live to the people on the earth and in triumph, Armstrong and another astronaut, Buzz Aldrin, planted the American flag on the moon. The astronauts also left behind badges which had belonged to the astronauts who had died before.

Since that momentous first step, astronauts have continued to explore space.

*Answer the following questions using complete sentences*

- 1.‘This challenge was made ... ‘ (paragraph 1). What does this challenge refer to and why is it a challenge ?
- 2.What is ‘this important mission’ in paragraph 2 referring to ?
- 3.Quote the six-word phrase in paragraph 2 that tells us that going to space was a serious affair.
- 4.What is a pre-flight test ?
- 5.‘Three men were killed in January 1967 ...’ (paragraph 2). What caused the men’s death ?
- 6.What was the ‘space race’ (paragraph 3) all about ?
- 7.What kind of danger did the booster pose ?
- 8.Explain clearly why straps and buckles were needed when the men were seated in the spacecraft.
9. What was the aim of rolling the spacecraft ?
- 10.Why did the astronauts plant the American flag on the moon ?

## **COMPREHENSION**

Howard Robard Hughes was known as one of the richest men in the world in the 70s. A successful movie producer and a fearless **flying ace**, he was already a legend by the time he was thirty. At the age of eighteen, he inherited the Hughes Tool Company from his father and became a successful billionaire businessman.

In 1942, he designed and built the largest airplane in the world at that time. It was a cargo plane nicknamed the Spruce Goose because spruce, a type of fir, was used in its construction. Hughes took great pleasure in flying and broke a number of aviation records. In 1938, he flew around the world beating the record time that existed then. There was a hero's welcome that awaited him when he returned to New York.

Hughes also became a movie producer and made a name for himself in such movies as 'Hell's Angels' and 'Sacrifice and the Outlaw'. However, in 1958, when his fame and fortune reached their peak, Hughes mysteriously went into hiding. From then on, he saw no one of the outside world and began a lifestyle of a **recluse** which shocked the world. His messages were passed through a 'palace guard' to whom he wrote more often than he spoke. The drapes in the hotel room he stayed were black and taped shut. When he moved into the ninth-floor penthouse in Las Vegas, the buttons on the elevator were redesigned to indicate only eight floors. Hughes often managed to travel around the world without a passport with the help of his friends and those who worked for him.

Hughes had curious eating habits. Sometimes for weeks, he would survive on nothing else but canned soup which he would repeatedly send back to the kitchen to be reheated many times. Inevitably, it would take him hours to get through one can. Occasionally, he would skip his meals completely. There were times he would develop a craving for banana-nut ice cream with every meal.

Perhaps his greatest and strangest obsession was with germs. Hughes once wrote to his servants an article on the subject of hygiene. He described in detail nine steps which had to be followed when opening a can of fruits, thus preventing germs from contaminating its contents.

Towards the end of his life, anything his subordinates handed to him has to be wrapped in fifteen or twenty layers of paper towels. The employee himself had to undergo a thirty-minute cleansing ritual. Hughes put paper towels on the floor rather than walk on the carpet. Even the sheets on his bed were covered in paper towels. However, ironically, he lived in unsanitary living conditions. His bedrooms were never tidied. The bedsheets were rarely changed. He hardly took care of himself — in a period of ten years, he saw the barber only three times and moreover, he hardly cut his toenails and fingernails. He was frequently found sleeping all day the last few years of his life.

On April 5, 1976, Howard Hughes died of kidney failure. In his prime, he stood at 6 feet 4 inches and weighed about seventy-five kilograms. However, at his time of his death, he had shrunk three inches and lost about thirty-five kilograms. **When he died, his wardrobe consisted of an old bathrobe, a hat and several pairs of pyjamas and shorts.** With an estimated fortune that almost reached US\$2 billion, he died as the richest man in the United States and probably the loneliest.

*Answer the following questions using complete sentences*

- 1.State **two** of Hughes' achievements apart from his wealth.
- 2.How did Hughes prove himself to be a 'flying ace' (paragraph 1) which won him much popularity ?
- 3.Explain the word 'recluse' in paragraph 3.
- 4.What did Hughes deliberately do to cut himself from the outside world ? Give one example.
- 5.Why would it take Hughes hours to finish one can of soup (paragraph 4) ?
- 6.What was odd about Hughes' craving for banana-nut ice cream ?

7. Describe **two** ways by which Hughes protected himself from ‘contamination’.
8. Was Hughes living in a home which was completely hygienic ? Give one reason to support your answer.
9. ‘When he died, his wardrobe consisted of an old bathrobe, a hat and several pairs of pyjamas and shorts.’ (last paragraph) Why was this so ?
10. Describe how Howard Hughes would have looked like just before he died.

## COMPREHENSION

### 42

No locks, no chains, no manacles could hold Harry Houdini, the greatest escape artist of all time. Born as Erich Weiss in 1874, this boy from Wisconsin in the United States of America, did not take long to make the headlines. His handcuff act became so famous that he was invited to escape from Scotland Yard, the Headquarters of the police department in London which houses the most famous police force in the world. With his arms around a pillar in the building, he was handcuffed by Melville, the Superintendent. Before Melville could leave the room, Houdini had freed himself and managed to catch up with him.

Houdini could open any lock in the world in a few minutes. Once, on a tour through Europe, famous locksmiths around the continent presented him with strong locks which they considered foolproof. Houdini opened the locks so astonishingly fast that the master mechanics hardly knew what was happening. During the tour, he escaped from jails in the cities of Liverpool, Amsterdam, Moscow and Hague. He duplicated his feats, performed during the tour, in almost every large city in the United States. The plain fact was Houdini could enter or leave virtually any room, building or cell at will. His various escape acts fascinated millions all over the world and many began to **believe he possessed supernatural powers**. His denial fell on deaf ears as many could not accept that a human could be gifted to pull them off. They were convinced of some mysterious force behind these stunts. It was not until after his death that his notebooks revealed the secrets behind his acts. Since his early youth, he practiced body control such that his body became very flexible. His fingers had the strength of pliers; and his teeth were so strong that they could be used like a can opener. His strength was so great that he could bend iron bars. He was one of the greatest athletes that ever lived.

One of his favorite stunts was to have himself bound by the police in a straitjacket which was normally used on violent criminals so that their hands are tightly bound to their body. Ropes and gadgets made of iron were also used before he was left hanging upside down. Then, in full sight of an astounded audience, the incredible man would wriggle free.

Houdini was not just a great magician as the airplane stunt would reveal later. At that time, the airplane was a new invention. **It was still subjected to more tests**. However, Houdini jumped from one plane to another while handcuffed. The event took place 3000 feet above ground. On 26 August, 1908, with a 34-kg iron ball and chain attached to his body, Houdini, with hands tied behind his back, jumped into the waters of San Francisco Bay. He soon emerged out of the water, unharmed. A similar stunt was performed later, but this truly **baffled** all the spectators who had witnessed it. He threw himself into the East River in New York City after being handcuffed inside a box which had ninety kilograms of iron attached to it. It took him just two minutes to appear out of the water.

On 5 August, 1926, Houdini proved the **ultimate impossibility**, as far as science is concerned. He allowed himself to be sealed in a coffin which was then lowered into a swimming pool. Before a number of doctors and newsmen, Houdini remained in the coffin under water for a full hour and a half

! Immediately upon emerging, he was examined by the physicians who all agreed that he **suffered no ill-effects**. However, the great magician and athlete died soon after in the same year.

*Answer the following questions using complete sentences*

- 1.What was particularly amazing about Houdini's performance at Scotland Yard ?
- 2.Why were the European locksmiths astonished at the feat ?
- 3.Explain what Houdini did in almost every large city in the United States.
- 4.Why did many 'believe he possessed supernatural powers' (paragraph 3) ? Explain your answer clearly.
- 5.How do you think Houdini was able to pen the locks and also escape from a jail cell ?
- 6.How do you think Houdini was able to do the 'straitjacket' act considering the state of his body ?
- 7.'It was still subjected to more tests.' (paragraph 5) What does this sentence suggest about the airplane ?
- 8.What do you think the airplane stunt revealed about Houdini's character trait according to paragraph 5 ?
9. Why did the stunt in the East River 'baffle' (paragraph 5) the spectators ?
- 10.Why was it the 'ultimate impossibility' for science when Houdini' suffered no ill-effects' (last paragraph) after the coffin stunt ?

## **COMPREHENSION**

### 43

After finishing his lunch one Sunday afternoon, Robin decided to take a walk out to the thick jungle area about thirty kilometers away from his isolated home situated in the outskirts of the city and away from the main road. Enjoying the cool breeze, Robin followed the routes that he knew like the back of his hand. As he walked along with his dog following closely and faithfully behind him, Robin looked out for the various species of birds and insects. Spotting one particularly unique-looking bird, Robin ran after it. Jumping over a log, he accidentally stepped into a ditch and **felt something roll beneath his feet**.

Almost instantly, Robin felt an intense pain in his right foot. Looking down, he saw the huge head of a rattlesnake, its jaws tightly clamped over his entire foot. Through his blinding pain, however, Robin was aware that his dog, Jimmy, was trying desperately to get the snake off his foot. The little dog's efforts seemed to prove futile until in utter desperation, Jimmy tore at the serpent's head. Then and only then did the snake release its grip and slither off into the bushes.

Grateful to his faithful dog, Robin sank to the ground. He **dimly** remembered his father saying that panic would cause the venom to rush to the head at a much faster speed. Hanging on to his rationality, the young boy tried to survey his options. His foot was beginning to swell and had already gone numb. In his condition, Robin knew that he would not be able to make the thirty-kilometer walk back home.

Robin's father was watching television when his youngest son came running in with the words, "Robin got bitten by a snake." Without a word, Bob Hayes jumped up and followed his son into the kitchen. Robin was lying unconscious on the floor while his mother sat sobbing beside him. Being bitten by rattlesnakes was not an **unusual occurrence**. Their home was in close proximity to the jungle area. However, thus far, Bob had only encountered such incidents with his farm animals.

Seeing his son lying on the floor with a huge bluish gash in his foot, Bob was at a loss as to what to do. With their home so far away from the city and the hospital, Bob knew that the only thing that might possibly save his son was to drive him to the hospital himself since calling an ambulance would take too long. Aware that his son's life depended on how quickly he could reach the hospital, Bob drove as fast as he could. At the hospital, both doctors and nurses worked untiringly on Robin who was in a serious condition. The venom had prevented his blood from clotting, thus causing internal bleeding. Robin had stopped breathing on his own for almost a minute. The doctors feared the worst — he could bleed to death.

At the end of a seven-hour operation, doctors were not very hopeful about Robin's survival. Nevertheless, Bob and his wife refused to give up and sat by Robin's bedside praying for his recovery. On the fifth day, their prayers were answered. Robin regained consciousness and after a few hours, he was able to talk to his parents. It was apparent to the doctors that there was no damage to the brain and doctors pronounced him fully recovered. Recounting his experience a few days later, he spoke of a white robed figure which lifted him in his arms and carried him thirty kilometers to his home just when he thought he would not be able to walk home. Said Robin, "I know it was God or an angel sent by God."

*Answer the following questions using complete sentences*

- 1.Quote the six-word phrase from the first paragraph that has the same meaning as 'very well'.
- 2.Robin 'felt something roll beneath his feet' (paragraph 1). What was it ?
- 3.How did Robin get his foot released from the jaws of the snake ?
- 4.What is the meaning of 'dimly' (paragraph 3) ?
- 5.What should a victim do right after being bitten by a venomous snake according to paragraph 5 ? Explain why he should do that.
- 6.Why was Robin not able to walk back home ? Give **two** reasons.
- 7.Explain clearly why the writer says being bitten by a rattlesnake was not an 'unusual occurrence' for the family in paragraph 4.
- 8.Why did Bob take Robin to the hospital instead of waiting for the ambulance ?
- 9.Explain how a victim can die from a rattlesnake bite.
- 10.How did the doctors determine Robin was free from brain damage ?

## **COMPREHENSION**

### 44

Mr James Hendrik is a successful businessman who travels often. Unfortunately, he spends too much time traveling from one place to another when he could save time and money by just taking the right form of transportation. Mr James Hendrik is one of those few who suffers from claustrophobia and would simply refuse to enter an airplane to fly to different parts of the world. Luckily for him, he lives in an era where one does not have to be physically at a location to be able to do business with others. Claustrophobia is an anxiety disorder in which someone has an intense and irrational fear of confined or enclosed spaces. This means that a person who suffers from it finds being in an airplane, for example, a really frightening experience.

Symptoms of claustrophobia may include excessive sweating, accelerated heart rate, hyperventilation, and nausea. Sometimes, sufferers might also feel faint, shake uncontrollably, and suffer a genuine fear of actual harm or illness even though in reality, there is none.

How do you know if you are a sufferer? Do you always look for emergency exits when you enter unfamiliar places? Do you stay near doors ready to escape? Or do you find closed-up spaces like a room without a window or having all doors shut, particularly disturbing? Maybe, just maybe, you are suffering from claustrophobia.

What can cause claustrophobia? This irrational fear of enclosed spaces can develop from either a traumatic childhood experience, like being trapped in a small space during a childhood game, or from other unpleasant experiences later on in life involving confined spaces, such as being stuck in an elevator.

Unfortunately, there is no cure for claustrophobia. However, a sufferer can take charge of his life by undergoing treatment that can help them control their fear. Treatment for claustrophobia can include behavior therapy, exposure therapy, drugs, or a combination of several treatments.

When one applies behavior therapy, one must point and recognize one's reactions to the things that trigger the anxiety in the first place. Then, through visualization and positive thinking, one must learn to disassociate the feelings of danger with the confined space.

Another type of treatment is to flood the individual with the situation over and over again until the anxiety attack passes. The sufferer is taught to visualize and relax even before he is introduced to the trigger situation. This is in the hope that the sufferer would eventually be immune to it.

Doctors can also prescribe medications to help treat claustrophobia. This includes anti-depressants and beta-blockers, which help to relieve the heart pounding often associated with anxiety attacks.

Sometimes, a claustrophobic may be exposed to regression hypnotherapy. It is a kind of therapy that encourages the individual to remember the traumatic event once again and then, instead of getting frightened by it, he is taught to see the event in a 'mature' way. This may help to decrease the sense of panic in the person. With all the treatments listed, it is still hard to be free from this learnt response. If a sufferer believes that he is going to be forever plagued with the fear, then it is already a battle lost.

No doctors can help him.

It is important to decide that if one is going to get better, one has to deal with this condition in an energetic and systematic manner. However long it takes, whatever it takes in terms of effort and determination, one is sure to be able to break free!

Remember, claustrophobia is a learnt condition and anything that has been learnt, can always be unlearnt.

*Answer the following questions using complete sentences*

1. Why is it still possible for Mr James Hendrik to be able to carry out his business successfully even though he may not be physically around ?
2. What is claustrophobia ?
3. Name two things a claustrophobic does when he is in an unfamiliar surrounding.
4. According to the passage, how does one get affected by claustrophobia ?
5. What are the three basic treatments suggested in the passage ?
6. Explain what happens when a sufferer goes through exposure therapy.
7. 'Another type of treatment is to flood the individual with the situation over and over again'. Explain the meaning of 'flood' here.

8. What do the prescribed drugs do to claustrophobics ?
9. How can claustrophobics help doctors free them from this irrational fear ?
- 10.What can be done with a learnt condition ?

## **COMPREHENSION**

### 45

Anwar was adamant. He wanted to get the sugar apples for his pregnant wife. He wanted the best for his first-born. With only a plastic bag to put the apples and armed with a short blunt knife, he tracked into the abandoned plantation where a few good sugar apple trees still stood. As he was about to place his foot forward, something darted across his path.

"Horrible lizard!" He hastily stamped on it till the lizard was just a sticky blob on the ground. He continued on his way; his heart trembled all the way to his destination.

He was aware of the reason for the hasty abandonment by the owners. Lately, the attacks were getting more rampant and they were not taking any chances. They had abandoned their lucrative business and moved elsewhere that was safer.

Anwar knew of the dangers but he had not seen them. Besides, the last attack had occurred a few months ago and ever since then, there had been no news of any new attacks. Anwar made his way deeper and deeper into the forgotten orchard.

Soon, the trees came to view. Anwar's heart leapt with joy to see the branches hanging low, straining under the massive weight of the countless apples. His heart trembled again, this time jubilant. With deft limbs, he climbed up and helped himself. He ate as if there was no tomorrow. It was not very often that he could eat his fill.

About fifteen fruits later, he started to choose the ripest, biggest, juiciest ones to bring back home. Suddenly, he heard loud grunts. Anwar froze. No, it could not be! He told himself to keep calm. However, his worst fear came true. He looked down only to have his eyes locked in a hungry stare. They had arrived!

The bag of sugar apples fell on the head of one of the two dragons that had appeared out from nowhere. Anwar gave out a blood-curdling scream that was promptly drowned by grunting and hissing.

Anwar scrambled higher though there was hardly any great distance between him and the dragons. Sugar apple trees are but just stumps.

The dragons, attracted by the smell of the fruits initially, began to get excited by a newer smell-fresh meat! They lifted their front legs and were practically standing up against the trunk of the apple tree like excited dogs seeing their owners. However, the similarity ended there. They were gruesome creatures and as they lunged forward, Anwar screamed even more as he took in their serrated teeth. Anwar did not know when the screaming would stop. He tried to inch higher but the fragile branches towards the end of the tree broke and he lost his balance. Down to the ground he fell, his whole life flashing by. It was only a short distance down but to Anwar, it felt like eternity.

He fell right on top of one of the two dragons, his body cushioned by the impact of the fall somewhat but his troubles had not ended. Instead, they had just begun!

Komodo Dragons can grow up to three metres long. They can weigh as much as 70 kilograms, have shark-like serrated teeth and a bite that can be deadly. Their saliva contains roughly 50 different known bacteria strains, so infection is a risk.

Anwar had no scientific knowledge about these dragons. All he knew was his end was near. He fell to the ground and with blinding speed, one of the jaws of the prehistoric reptile sunk deep into him. Just as he was about to give up, he heard footsteps and gunshots.

"Help ..."

*Answer the following questions using complete sentences*

1. Why did Anwar want to go to the plantation ?
2. What could have attacked the orchard owners, making them abandon their plantations ?
3. Why was Anwar sure that he would not be attacked ?
4. Quote a word that shows that Anwar was good at climbing.
5. What tells you that Anwar was not a rich man ?
6. Did Anwar know what was at the base of the tree he was on even before he looked down ?
7. How was Anwar discovered ?
8. Why did Anwar not break any bones when he fell from the tree ?
9. Even if one escaped from a Komodo Dragon after being bitten, why can it still bring about death ?
10. How do we know that the Komodo Dragon is fast ?

### **COMPREHENSION**

#### 46

I covered my face as the village healer, or the 'Messenger of God' as he was better known, nicked the arm of the delirious man and drew blood. The man struggled violently but it was futile as he was in firm grasps of the healer's helpers.

The witch doctor's black lips, forever chanting, blew blessings towards the wounds and when he reached the end of his mantra, he lifted the gaping wound, forced it wider, and poured the fresh, unadulterated, and nauseating blood of the newly slaughtered leopard right in. His chanting became louder and louder and at last he roared as he spread his arms towards the black night, beckoning to the dark forces to aid him. The feline's blood mixed into the wound of the now unconscious man.

"Come! Now!" He shouted in frenzy as his body convulsed.

The crowd hushed with awe and respect.

I cowed further down behind my mum, as the rest of the villagers inched forward with frenzy; each craning their necks for a better view. I shut my eyes. Somehow, at a tender age of seven, I could not will my mind to accept the healer's way. I never did. "Tomorrow," the healer declared, "we shall have the leopard man to protect us!"

Tomorrow arrived; the leopard man was dead.

The village mourned for forty days. They were in a state of confusion. The healer blamed the unnatural forces that came with the sudden wind. His magic, he had pompously declared, had been overridden by some forces, forcing him to go on a pilgrimage to the mountain yonder.

For forty days, the villagers were without a healer. For forty days, we were without any protection. Women and children got sick, men moped around—until the next return of the healer.

The healer did return, as always, and as always, the village's balance would be restored. Things would continue normally — people would get sick for some reason or another and the healer would see to them. Some got better; others took a turn for the worse. Periodically he would disappear but would always be welcomed back with open arms. No one dared to go against the 'Messenger of God'.

I became the silent skeptic. Somehow, I could never accept the revered healer, the ‘Messenger of God’, the ‘life giver’! Little did I know I would become one...My parents, being rather eccentric, had brought me to the nearby town to be schooled, much to the chagrin of the rest of the community but their actions were never opposed as they had deemed us harmless.

I studied the language and the mind of the white man. I grew into a white man. I furthered my studies and had a penchant for chemicals and their magic. I became a white doctor. For years, I spent my time, my life, on the white man’s soil. Soon, it was time for me to return. My heart swelled with pride as I made my way back to my sleepy village, yearning to be home once again. In my hand, was a white man’s black bag, containing all the necessary equipment an aspiring doctor would need.

A massive celebration greeted me and we ate, drank, and danced the whole night long. Suddenly, in the midst of euphoria, there was a loud, drawn wail coming from one of the mud houses belonging to Aneke. Everyone rushed in, only to see her weeping over her newborn. The ‘Messenger of God’ elbowed through and touched its forehead, declaring the devil had chosen to reside in the newborn’s innocent temple. He proceeded to make a holy drink of ash and water.

I stopped him.. He stared hard into my eyes. Other eyes, frightened but awed, shifted back and forth.”No...” I said quietly. “No?” he glared. “No,” I demanded.

Suddenly, he unleashed a torrent of mantras presumably cursing me and my seven generations to come but still I held on to my dignity. I reached into my bag and produced a syringe. The metallic syringe glittered menacingly. Women and children screamed and a few burly hands reached out to me.”Leave him,” he cooed and the hands were removed. I moved towards the young mother and smiled.

Fearfully, she handed me her infant who was clearly having a bad case of diarrhoea. I gave the baby a jab and some oral medicine and like magic, he was soon lulled to sleep.

Everyone cheered! We danced all night long and through the morning. I was ecstatic though I could not shake the ominous stare of the defeated healer who hurriedly embarked on his pilgrimage. He never returned.

I settled back comfortably to the old village routine. People still got sick once in a while but there was no longer the necessity for us to bring fresh blood of slaughtered animals or drinking ash water. We became stronger both physically and spiritually. From that day onwards, I never left my village. They clearly needed me — the healer.

*Answer the following questions using complete sentences*

- 1.What do you think killed the delirious man in the first paragraph ?
- 2.What does the word ‘unadulterated’ mean ?
- 3.Why did the writer not tell anyone about how he felt towards the healer ?
- 4.What was the healer’s reason for failing to turn the man into a leopard man ?
- 5.What do you think was the actual reason for his pilgrimage ?
- 6.Quote a phrase that shows that it was not the first time that the healer had run away.
- 7.Why did the villagers not stop the writer’s parents from sending him to school ?
- 8.What does ‘I became a white doctor’ mean ?
9. Describe the healer’s feelings as he cooed to his helpers to let go of the writer’s hands.
- 10.Why do you think the healer did not return from his pilgrimage this time around ?

## COMPREHENSION

The five-metre snake slithered into the small pond and waited patiently for its prey. Its body looked just like a half-submerged log floating lazily. Only its eyes and nostrils were above the surface of the water while the rest of it lay hidden.

Matthew joined his cousins on a well-worn path to the pond. It was a sweltering day and a dip in his grandfather's pond would certainly be heavenly.

At the water's edge, Matthew paid little attention to what looked like the tip of a dirty log. He had missed the glistening eyes that were locked on him. The anaconda tracked the boy's every movement, its flickering tongue picking up the scent of its prey. Deeper and deeper, he waded.

The snake stiffened, ready to strike. With great grace, the anaconda cocked its neck into an S-shape and with blinding speed, shot its head out of the water. Matthew reflexively dodged the long dark shape that came at him and turned to run. But the anaconda reared back again and struck for the second time, this time successfully.

At that instant, Jack came round the bend. For a moment, he could not understand the frightened cries of his young grandchildren who were running. However, he soon spotted what had happened and understood the danger. With all his might, he ran towards the pond, yelling for the rest to get him a knife.

The reptile had already trapped Matthew neatly in a coil. Jack was aghast. He could only see his grandson's hair and knew that he was looking at the top of Matthew's head. Frantically, Jack grabbed the wet, slippery hose and pulled hard. The first coil slipped and Matthew's head appeared.

He pulled hard at all the coils and soon, the shoulder, the chest and the waist came to view.

Meanwhile, the snake was not going to give up its prey easily. Thrashing about wildly, it struggled to recoil back but could not. Its body had been sat upon by a seventy-kilogram angry grandfather!

Jack gasped as the coil round his grandson's waist slipped away, revealing the predator's head, clamped securely on his grandson's waist. Jack saw red! Picking up a rock twice the size of his fist, he hammered it with all his strength onto the beast's head. The remaining coils slackened for a fraction of a second but tightened again, this time doubly hard.

Jack was losing hope when his wife appeared by his side, thrusting a knife at him. He punctured the coils. Still the anaconda refused to let go.

**Slash! Slash! Slash!**

The snake relaxed its grip. Jack held his breath. Would its muscles tighten again? Jack braced himself for the worst as he held the knife tightly.

The coils loosened and fell into the pond with mighty splashes. The snake had been mortally wounded. Jack's shoulder slumped as he assessed the damage."Grandpa!"

The single word jolted him to reality and in an instant, Matthew was swept off his feet and rushed to the hospital.

*Answer the following questions using complete sentences*

- 1.Why would one not be able to gauge the full length of the anaconda ?
- 2.Name the two ways the anaconda knew that a prey was approaching.
- 3.Pick the two-worded phrase that shows that the snake was very fast.
- 4.Why did Jack decide to sit on the coils ?
- 5.When did Jack actually get to see the snake's head ?
- 6.What made Jack lose hope initially ?
7. Who could have told Jack's wife to bring a knife ?

- 8.What was Jack bracing himself for ?
9. Quote the sentence that shows that the snake had died.
- 10.How was Matthew brought to safety ?

## COMPREHENSION

### 48

Today is a great day for baking. The sun is shining and there is a gentle breeze. It will be a perfect afternoon for tea with friends. Mrs Docker heats the oven up and starts to rummage through her refrigerator to look for all the ingredients for her cake.

She takes a few eggs, some self-raising flour, some butter, and a box of mixed fruits. She also arms herself with a packet of sugar and some chopped nuts.

Mrs Docker begins to hum a tune as she puts on an apron. Then she breaks a few eggs into a bowl and adds some flour into it. The eggs and flour form a sticky batter. Then, she adds some butter. The batter becomes really creamy. Mrs Docker uses her index finger and samples some of the sticky batter. It tastes nice and creamy. Then she adds the mixed fruits. She tastes it again. Mrs Docker enjoys tasting the cake batter!

Then Mrs Docker puts her batter aside. Next, she heats up a pan. She is going to make some caramel. Mrs Docker gently puts the sugar into the warm pan. Soon, the sugar starts to melt.

Mrs Docker stirs the sugar carefully so that it will not be burnt. As she stirs, she pops some chopped nuts into her mouth. Stir... stir... stir... Chew... chew... chew...Mrs Docker's hands are busy stirring while her mouth is busy chewing.

Soon, the sugar starts to melt and begins to bubble at the edge. It is also nicely browned. Quickly, she turns off the pan and immediately pours the caramel into her batter. Her batter sizzles and turns brown. Now, it no longer looks yellowish, but takes on a nice brown hue. The smell of caramel wafts throughout the kitchen. Mrs Docker gives a gasp. She has forgotten all about the chopped nuts! Oh well! She pops the rest of the remaining nuts into her mouth. She is not going to let any go to waste! Once the batter is nice and evenly browned, Mrs Docker puts it into a baking tin and places it in the oven. Now, all she needs to do is to wait for it to bake nicely. Meanwhile, she can now call up all her friends for tea.

At four o'clock, Mrs Docker's friends arrive. They are really hungry. Mrs Docker cuts generous slices of cakes for her friends. She has also prepared a huge pot of tea."Aren't you having a slice of your yummy cake, Shirley?" asks her friend, who is busily tucking into her enormous slice of cake. "No, thank you. I am feeling rather full. I am not sure why as I haven't had my lunch. Even then, I seem not to be able to lose weight!" she complains.

Even her friends are puzzled. They continue to enjoy their cake while Mrs Docker looks on enviously.

*Answer the following questions using complete sentences*

- 1.How do we know that Mrs Docker enjoys tasting cake batter ?
2. Explain how one makes caramel.
- 3.What is she eating as she is stirring the sugar ?
- 4.'She is not going to let any go to waste !' What is it that she refuses to waste and what does she do to it ?
- 5.What does Mrs Docker do when the cake is baking in the oven ?
- 6.Is the cake that Mrs Docker baked delicious ? How do you know ?

- 7.Mrs Docker is not a stingy person. List two things that she does that shows she is a generous person.
- 8.Why is Mrs Docker not eating ?
9. Why do you think Mrs Docker cannot lose weight ?
10. Why is Mrs Docker envious ?

## **COMPREHENSION**

**49**

The Titanic must be one of the most famous ships ever built. She set off on her maiden voyage in April 1912, crossing from Southampton in England to New York City in America. In between, she would make stops at France and Ireland. The Titanic was such a huge ship that she weighed more than 46 000 tons and was about 270 meters long.

Thought to be virtually unsinkable, she was built such that any flooded compartment could be sealed off quickly and easily, preventing the spread of water through the ship. Passengers would then have ample time to be rescued since the builders of the ship believed that in the worst scenario, the Titanic would probably take two to three days to be completely submerged.

That fateful night, the temperature was close to zero degree Celsius. Two lookouts stationed at a high point on the ship were freezing but they had to be alert to watch for any signs of danger that the giant ship might face. In that temperature, icebergs—huge mountains of ice floating in the sea — were a constant threat. It was already close to midnight, so the darkness that surrounded them greatly impeded their field of vision. Even if they perceived any dangerous icebergs, it might be too late to avert a disaster. The moonless sky only worsened the situation.

Then the worst happened. One of the lookouts spotted a huge iceberg right in the path of the Titanic. He immediately rang the alarm. The captain of the ship reacted just as promptly and ordered the Titanic to change her direction. For a few moments, it seemed as if a disaster had been avoided as the Titanic glided past the iceberg. Then suddenly, the ship hit the ice. As a result of the huge size of the ship, the passengers did not feel much of the impact, but the damage was done. The first six compartments of the ship were flooded and immediately sealed off. However, the six compartments were located at the front of the ship. The additional weight caused it to tilt forward. Consequently, sea water entered the ship again. The front of the ship became so heavy that the propellers, located at the end of the ship, were lifted out of the water.

The captain realized that all the passengers would have to be evacuated. Yet, all the lifeboats combined could only save less than half the passengers on the ship.

At 2.20 a.m., the Titanic vanished below the sea. Along with her went more than 1500 people, including the captain, the designer of the ship and many famous people. In just about three hours, the Titanic ironically went from being an unsinkable ship to a ship that lay at the bottom of the ocean.

*Answer the following questions using complete sentences*

- 1.Which country was the Titanic headed for ?
- 2.Why was the Titanic virtually unsinkable ?
- 3.According to the passage, what were the ship builders confident of in case of Titanic was about to sink ?
- 4.Which word in paragraph 3 has the same meaning as ‘hindered’ ?
- 5.What was the lookouts’ job ?

- 6.Explain clearly how icebergs can be a threat to any ship.
- 7.In what way had the moonless sky ‘worsened the situation’ (paragraph 3) for the lookouts ?
- 8.Why did it seem ‘as if a disaster had been avoided’ (paragraph 4) ?
9. Explain clearly what the ‘additional weight’ (paragraph 4) refers to.
- 10.From the last paragraph, explain clearly the irony of the Titanic being hailed as unsinkable.

## **COMPREHENSION**

**50**

Deserts are usually hot and barren places; yet, they are also beautiful. A few plants, rocks and dusty red-brown soil make up the ingredients of most North American deserts where there is sufficient food and water for certain animals to survive.

One famous dry and hot place in the world with no visible rock or plant and barely any water is the Sahara Desert. It is the largest desert in the world and is located in Northern Africa. It gives the impression of an ocean of pure white sand. Surprisingly, the Sahara is home to many strange animals. These animals have survived over many generations because they were able to adapt to their particular conditions. However, a certain number of species were unable to adapt fast enough to their environment and so died out. One of the most interesting animals in the Sahara is the sand stink which in French means ‘fish of the desert’. The sand stink behaves just like a fish except that instead of in water, it ‘swims’ through the sand. Its legs act as fins and the hard scales on its skin act as an armor helping it move through the sand. A piece of transparent skin protects its eyes as it swims through the sand. Its eggs are covered with skin to prevent dehydration.

Another desert animal that hides from the sun is the desert shrimp. The lifespan of these tiny animals is only about two weeks because that is about when puddles of water from desert rainstorms dry up. They are able to survive in the hot conditions, but without their main source of survival, they dehydrate and are virtually roasted to death.

One of the rare animals able to bask in the desert sun is the camel. For many hundreds of years, the camel has been the ‘horse of the desert’, helping travelers across the desert. This ‘horse’ is slow-moving, yet it is big and strong enough to carry extremely heavy loads. The camel has large feet almost like snowshoes. This characteristic prevents it from sinking into the sand.

A camel is able to drink up to one hundred and eighteen liters of water in a day. Once it is full, it can move for five to seven days without water, carrying its own portable ‘water tank’. Its humps help to store fats which serve as a storage of strength, removing the need for food, sometimes for a week. In fact, the humps become smaller as the camel consumes the fats stored. They also help to regulate the camel’s temperature.

*Answer the following questions using complete sentences*

- 1.Explain the term ‘barren places’ (paragraph 1).
- 2.Why are plants not found in the Sahara Desert while there are some in the deserts in North America ?
- 3.Why is it surprising that the Sahara Desert is ‘home to many strange animals’ (paragraph 2) ?
4. According to paragraph 3, why did some species in the Sahara Desert become extinct ?
- 5.In what way is a sand stink like a fish ?
- 6.Explain how a sand stink moves around without getting sand in its eyes.
- 7.What is the ‘main source of survival’ (paragraph 4) for the desert shrimp ?

8.What are the camel's two most visible features that make them the perfect 'horse of the desert' in the Sahara ? Also explain the usefulness of each feature to the camel in your answer.

9. In what way is the camel able to survive without drinking water in the desert for days ? Explain in your own words.

10.Why does the camel have energy to travel for days in the desert without eating ?

### **COMPREHENSION**

#### 51

While their parents stretched out on the beach, Rebecca, thirteen, Kelly, eleven, and Jason, nine, were busy frolicking at the water's edge. It was quite early in the morning and the sea was quiet except for a red and white boat named Sniper that was making several trips across the water. As he began to doze off, Richard saw Rebecca and Kelly heading into the water. The girls were strong swimmers, and he was not worried for their safety.

About half an hour later, Richard was rudely awakened by Jason's frantic screams. The Sniper had smashed into his sisters. Pointing at the sea, Jason was hysterical.

Slightly disoriented, Richard jumped up to see his wife running towards the water. She too was screaming and hearing their cries, several passers-by had also begun to run towards the beach.

Reaching the sea, Richard scrambled in and began to swim towards his daughters, but it was a crew member from the Sniper who reached them first. He managed to pull them onto the boat and bring them to shore.

Not being able to see the full extent of their injuries, Richard and Cecilia were initially glad to see their daughters safe on solid ground. When the rescuer put the girls down, however, Cecilia turned to her husband in horror. Rebecca was white with shock, making short gasps. Her right arm was missing from her elbow down. All that was left was a huge ugly mass of matted flesh and bone. Kelly was unconscious and her foot had been sheared off above the ankle. Cecilia felt her weak pulse and grimaced.

As the ambulance rushed the girls to the hospital, bystanders who had gathered at the site of the horrible tragedy set to work. Connecting a prawning net to two small boats, they dragged the net back and forth across the water but with no luck. Then, a few searchers waded out into the sea and lined up shoulder to shoulder. They walked forward covering the accident area until the water was shoulder deep. Time was running out and they knew that if they did not find the body parts fast, it would be too late. Within a short while, someone held up Kelly's foot. A few metres away, Rebecca's arm was recovered. Packed in ice, they were immediately rushed to the hospital.

At the hospital, surgeons worked feverishly for eight hours to save the girls. Rebecca got through the surgery well and although it took four months for her to feel anything in her right arm, she was eventually able to regain normal use of her arm. Kelly, however, was not so lucky. A few hours after attaching her foot, she developed an infection and doctors had to amputate part of her leg. After recovery, she was fitted with an artificial limb instead.

Despite the tragic outcome, however, the Gomez family remains upbeat and considers themselves lucky. Being alive is all that matters. Both girls treasure life much more now and they continue to enjoy an active lifestyle like they used to.

*Answer the following questions using complete sentences*

1.When did Richard see Rebecca and Kelly go for a swim ?

- 2.Quote the word in paragraph 1 that has the same meaning as ‘playing happily’.
- 3.Why do you think Jason was hysterical ?
- 4.From paragraph 3, who were the people who tried to reach Rebecca and Kelly ?
- 5.Why had Cecilia ‘turned to her husband in horror’ (paragraph 4) ?
- 6.Was Rebecca conscious after the accident ? Quote the sentence from paragraph 4 to justify your answer.
- 7.What does ‘set to work’ (paragraph 5) refer to ?
- 8.Why did the bystanders stand shoulder to shoulder in the water and walk forward ?
- 9.Explain fully how successful the surgeries for Rebecca and Kelly were.
- 10.Why do you think the Gomez family’ considers themselves lucky’ (last paragraph) ?

## **COMPREHENSION**

### 52

Jacques-Yves Cousteau was well-known as an explorer of the sea and as an environmentalist, calling for the protection of the sea. He was also an inventor whose invention has helped many today to scuba dive.

Cousteau’s dream was to be able to explore the sea freely. Before his invention of the Aqua-Lung, this was not possible. People were able to dive then. However, heavy helmet and boots, and a hose that supplied air, which was perhaps connected to a ship on the surface of the water, added to the cumbersome outfit. Divers could not move freely then but had to struggle across the seabed. This was not for Cousteau and he realized he could make vital changes. For air, the diver could carry a cylinder of compressed air with a hose that allowed him to breathe in and out. Through a joint effort with a French engineer, Emile Gagnan, the Aqua-Lung was eventually designed.

The Aqua-Lung was unique in that it allowed the diver to go to deep waters, yet, simultaneously, protected him from being crushed by the pressure of the water. The Aqua-Lung, in effect, opened up the sea to man. We can now explore underwater caves, study the wrecks of ships from long ago, and observe the behavior of underwater creatures.

Cousteau also oversaw the building of a tiny submarine called the ‘Diving Saucer’, which can collect underwater specimens and even take photographs. Thus, even if a person cannot dive to an area because it is simply too deep and dangerous, the ‘Diving Saucer’ can be used instead.

Through his work, Cousteau became aware of the increasing pollution of the sea. He wanted others to be aware of it also—the overfishing and the pollution that had damaged ocean life. Cousteau passed away in 1997, but his work is carried on by his son. Many people, who are just as concerned about the state of the oceans, continue to fight for the protection of the sea today.

*Answer the following questions using complete sentences*

- 1.Who is an environmentalist ? Explain why Cousteau was called one.
- 2.Before the invention of the Aqua-Lung, why was Cousteau unable to explore the sea freely ?
- 3.Why must air be supplied to divers ?
- 4.Quote the sentence from paragraph 2 that tells us the Aqua-Lung was not the sole invention of Cousteau.
- 5.Based on paragraph 2, why is it not necessary for a diver using an Aqua-Lung to be connected to a ship ?
6. What will too much water pressure do to a diver ?

- 7.What does ‘simultaneously’ (paragraph 3) mean ?
8. In what way had the Aqua-Lung ‘opened up the sea to man’ (paragraph 3) ?
9. Explain clearly how the ‘Diving Saucer’ is useful in the study of the sea.
10. From the last paragraph, explain clearly the ‘state of the oceans’.

## **COMPREHENSION**

### 53

Sashe put his arrows into his quiver, took up the bow and spears and set off towards the plains. The sky was getting brighter. He wanted to call his brother-in-law to come along but decided against it because he had not hunted alone for some time.

Sashe travelled for a distance till finally, he saw an antelope. With his arrow aimed at the target, he took in a deep breath and released the arrow. The arrow, with its tip laced with a potent substance, buried itself in the belly of the antelope. It fell heavily to the ground. Sashe just had to wait for a minute before death took over. By now, Sashe was bursting with pride. He was still skilful despite his recent recovery from a bout of illness.

It was almost midday when Sashe returned home. He walked to the fireplace in front of his hut and sat quietly. Toma noticed that his son-in-law had returned from hunting. He went up to him to ask about his hunting trip.

“So did you kill anything this morning, Sashe?” Sashe was startled by his father-in-law’s sudden appearance but he was secretly pleased that he asked. It was a great achievement and one that deserved attention. Sashe knew how he must answer, so in traditional fashion, he said, “No, not at all.... Maybe I did something ... a tiny one.”

“A small one, eh? We’ll get some of the men to take a look at it later this afternoon,” Toma said with a smile. In his heart, he knew that Sashe had killed a big one.

Later that afternoon, a group of five men left the village to carry the antelope back to the village. The five men soon heaved the heavy animal home. Toma saw the huge animal but reacted indifferently. There was great excitement in the village. Everyone was impressed. Karu’s brother, Gumi, stepped up to Sashe and said, “Look at this antelope! It’s hardly enough to feed all our families.” Sashe was not surprised to receive the insult from him. In fact, he was expecting it. Not that Gumi was a mean person, but he was doing it out of tradition. Every hunter who brought home meat was subjected to the same treatment. His forefathers were all fine hunters who had received similar insults. He was a part of this heritage.

The animal brought home had to be ridiculed. They called it ‘insulting the meat’. It helped to curb the growth of the successful hunter’s pride. Their way of living did not tolerate feelings of superiority. It was also a tradition to maintain equality. The meat must be distributed to all the families in the village. Selfishness was another intolerable trait.

Sashe’s train of thoughts was broken when he was called away to help carve the animal. He took up his machete and joined the rest of the men.

*Answer the following questions using complete sentences*

- 1.Based on paragraph 1, at what time of the day did Sashe go hunting ?
- 2.Why did Sashe change his mind about asking his brother-in-law to hunt with him ?
- 3.Sashe ‘just had to wait for a minute’ (paragraph 2) before the antelope would be dead. How did Sashe know for sure that the antelope would die almost instantly ?

4. Why was Sashe proud about killing the antelope ?
5. Why was Sashe secretly pleased with Toma's question ?
6. What does 'reacted indifferently' (paragraph 6) mean ?
7. What were the villagers 'impressed' (paragraph 7) about ?
8. Why was Sashe not surprised when Gumi insulted him ?
9. Quote the sentence from paragraph 8 that suggests Sashe's hunting skills were just as good as his forefathers'.
10. In what way did the tradition of 'insulting the meat' affect the successful hunter ?

## COMPREHENSION

### 54

Mihan wondered how Josa would take care of himself. She was sure he took little money with him. They had no relatives staying nearby and the next town was very far away. She also wondered why Josa and their father had to quarrel so often over trivial matters.

Mihan looked at the calendar. It had been three months since Josa left. She finally confirmed the look she had seen in his eyes before he left. She knew he was determined to leave and support himself. He had tolerated his father's constant scolding for far too long.

Many years passed and Mihan's parents became too feeble to run the stall so they decided to close it down. The burden of providing for the family fell on Mihan's shoulders. Mihan spent a long time seeking a job and she finally found one as a maid-servant in a rich man's house.

Mihan did all her chores properly. She did not laze around. Whenever she met any of her employers, she greeted them. The other servants in the house liked her very much because she cared for them and helped them when she was free. They sympathised with her as she was the poorest of them all and was constantly in need of money to make ends meet.

One fateful day, the mistress of the house found her most expensive necklace missing. She called for all her servants and questioned them. None of them admitted to have stolen it. She was furious and adamant that one of them was the culprit. She singled out Mihan and insisted that she was the one who stole it and sold it off for money. Taking the word of the rich woman, the police put Mihan behind bars.

Mihan was sitting all alone wondering how fate could be so cruel to her. She looked at the other prison cells and saw other prison mates. She looked at every one of them but her eyes finally rested on one particular person. Mihan felt a lump in her throat. That person had a birthmark on his right cheek. His hair showed some grey strands. Suddenly, he got up and walked with the same limp that she recognised so well. He was a grown man. At that moment, the man looked in Mihan's direction. There was a startled look on his face."Mihan! Sis!" the man cried out.

Tears started to well up in Mihan's eyes. Josa was alive and well! Maybe it was a blessing in disguise that she was put in prison.

*Answer the following questions using complete sentences*

1. What was the 'speck' (paragraph 1) that Mihan was looking at ?
2. Father and son never saw eye to eye. What does this sentence mean ?
3. Give evidence from paragraph 2 which showed that Mihan was worried about Josa.
4. According to the passage, what were Josa's **two** main reasons for leaving home ?

- 5.Why did Mihan have to look for a job ?
- 6.Name **two** character traits Mihan exhibited while working as a maidservant. (Give one word to describe each character trait.)
- 7.Why do you think the mistress singled out Mihan ?
- 8.Which word in paragraph 6 has the same meaning as ‘unwilling to change an opinion’ ?
9. Why did Mihan suspect the man she saw in prison was her brother ?
- 10.Why did Mihan feel that it was ‘a blessing in disguise’ (last paragraph) that she was put in prison ?

## **COMPREHENSION**

**55**

Most people find animals like dogs, cats and birds adorable and some keep them in their homes as pets. However, there are also people who abuse animals. They enjoy torturing helpless creatures to gain a sense of control over them. Their pleasure is increased since these animals very often cannot do anything to defend themselves.

Reports of animal abuse are increasing. One just has to look in the newspaper to see the increase in the number of cases of animal abuse. What is worse is that for every abuse case reported, there are probably many more that are not. Not long ago, a local newspaper reported several cases of animal abuse. In one particularly cruel case, a group of young children caught a kitten and did horrible things to it. Not only did they tie rubber bands around the kitten but they also stapled its ears closed just for fun. Helpless to defend itself, the kitten had to endure this cruel torture. Apart from this case, there have also been several other cases in which people deliberately killed animals by throwing them out of high windows or poisoning them simply because they could not tolerate the noises the animals made. While most of us are disgusted to see or hear about such inhumane behavior towards animals, animal abuse is still on the rise. These animal abusers fail to consider the needs and feelings of the animals. In order to reduce and ultimately prevent such cases of animal abuse, the Society for the Prevention of Cruelty to Animals or SPCA was set up. The organization not only aims to prevent cruelty to animals but also cares for unwanted animals that have been badly abused. So far, the SPCA has proven to be a haven for abused animals. The organization also has a number of trained people to nurse injured animals back to health.

Unfortunately, there are people who treat the SPCA as a place where they can ‘discard’ their unwanted pets after they get tired of them. This has led to the SPCA being short of space and money. The organization now only takes in animals that have been abused even though people still continue to abandon their unwanted pets. Such animals usually make their way to residential areas to forage for food. Much to the annoyance of residents, they make a lot of noise and loiter outside houses or at void decks below their flats.

The SPCA has embarked on some programs to prevent animal abuse. They give talks in schools explaining why animals should not be abused. It is only through educating the public that animal abuse can be prevented.

*Answer the following questions using complete sentences*

- 1.Give **two** reasons why some people gain pleasure in abusing animals.
- 2.In what way are there actually more animal abuse cases than reported ?
3. Based on paragraph 2, give the reason why the children ill-treated the kitten.

4. What do you think made the kitten ‘helpless to defend itself’ (paragraph 2) ?
5. Quote **two** words in paragraph 2 that have the same meaning as ‘bear with’.
6. State **two** aims of the SPCA.
7. What does a ‘haven’ (paragraph 3) refer to ?
8. In what way do people take advantage of the SPCA ?
9. Why do people find stray animals annoying ?
10. What does the SPCA feel is the best way to prevent animal abuse ?

## **COMPREHENSION**

### **56**

The bus stop was empty except for some stray dogs that lay curled up under the seats. Dao watched them in fear. She had not had anything to eat since morning and her tummy was starting to make loud, funny noises. She tucked her cloth bag containing some old clothes, marbles she had won the day before, and books under her arm and tiptoed to the tea stall that had already closed for the day.

Bending down, she found an opening in the tin door the owner had used as a shutter.

The tiny shop smelt of stale bread and milk. In the dim lighting, she could barely make out the stove from the tables. She knocked into a number of things before getting used to the interior. Dao placed her bag on a flipped-over bench that rested atop a long table and then started to rummage the shelves. She found packets of spices and containers of sugar and salt but could not find what she needed. She climbed on the metal stove and leant against the shelf, stretching her slender arm to reach behind the rows and rows of tea leaf tins.

Dao swallowed back tears as she searched frantically. She could not believe the stall seemed to hold no leftovers. She jumped down and sat cross-legged on the floor, defeated. From the soft light that filtered through the tin opening, Dao could see clear plastic bags containing some brown things tucked underneath the stove. She crawled under and smelt heaven. Tearing through the plastic, she wolfed down the soft brown buns without thought. Tears of joy streamed down her tiny face as she happily stuffed one bun after another into her mouth.

Dao sat up straight. Her heart began to palpitate as the chatting and laughing of men grew louder. She stopped munching and covered her mouth. Her mind raced to look for an escape route. Maybe they were going to open the shutters. What if they interrogated her? If they knew the truth, she was sure they would drag her back to her village. Dao sat still, not knowing what to do.

A soft whining sound followed their chatter that seemed far away. A puppy put its face through the opening and sniffed the bun. Although afraid, she broke the bread into tinier pieces. The puppy sniffed the pieces before wiping the floor clean. The shadows outside the shop soon disappeared and silence returned.

The darkness that surrounded her became a part of her. She no longer felt afraid or hungry. Clutching her cloth bag, she curled to her side and dozed off.

*Answer the following questions using complete sentences*

- 1.What time of the day was it ? State **two** points from paragraph 1 to support your answer.
- 2.How did Dao enter the tea stall ?
- 3.Why had Dao ‘knocked into a number of things’ (paragraph 2) inside the shop ?
- 4.Dao ‘could not find what she needed’ (paragraph 2). What was it that she was searching for ?

- 5.What was the 'heaven' (paragraph 3) Dao was referring to ?
- 6.From paragraph 4, what did Dao hear that made her stop what she had been doing ?
- 7.What was 'the truth' (paragraph 4) she was afraid the men might come to know ?
- 8.Explain clearly why Dao was 'afraid' (paragraph 5) when she saw the puppy.
9. Explain clearly why Dao 'no longer felt afraid' (last paragraph ).
- 10.Based on the passage, do you think Dao could be a teenager or someone older ? What is the evidence in the passage that supports your answer ?

## **COMPREHENSION**

**57**

For many people, the story of Amelia Earhart is a legend. She is famous for her many exploits as a flyer but she is still perhaps most well-known for her disappearance. She vanished without a trace sometime in July 1937. As a young woman, Amelia fell in love with flying. She was determined to learn to control an airplane all by herself. Soon, she was spending all her free time on weekends practising flying, taking off and landing at the airport near Boston. She was soon offered an opportunity to be the first woman to cross the Atlantic Ocean, flying from America to England. She was, at that time, not a very experienced pilot yet, so two men would be piloting the plane-she would just go along for the ride.

The flight was successfully completed, and Amelia was showered with attention, although she protested that she had actually not done anything. Amelia was determined to repeat the flight, only this time, she would fly solo. She completed the flight in 1932, becoming the first woman to fly across the Atlantic alone, but the flight had been fraught with obstacles. Weather conditions had been bad and her navigation instrument had gradually failed. Luckily, she landed safely in a field in Ireland, although she was not even sure where she was at first.

After this, Amelia became even more famous. After her solo Atlantic flight, Amelia continued to make and break records, showing the world that women too could become accomplished pilots. She had one more challenge in mind. She wanted to become the first person to fly round the world at its widest point-the Equator. This had never been done before, although other pilots had already circled the globe.

Accompanied by Fred Noonan, who helped her navigate the plane, Amelia flew east, making numerous stops in countries such as Senegal, Eritrea, Siam, Malaya and Australia. It was an extremely exhausting time for Amelia and Fred as they got very little sleep. The fateful part of the journey was from New Guinea to Howland Island, a tiny island in the Pacific, but Amelia never made it there. She disappeared over the Pacific and was never found, in spite of all efforts to find her plane.

*Answer the following questions using complete sentences*

- 1.What does 'vanished without a trace' (paragraph 1) mean ?
2. Why did Amelia spend all her free time practicing flying ?
- 3.What was special about Amelia flying from America to England ?
- 4.Why did Amelia want to repeat the flight across the Atlantic Ocean ?
- 5.Quote the three-word phrase in paragraph 3 which shows that the flight in 1932 was not an easy one.
- 6.Explain clearly why Amelia was 'not even sure where she was at first' (paragraph 3).

7. In what way did Amelia show the world that ‘women too could become accomplished pilots’ (paragraph 4) ?
8. From paragraph 4, what was unique about Amelia’s plan to fly around the world ?
9. What does the phrase ‘the fateful part of the journey’ (last paragraph) indicate ?
10. Give two characteristics of Amelia that stood out in the passage.

## **COMPREHENSION**

**58**

Little Baako sat sulking in her mud hut. It was Sunday. Her mother would be giving birth to a baby soon. She was irritated and angry seeing the ladies around her neighborhood camp inside and outside her house waiting to hear the good news. She pushed past Chipo, the local midwife, and left. Chipo had been there clucking away since five in the morning, assisting her mother with her delivery much to her annoyance. She pedaled on her bicycle hard and fast to get away from all the commotion as quickly as possible. She had never wanted a younger sister or brother to play with and she did not know why her mother bothered asking if she was not planning on listening.

Abayomi was in his shop repairing an old bicycle when he saw Baako go by in her pink bicycle. He called out to her but she did not acknowledge his greeting. She stopped a few trees away. Abayomi wiped the grease on a rag and jogged towards her. Her usually cheery face was pale and sad. Her shirt, which was always well-tucked inside her skirt, was hanging loose on the sides. He noticed her bare neck without her favorite locket.

Abayomi suspected Baako was not too happy with the new baby’s arrival. He had heard her once say so indirectly to him. She believed the child would steal her mother’s love and not leave much for her. Abayomi watched as she walked around in an agitated manner, ignoring him.

“Come on, Baako,” Abayomi started. She stared at him and got back on the bicycle. He gave her some time to cool down. “The bicycle in my workshop would be fun to repair if only I had an extra pair of hands. Will you help me?” he asked.

Baako, who had become less restless by then, seemed reluctant at first, but agreed as she needed some distraction. She pushed her bicycle to his shed nonchalantly. Baako had too much of pride in her to give in that easily. The place was messy with spare parts of machines and tools strewn all over the floor. Baako noticed Aba sleeping in a corner, all curled up. “Aba is sick. If he had felt better, I would have completed all my work before noon,” said Abayomi.

Baako opened his toolbox and was greeted with a picture of the brothers taken during a fair in town. Aba was holding a balloon while Abayomi had his nose in an ice cream cone. They seemed happy. “That was last summer, just after the heavy rains. We had so much fun! None of my friends could make it, but luckily, I had Aba,” he said with a twinkle in his eyes. Baako knew where the conversation was going.

Baako listened to Abayomi talk more about his brother. The love they shared made Baako doubt her hatred towards the unborn baby. Maybe she too might be a good companion. Abayomi mended the bicycle and went to wash up. He was eager to see the baby and wanted to follow Baako back to her home.

*Answer the following questions using complete sentences*

1. Explain why Baako was ‘sulking’, ‘irritated and angry’ (paragraph 1). Give two reasons for your answer.

- 2.What was the ‘good news’ (paragraph 1) the writer was referring to ?
3. In paragraph 2, which action of Baako showed that she wanted to talk to Abayomi ?
- 4.What was Baako’s fear of the baby’s arrival ?
5. Who is a midwife ?
6. Explain clearly why Baako ‘needed some distraction’ (paragraph 5).
7. Baako had ‘nonchalantly’ (paragraph 5) walked to Abayomi’s shed. Why do you think she did that ?
- 8.What was Baako thinking when Abayomi spoke with a twinkle in his eyes ?
9. From paragraph 2, how would you describe Baako’s character traits ? Give **two** of them.
- 10.In what way had Baako’s opinion of the baby changed by the end of the story ?

### **COMPREHENSION**

**59**

The Cossacks of Russia are a unique group of people. They are not an ethnic group, but instead, what they have in common is a history of being mercenary soldiers. They fought for any army that paid them. Now, they are considered the warrior cast, and as the famous Russian writer, Pushkin, put it, are ‘eternally ready to fight’. Even today, some Cossacks play an active role in military conflicts, for example, in the 1994 war in Chechnya.

Things are different for the Cossacks now. In the ancient past, the Cossacks owned the land. This did not mean that they were wealthy, but at least they felt that the land was theirs and the people received protection. Some want to be able to enjoy that feeling again-they want their old way of life back. The Cossacks are in general a very patriotic people. They feel very strongly for their motherland, Russia. In the Second World War, many fought on the side of the Soviets to protect Russia from the German enemy. Being excellent horsemen, they often rode ahead of the army, as part of reconnaissance teams. They were the information gatherers that the army depended on. Their skill with horses is a tradition that has been passed down through the generations. Today, unfortunately, with the development of roads and vehicles, expert horseback riders are rarely needed.

Another tradition among the Cossacks was a strong devotion to the Russian Orthodox Church. This tradition is not very strong now, but Cossacks can still be found defending churches from thieves and vandals. Sometimes, they are not even paid to do so. Since 1991, with the collapse of the Soviet Union, the country has seen a vast increase in levels of crime. Again, the Cossacks sometimes take things into their own hands and try to put a stop to crime.

Today, young Cossack men are sent to school where military training is an important part of their education. If a male is the only one supporting his family, he wears an earring in one ear. He will then be exempted from any dangerous duty. These young men learn how to shoot rifles and how to march smartly. They also study Cossack history. Their military training puts them in a good position to help uphold public order.

*Answer the following questions using complete sentences*

- 1.What were the Cossacks once known as that put them in a bad light ?
- 2.According to paragraph 1, what kind of soldiers belonged to the warrior cast ?
- 3.Why do you think the Cossacks felt that the land belonged to them ?
- 4.The Cossacks ‘feel very strongly for their motherland’ (paragraph 3). What does this suggest about their loyalty towards Russia ?

- 5.What do ‘reconnaissance teams’ (paragraph 3) do ?
- 6.Why are expert horsemen rarely needed today ?
- 7.The Cossacks are still ‘defending churches’ (paragraph 4) from thieves and vandals in current times. Give a reason for this.
- 8.Quote the six-word phrase in paragraph 4 that has the same meaning as ‘do something by themselves’.
9. What are two things that soldiers undergoing military training do ?
- 10.Why is a Cossack soldier who wears a earring exempted from any dangerous duty ?

### **COMPREHENSION**

#### **60**

Mother Teresa passed away on 5 December 1997. People all over the world mourned her passing because she was such an enormous inspiration. Even after her death, there are people everywhere continuing the work that Mother Teresa had started years ago.

Mother Teresa was born in Albania in 1910. Her real name was Agnes. From a young age, her parents taught her and her siblings the importance of being charitable. Her mother taught her by example, often welcoming the poor or sick into their home, or going out to help them. Mother Teresa was also taught the importance of religion. As a child, she enjoyed going to church, even joining the choir and learning how to play a musical instrument called the mandolin.

When Mother Teresa was twelve years old, she had the desire to dedicate her life to serve God. However, being so young, she was not yet sure of what to do. After all, most children her age were only concerned with their school work and their friends. Thus, Mother Teresa did not act at once. Instead, she waited until she was eighteen years old to decide that she wanted to be a missionary in India. Before going to India, however, she had to undergo training first-learning about being a nun and learning to speak English. Even after reaching India in 1929, Mother Teresa continued her training. By then, she had taken on the name of Teresa.

In India, Mother Teresa had the first glimpse of the poverty of the people around her. She started off as a teacher and the young children loved her for her kindness and patience. She even took care of those who were sick. Soon, Mother Teresa felt that she had to do more. What she really wanted to do was to care for the poorest of the poor, people who were cast aside by society. She understood that to help them, she had to experience their life. She was willing to sacrifice all that she had to live among them. She ate only rice because that was all the poor could afford. She even went for medical training so that she would know how to help the sick.

All her life, Mother Teresa helped these people out of love and compassion for them. People like Mother Teresa are few and far between.

*Answer the following questions using complete sentences*

1. What do you understand by people ‘mourned her passing’ (paragraph 1) ?
- 2.Why are people still continuing Mother Teresa’s work after her death ?
- 3.In what way did Mother Teresa’s mother teach her by example ?
- 4.Give evidence from paragraph 2 that suggests Mother Teresa had a normal childhood.
- 5.Why did Mother Teresa not ‘act at once’ (paragraph 3) when she felt the call of God to serve him ?
6. Referring to paragraph 3, give evidence that Mother Teresa did not know English initially.
- 7.Give **two** qualities of Mother Teresa that made her well-loved.

8. Why did Mother Teresa decide to live among the ‘poorest of the poor’ (paragraph 4) ?
9. What motivated Mother Teresa to help those who were extremely poor ?
10. What did the writer mean when he wrote that people like Mother Teresa are ‘few and far between’ (last paragraph) ?

## COMPREHENSION

### 61

The house smelt of chicken curry. Grandpa Bhim was sipping his morning tea and reading the papers. He would start on breakfast soon and Lakshana hoped to be home just in time to tuck into some yummy Indian pancakes. Laranya was already outside and waved frantically for Lakshana to hurry. She pointed towards the stable and mouthed something Lakshana could not quite comprehend.

“What is it?” asked Lakshana stepping out into the front porch.

“The boys should be already in there,” announced Laranya climbing up the steps. She took a while to catch her breath. “Maybe we should bring eggs. Tomatoes can’t be enough,” she suggested.

Laranya looked flushed. Although tall for her age, she was also big-boned. Her latest addiction to Uncle Jerry’s mud pies in town had not helped her physique very much. “I’d like a cup of hot cocoa,” she said, interrupting Lakshana’s thoughts.

Lakshana offered her water bottle which she sipped on reluctantly. They then opened their backpacks to confirm they were well-equipped — rope, torches, a container of homemade smelly jelly and tomatoes. Laranya spotted something else under a small pack of flour. “Scissors? Lak, we agreed not to bring weapons!” she cried.

“You think they’re going to stick to their promise? How naive of you, Laranya!” replied Lakshana and zipped up her bag before Laranya could say another word. Laranya decided to let the matter rest. The girls linked their arms and ran towards the stable panting and giggling. They stopped behind Father’s pick-up truck and watched for signs of the enemies.

The stable seemed empty from the outside. Except for the occasional neighing of the horses, they could not hear anything else. Lakshana peeped from behind the truck to check for footprints but the area, except for bicycle-tyre marks, remained clear. “How do you know they’ve arrived?” whispered Lakshana. “I thought I saw Deepak ride in. Maybe it wasn’t him,” replied Laranya. Lakshana crawled towards the entrance, carefully hiding behind the many logs stacked by the side. She stopped midway when suddenly, it dawned upon her. “Did you say ‘ride in’?” she asked.

Phlap! Ram missed her head and the slimy egg splattered against the side of a log. Just like that, the fight had begun.

*Answer the following questions using complete sentences*

1. What was Grandpa Bhim’s breakfast that morning ?
2. Laranya ‘waved frantically’ and ‘pointed towards the stable’ (paragraph 1). What did she want to convey to Lakshana ?
3. Laranya was addicted to ‘Uncle Jerry’s mud pies’ which had not ‘helped her physique’ (paragraph 4) very much. Explain clearly what this means.
4. Why did Laranya reluctantly sip the water Lakshana offered ?
5. Why did the girls carry smelly jelly and tomatoes with them ?
6. Explain clearly why Laranya was shocked to see the scissors in Lakshana’s backpack.

- 7.In what way was Laranya naive ?
- 8.Why did Lakshana not realise earlier that the boys were already there ?
- 9.Quote the two-word phrase in paragraph 8 which means ‘became clear’.
- 10.How did the fight begin ?

### **COMPREHENSION**

**62**

Portable weather stations in the forest keep watch on temperature and humidity during the fire season. Some countries depend on them as the risk of fire is highest when it is very hot and dry. Scientists use computers to work out how a fire will spread once it has started so that citizens and officials know how to deal with it.

Even with these technological advances, nothing beats being fully prepared for an emergency. Citizens in fire-prone areas should be well-prepared to anticipate such disasters by having their own safety and evacuation measures. They must be well-equipped to protect themselves. They need to have cotton or wool clothing, gloves, goggles and a helmet. They can use water and wet blankets to beat out flames. They also need to practice putting out small fires.

The best way to stop a fire is to prevent it from starting. Fires can get out of hand, so let us all work together to avoid causing unnecessary damage to properties and lives.

*Answer the following questions using complete sentences*

- 1.Why do firefighters not put out forest fires ? What do they do instead ?
- 2.Which word in paragraph 1 has the same meaning as ‘accident’ ?
- 3.When do forest fires usually occur and why ?
- 4.How can these fires be useful ? 5.In what way does smoke kill people ?
- 6.Referring to paragraph 4, what type of houses would be safer in a fire-prone area and how should they be built ?
- 7.In what way do some countries keep track of the situation in the forest during the fire season ?
- 8.In what situation do you think ‘evacuation measures’ (paragraph 6) must be taken ?
- 9.Describe two ways people can protect themselves.
- 10.Why is it ideal to prevent a fire from starting ?

### **COMPREHENSION**

**63**

Renyi saw the array of sweets arranged in front of him. There were plenty to choose from and he was mystified as to which one to select. He ogled at the rainbow-colored wrappers holding sweet treasures within each bite. He licked his lips as he paused over the green-foiled chocolate mints resting on the bottom shelf.

He felt around his trouser pockets for his money but grimaced quietly when he realized he had taken out a scrunched up bus ticket from yesterday instead. He turned around and saw Krish, the notorious school bully, standing a few meters away from the entrance. He had his hands tucked inside his pockets and his mouth was in constant motion, chewing gum and popping it every few seconds. His huge physique seemed compressed in that tiny shirt of a uniform with the buttons bursting from its

seams. He kept staring at the fancy red car parked outside. For an alarming moment, Renyi wondered if he was going to vandalize it.

Renyi quickly turned left at the aisle and moved into the toiletries lane, not wanting to be spotted. He walked down, eyeing the soaps and brushes and the various deodorants assembled in neat rows. Some had ‘offer’ tags hanging from their necks, with prices that still seemed exorbitant to Renyi. He went around putting the bottles into different places, engrossed in causing disarray in their perfect little world.

He walked on following the streams of ribbons and flower-shaped bulbs that dangled from the ceiling. Their greens and reds got him excited as he remembered the Christmas party at Roland’s bungalow two weeks ago. They still had not taken down the decorations in various parts of the shop.

He saw the clothes stacked on racks and rubbed his shirt self-consciously. Seeing that Krish was nowhere to be seen, he moved quickly in a half-ducking position to the cashier’s counter. He paused, watching her move back and forth as she stacked the magazines neatly on the rack, counting and stacking the separate piles. Renyi eyed his favorite minty chocolate, imagining the fresh mint and cocoa flavor invading his senses at the first bite.

He brought his hands closer to the counter, swallowed consciously and in a flash, hid the chocolate between his palms. He quickly tucked it into his pocket and felt his heartbeat slow down. He reveled in the thrill, a new experience. “Hey!” a familiar husky voice rang through the air. Blood drained from his face as he stood frozen to the spot.

*Answer the following questions using complete sentences*

1. In what way were the sweets attractive to Renyi ?
2. Renyi ‘grimaced quietly’ (paragraph 2) to himself. Explain clearly why he did so.
3. What made Renyi wonder if Krish had the intention to vandalize the fancy red car ?
4. Quote the sentence from paragraph 3 that suggests Renyi was not thrilled to see Krish.
5. ‘Some had ‘offer’ tags hanging from their necks, with prices that still seemed exorbitant to Renyi.’ (paragraph 3) What does the writer mean by this sentence ?
6. Based on paragraph 4, which month of the year do you think it could be ?
7. Why did Renyi pick that particular moment to take the chocolate ?
8. Why did Renyi’s ‘heartbeat slow down’ (paragraph 6) ?
9. Quote the sentence from paragraph 5 or 6 that suggests Renyi had committed the deed for the first time.
10. Based on the last paragraph, suggest what could have happened. Give a reason for your answer.

## **COMPREHENSION**

### **64**

Snorkeling was Mike Fraser’s favorite way of relaxing from his job. He was the leader of a weather station on Campbell Island, one of the most isolated places on earth. A speck of land between New Zealand and Antarctica, the island is normally lashed by westerly gales. But on April 24, 1992, the sea was brilliant blue and the wind a gentle breeze.

As his four teammates snorkeled in the shallows, Fraser finned his way to 40 yards offshore. He relished the feeling of oneness with nature. Fraser scanned the ocean bed to familiarize himself with

the depth of the bay so that he might swim with the southern right whales when they came to breed in the winter. He was relaxed. Large sharks were unknown here.

After half an hour, Fraser had seen enough. It was about 3.30 p.m. He stopped kicking and let himself drift. Thud! A huge weight slammed into his right shoulder. Fraser was flung forward, gasping for breath. ‘Must be a big bull sea-lion,’ he thought. An instant later he was hurled upwards, and held waist-high above the water. Then Fraser looked down. Clamped around his right arm were the 2 1/2-foot-wide jaws of a huge shark.

Instinctively, Fraser swung his left arm around and punched furiously at the creature’s huge, pointed snout. ‘I must warn the others,’ he thought. ‘Shark!’ he screamed. But his cry became a silent stream of bubbles as the monster dragged him under.

Fraser’s second-in-command, meteorologist Linda Danen was snorkeling 15 yards nearer the shore with conservation officer Jacinda Amey, electronic technician Robin Humphrey and mechanic Gus McAllister. All they could hear beneath the sea was the steady rush of their own breathing. Then came a faint, muffled cry. The swimmers surfaced and scanned the horizon. Nothing.

Suddenly, there was an explosion of spray. Fraser erupted from the sea, yelling and fighting ferociously. The four froze at the sight of the water. Then, chillingly, it opened and closed its mouth around Fraser as if testing the consistency of his flesh. Judging by its head, the monster was at least 13 feet long and about 1,300 pounds of muscle and gristle. Daren watched helplessly as the shark pulled Fraser beneath the waves.

As he went under, Fraser realized death was only seconds away. ‘If you don’t free yourself now, you’re gone’, he thought. He raised his knees, then gave a powerful kick to the pale underside of the monster’s mouth. He kicked again, and again, tugging desperately at his trapped arm. The shark shook him, its teeth meshing like shears as they ground deep into his flesh. Fraser kicked again. Suddenly, he felt a hard wrench and he rolled clear.

Instantly, Fraser rocketed upwards. As his head broke the water’s surface, he sucked in air and kicked frantically for the shore. But as he ploughed through the water, his body reacted strangely. He looked down at his right arm. It’s gone! There was nothing below the elbow except a shredded stump that pumped spurts of bright red arterial blood into the sea. Fraser knew that his only hope lay in getting to his teammates before he bled to death.

Fraser’s instincts urged him to swim to shore as fast as he could. But years of living in remote places had taught him not to panic. He knew that every beat of his heart pumped more blood into the sea. So, to avoid panic, he forced himself to give measured kicks. Then, suddenly, Fraser felt a tug on his neck. He turned and looked into a diving mask. Jacinda! Why didn’t she go to the shore? He thought as she slipped her body under his and began to pull him to the shore. Waiting there, the other teammates lifted the wounded man out of the water.

*Answer the following questions using complete sentences*

1. From paragraph 1, what kind of job did Fraser do ?
2. From paragraph 3,a) where was Fraser snorkelling when he was attacked ?b) give 2 reasons why Fraser was away from his friends.
3. From paragraph 3,a) what hurled Fraser upwards ?b) which word means ‘throw’ ?
4. From paragraph 8,a) why did Fraser’s body react strangely ?b) what made him give only measured kicks instead of swimming hurriedly to the shore ?
5. In your own words, explain what you understand by ‘If you don’t free yourself now, you’re gone.’

**COMPREHENSION****65**

Tony Fernandes is synonymous with Air Asia. At the age of 36, he quit as vice-president of Warner Music Group in Southeast Asia and purchased, with three partners, ailing Malaysian airline Air Asia. As CEO, he has used a combination of low costs, low fares and an open and informal management style to turn it into Asia's biggest low-cost carrier.

Tony is candid, friendly and outspoken. When he came up with the idea of purchasing the airline, he told his wife 'I really believe in this.' He felt there was a huge untapped market in Asia - millions of people wanted to fly but could not afford it. Here is Tony's account of his recipe for success.'

Many friends cautioned me. They told me I would fail. I simply told them this: If I fail, I fail. At least I won't be sitting and saying, when I am 60 years old, "I should have tried".

'Tony spends a lot of time speaking at schools, encouraging kids to pursue their own dreams. 'I tell them it can be done. Look at me, there's nothing special about me. You've just got to believe in yourself. You don't have to be connected to a politician. You don't have to have money. You just need to believe that you can go out there and do it.'

'Don't be frightened of failing because then you'll never start and if you fail, try again,' he advises. At Warner, Tony had spent a fortune on Malaysian singer Zainal Abidin's second album which flopped.

'That didn't stop me from pushing on with my work, my dreams.'

He is always delighted when he receives a lot of letters from people saying that he has inspired them, that they are going to try something different. 'That really spurs me on.'

Don't be afraid of making mistakes. If you don't make mistakes, you'll never learn. But when you do mess up, be the first to admit it. Don't try to cover yourself. Once in a while I do this too. For example, when I insisted Air Asia fly from Kuala Lumpur to Penang four times a day, even though Malaysian Airlines flew the same route 12 times a day. He realized he couldn't compete against the buses. The buses pick you up and drop you off right in the middle of each city. They get people to Penang faster. With airlines, one has to go to the airport and then back from the airport to the city. I just said, 'Sorry guys. I messed up. It's my fault, I was wrong.' I even said sorry to my pilots when a merit system for awarding bonuses to pilots backfired. The pilots were unhappy and made no secret of it. They really appreciated my apologies.

As a manager, you have to be accessible. I talk to everyone - my staff, our passengers, the media. If you just sit in your office, you don't know what is going on. Every day in the office, I set aside two hours to spend with the staff. I walk around, go to the baggage handling area, see what's going on, joke around. Accessibility helps you earn the confidence of people around you. It makes them feel they can talk openly and without fear. They should have the freedom to say 'This is wrong.' Being accessible means being open. At the end of the day, human relationships are about openness, trust and transparency.

When I was growing up, my parents wanted me to be a doctor like my father. After my failing in physics and chemistry due to zero work for my A levels, my parents realized they couldn't force me to do anything I didn't want to. My first love was always music and my dream was to own a record company. But I'm realistic. I knew I could never raise enough money to compete with the likes of Warner and Sony. So, no matter what you love, you've got to be a realist.

Also look beyond the money when you pursue something. It's nice to have money. I like the nice things money can buy. But I am not doing this for money. I was paid a fortune at Warner but I left.

The big kick for me is using money to help others. There are a lot of smart people who never got the chance to go to school, so I sponsor cadet pilots. Money is just a by-product of what I do.

*Answer the following questions using complete sentences*

- 1.From paragraph 2, describe Tony's personality.
- 2.From paragraph 2,a) what was Tony's statement when he informed his wife about buying the airline ?b) why was he interested to buy the airline ?
- 3.From paragraph 5,a) why shouldn't one be frightened of failing ?b) what was Tony's stand when he lost money on Zainal Abidin's second album ?
- 4.From paragraph 7,a) state the reason why Air Asia could not maintain its flights to Penang four times a day ?b) how did Tony admit his mistake ?
- 5.Explain in your own words Tony's important cautionary words when one wants to pursue his or her dreams ?

## **COMPREHENSION**

### 66

Experts put forward the theory that 60 million years ago, ancestors of modern whales were four-legged, wolf-sized animals living on the shores of estuaries and lagoons, where an abundance of fish and shrimp enticed them to try wading. Evolution started reshaping them. Over 10 to 15 million years, their bodies grew, forelegs shrank into flippers and hind legs disappeared. To propel themselves through water, whales grew tapered tails ending in horizontal, paddle-like flukes. The nose in most species moved to the top of the head and became separated from the mouth; whales could therefore feed without filling their lungs with seawater and breathe without sticking their heads up. The inside of the whales were restructured too. Therefore, they could feed and communicate entirely underwater while being utterly helpless on land. If stranded on a beach, they can hardly breathe.

Despite their size, these giants move at a good speed. A blue whale swimming at 15 knots generates 1,000 horsepower. Humpback whales can heave their 40-ton bodies completely out of the water.

Superb streamlining is one reason for a whale's swiftness. The skin is another reason. It is loose and lubricated, with ridges induced by rapid swimming, all of which help the leviathans slip through the seas with little significant drag.

A whale can eat up to 9,000 pounds of food a day. The type of whale known as toothed (like Moby Dick) lives on fish and squid. The baleen strains its food. After engulfing enough water to fill a dining room, the baleen whale spits it out through a sieve of bony plates dangling from its upper jaw. The world's biggest creature feeds itself almost entirely on shrimp-like krill smaller than a person's thumb. The humpback whales have devised the most ingenious feeding technique - bubble netting. Rapidly circling under a school of fish, it forces bursts of air through its blowholes, creating a rising spiral of bubbles that corrals the fish. Seconds later, the whale bursts up through the centre, gulping several hundreds of fish at once.

Even though they live in the same element, whales do not behave like fish. In fact, many people think whales represent the best of human behavior. Many whales exhibit strong family ties. The young remain with their parents for up to fifteen years or more. Like reindeer and other nomadic land mammals, such migrating species as humpbacks and grey whales live in herds, or pods, and travel seasonally between feeding and breeding grounds.

In times of stress, whales look after one another. During migration, a group travels at the speed of the slowest baby. When a member is wounded or sick, the others refuse to abandon it. They may cradle it between them or support it on their backs so it can breathe. Such care giving behavior has often led to their downfall. A whole loyal group could easily be picked off by whalers.

A whale's urge for companionship can be irresistible. If two surface within a thousand feet, they often sidle up to each other during their few minutes at the surface. Maternal instincts are also highly developed. When a calf is born underwater, the mother must get it to the surface before it drowns.

Often another whale will help. The mother nudges it gently until the baby is confident with its swimming - usually after about 30 minutes. If the calf is stillborn, she may support it on her back until it literally rots away. Like all mammals, whale babies feed on mother's milk. But whales have to devise a system for delivering milk to a baby that cannot stay submerged for long. They squirt the milk directly into the baby's mouth - 130 gallons a day in blue whales. The milk is more than 30 percent fat, over ten percent protein and the babies grow extremely fast. A blue whale calf lengthens by two inches a day and gains an average of seven pounds per hour. Mother whales have been seen fondling their babies. Their flippers are used like hands to clasp, coax and discipline.

Whales are generally gentle, unflappable and have tremendous self-control. They do not harm human beings unless they are provoked. Although misunderstood by humans at times, whales have no trouble communicating with their own kind. Their snores, groans and clicks are used to identify the sexes and keep pods in contact. A family spread out over several square miles almost certainly knows where everyone is. Whales have loud voice. A blue whale can bellow as loud as an elephant. The best talkers are humpbacks. These frisky, free spirits sing hauntingly beautiful songs for up to 22 hours at a time; seemingly just for the joy of it, though probably to attract a mate. All the whales in one area sing the same song, but they cannot stop tinkering with it. So every few years their tune completely changes. In 1985, the Soviets used sound to rescue some 3,000 belugas. They had cleared an escape path, but the confused animals, frightened by the noise of engines and propellers, refused to leave. Then, the ship began piping music through loudspeakers - military, folk, jazz and rock. It was when they heard the strain of Beethoven that the whales began to follow, swimming through the narrow channel to freedom.

*Answer the following questions using complete sentences*

1. From paragraph 1, what is the mystical connection between people and whales ?From paragraph 2, what lured them into the sea ?
2. From paragraph 3, what are the reasons for the whale's swiftness ?
3. From paragraph 7, give two reasons why whales are easy prey to whalers.
4. From paragraph 8, the writer mentions that ' ... Maternal instincts are also highly developed'. Give two evidences.
5. In your own words, explain how the Soviets used sound to rescue 3,000 belugas.

## COMPREHENSION

### 67

If you have been diligently brushing your teeth twice a day and think cavities will not hit you, think again. Oral health studies indicate that brushing your teeth alone may not be able to maintain an oral hygiene level that adequately controls the formation of bacterial plaque on teeth. Plaque, when accumulated, can lead to development of dental cavities, gum inflammation and related diseases.

Plaque is a generic term describing a sticky film of bacteria that collects on teeth above and below the gingival margin or gumline. ‘When plaque remains in the mouth for as little as one day, calcification or hardening may occur, leading to tartar formation,’ said Dr. Arunee Unsook. ‘Brushing your teeth alone cannot adequately remove the plaque in your mouth because the teeth represent only about 23% of the oral cavity surface,’ said Dr. Arunee, senior manager of scientific and professional affairs with Johnson & Johnson. Brushing cleans about a quarter of the mouth and does not thoroughly rid impurities in between teeth and hard-to-reach areas. Several studies in different countries also show that the vast majority of people are unable to maintain a level of oral hygiene sufficient to control plaque formation by brushing alone due to insufficient time or lack of the appropriate technique. The Malaysian Adults Oral Health Survey last conducted in the year 2000 showed that the general oral health status of adults aged 15 years and above has improved, largely due to the fluoridation of water supplies. Despite this, there still exists areas with serious problems and inadequate availability of resources such as dental treatment, oral hygiene instructions and extraction. Under the 2010 National Oral Health Plan (NOHP), goals have been set with the objectives of achieving optimum oral health among Malaysians. These goals focus on the reduction of four oral conditions, two of which are dental caries and periodontal disease, a gum inflammatory disease that leads to loss of teeth.

Gingivitis is an early, reversible form of gum disease resulting from inadequate plaque removal. Gingivitis can lead to periodontitis; advanced gum disease, which if left untreated can result in eventual tooth loss. ‘Patients can help reduce their risk of developing periodontal disease by controlling the accumulation of plaque,’ said Malaysian Dental Association president Dr. S. Sivanesan. ‘This can be accomplished, in part, by adhering to a daily oral hygiene regimen that includes brushing, flossing and adding an antiseptic mouth rinse for better plaque control.’ Dr. Sivanesan added that the concept of mouth rinsing as an oral hygiene measure dates back thousands of years, with the first reference to it as a formal practice being attributed to Chinese medicine.

However, it was only in the 1960s when the relationship between plaque accumulation and the development of gum inflammation and diseases was clearly demonstrated that the use of antiseptic mouthwash was widely introduced. Through clinical trials, it was scientifically established that the daily use of an effective anti-plaque mouthwash can be a valuable component of oral hygiene regimens. He said good bacteria will not really be affected if antiseptic mouthwash is used in the therapeutic way recommended. ‘Basically, we advocate brushing, flossing and rinsing for good oral health care. Our mouth and its health is a complex thing that affects the whole body, not just our mouth,’ Dr. Sivanesan said. He also stressed that rinsing our mouth after every meal is very important.

***Answer the following questions using complete sentences***

- 1.a) From paragraph 1, is brushing teeth sufficient for good oral hygiene ?
- b) From paragraph 2, what is plaque ?
2. From paragraph 4,a) what happens when you brush your teeth ?
- b) why are most people not able to maintain a good level of oral hygiene ?
3. From paragraph 5,a) state a reason which contributed to improved oral health.
- b) mention two oral conditions targeted by the National Oral Health Plan.
4. a) From paragraph 7, how can patients reduce the risk of developing periodontal disease ?
- b) Which word in paragraph 7 means ‘fixed plans’ ?
5. Explain in your own words how effective mouthwash became a component of good oral hygiene regimens.

**COMPREHENSION****68**

For 28 years, three months and twelve days I drove a New York taxi. Now if you were to ask me what I had for breakfast yesterday, I probably couldn't tell you. But the memory of one particular type of fare is so vivid that I'll remember it all my days in this world.

It was a sunny Monday morning in the spring of 1966. I was cruising down York Avenue looking for a customer, but with the beautiful weather it was kind of slow. I had stopped at a traffic light at 68th Street, just opposite New York Hospital, when I spied a well-dressed man dashing down the hospital steps. He was hailing me. Finally the man reached the taxi and jumped in. 'La Guardia Airport, please,' he said. 'And thanks for waiting.'

As always, I wondered about my passenger. Was this man a talker, a newspaper reader? After a few moments, he started a conversation. It began ordinarily enough: 'How do you like driving a taxi?' 'It was a stock question, and I gave him my stock answer. 'It's okay,' I said, 'I make a living and meet interesting people sometimes. But if I could get a job making \$100 a week more, I'd take it - just like you would.'

His reply intrigued me. 'I wouldn't change jobs if I had to take a cut of a hundred a week.' I had never heard anyone say such a thing. 'What do you do?'

'I am in the neurology department at New York Hospital.'

I have always been curious about people, and I have tried to learn what I could from them. Maybe it was that this man clearly loved his work; maybe it was just the pleasant mood of a spring morning. But I decided to ask for his help. We were not far from the airport now, and I plunged ahead.

'Could I ask a big favor of you?' He did not answer. 'I have a 15-year-old son, a good kid. He is doing well in school. We would like him to go to camp this summer, but he wants a job. Now a 15-year-old cannot get hired unless his dad is someone who owns a business - and I don't.' I paused. 'Is there any possibility that you might get him some kind of a summer job - even if he does not get paid.'

He still wasn't talking, and I was starting to feel foolish for bringing up the subject. Finally, at the ramp to the terminals, he said, 'Well, the medical students have a summer research project. Maybe he could fit in. Have him send me his school record.' Then he gave me his particulars hurriedly written on a piece of paper.

That evening, around the dining table, I pulled out the scrap of paper from my shirt pocket. 'Robbie,' I announced proudly, 'this could be a summer job for you.' He read out the name and address and laughed loudly. My wife too started cracking jokes. My daughter joined in the fun. After I nagged, cajoled and yelled, Robbie sent off his grades the next morning. Two weeks later when I arrived home from work, my son was beaming. He handed me a letter addressed to him on richly embossed paper. The letterhead read: Fred Plum, M.D., Neurologist-in-Chief, New York Hospital. He was to call Dr. Plum's secretary for an interview.

Robbie got the job. After working two weeks as a volunteer, he was paid \$40 a week for the rest of the summer. The white lab coat he wore made him feel a lot more important than he really was as he followed Dr. Plum around the hospital, doing minor tasks for him.

The following summer, he worked at the hospital again, but this time he was given more responsibility. As high school graduation neared, Dr. Plum was kind enough to write letters of recommendation for college. Much to our delight, Robbie was accepted at a prestigious university.

He worked at the hospital a third summer and gradually developed a love of the medical profession. When university graduation approached, he applied to medical school, and Dr. Plum again wrote letters attesting to his ability and character. Robbie was admitted to New York Medical College and, after getting his M.D, did a four-year residency specializing in obstetrics and gynaecology. Dr. Robert Stern, the taxi driver's son, became obstetrical-gynaecology chief resident at Columbia Presbyterian Medical Centre in New York City.

*Answer the following questions using complete sentences*

1. From paragraph 2, a) at which location did the taxi driver pick up his passenger ? b) where was the passenger going ?
2. From paragraph 8, why do you think the taxi driver was sceptical about the passenger's reply ?
3. a) From paragraph 10, what made the taxi driver feel foolish ? b) From paragraph 11, relate the contents of the letter Robbie received.
4. a) From paragraph 12, what is the significance of the 'white lab coat' that Robbie wore ? b) From paragraph 13, which word has the same meaning as 'respectable' ?
5. Why do you think the taxi driver's family made a joke about the particulars written on the scrap of paper that he showed to them ?

## **COMPREHENSION**

### 69

The cabin where I was to meet my latest client was much more luxurious than I had expected. I stepped out of my four-wheel drive to meet my client and his wife. He was strong and solidly built. He looked like a model for an outdoor catalogue. The fishing vest was stiff with newness and all the rest of the equipment was shiny and untested. His boots were as white as snow. His rod looked equally new and the line was shiny. He had his reel on backward.

Typical beginner, I thought. Rich, and like many rich people in my experience, probably demanding too. I reached out to shake his hand. A firm grip grabbed back. His wife, an attractive woman brimming with confidence, took a photo of us and waved goodbye with an arm heavily weighted with turquoise bracelets.

First, I turned his reel around. He smiled and shrugged. Then, we began his casting lesson on the lawn. To my surprise, he was one of those rare people who connect with a rod almost immediately. 'I could just stand here all day and cast,' he said, smiling.

We did not have to travel far to the water, since a perfectly sweet little creek ran along the last nine kilometers of the rutted dirt road I had traveled that morning.

'Oh, hey! Look at that,' he said when the first fish struck. He was truly awed. The second time a trout struck, his shouts of surprise and joy rang up and down the creek, and we happily reeled in a sparkling 20-centimetre wild rainbow.

'Isn't that beautiful?' he said softly, and every trout after that was beautiful, incredible, amazing, and fantastic. A little brook trout took the fly, and I held it so my client could see the blue rings around the bright-orange spots. 'That's the most beautiful thing I have ever seen,' he said with sincerity.

To be with someone who was able to treasure the moment the way he did made me feel like I was exploring fishing for the first time. I showed him how to keep his fly from dragging, how to fish the deeper pools. He was absorbed by the techniques of fishing. And the fish, whether 15 centimeters or 25, were praised like precious stones.

In the late afternoon, about the time the skin begins to feel sore from a fresh sunburn, my client stopped fishing. His shoulders dropped, and he paused to look at the water, the trees and finally, at me.'I have to tell you something,' he said. 'This has been one of the best days of my life. I wasn't supposed to be here right now. I've been very sick and my doctors didn't think I was going to make it. I wasn't sure I was going to make it either but everything is fine now. My wife gave me this fishing rod because I've always wanted to fish. This trip is kind of a celebration for our family. This really has been one of the best days of my life.'

I could not speak. I looked into his eyes and nodded. He smiled at me and cast again. We left when we heard the triangle ringing for dinner in the distance. His wife, who was waiting at the porch of their cabin, embraced him. His family gathered around us, eager to share their day with him. They can finally enjoy the simple pleasures of being a family on holiday and all the things that I had taken for granted.

As I drove down the dirt road, my four-wheel drive bounced over ruts and rocks as I followed the creek that had given us such a magical time. The next day there would be a new fishing enthusiast to meet. I would not let first impression deceive me into thinking he had nothing to teach me.

*Answer the following questions using complete sentences*

- 1.a) Where was the writer supposed to meet his client ?b) What was the first thing the writer taught his client after he set his reel ?
- 2.a) What made the writer feel like 'he was exploring fishing for the first time' ?b) Give another word or phrase for 'absorbed' as used in paragraph 7.
- 3.a) Why did his client say that he was not supposed to be there ?b) According to his client, the trip was supposed to be a celebration for his family. What do you think they were celebrating ?
4. Where was the writer going the next day ?
5. What lesson did the writer learn on that day ?

### **COMPREHENSION**

**70**

WHEN was the last time you wrote something - something literal, that is, writing something by hand instead of posting a message on the computer or sending an SMS? One of my friends told me the only thing she writes by hand these days is the shopping list.

Just the other day, my grandmother asked me to get her some aerogrammes. Do you even remember those? If you are 25 or under, chances are you have no idea what I am talking about. Well, aerogrammes were what people used to buy from the post office when they wanted to write a letter to someone who lived overseas. It sounds so antiquated now, right? Aerogrammes were blue sheets of paper: that were self-sealing and prepaid. You didn't need an envelope or stamps. Just write on the aerogramme, seal it and pop it into the postbox. I don't even know if they make these any more. After all, do people even write letters to each other these days? They write emails and forward jokes or they leave comments on blogs, but letters?

Yes, with the advent of the email and the mobile phone, the art of writing is dying, if not already dead. There was a time when you could recognise someone by his handwriting. These days, the only bits of handwriting we come across on a day-to-day basis are hastily scribbled notes. There was a time when we were taught good penmanship in schools. It was not good enough to learn how to read or write...

you had to write beautifully. We had to practise our cursive writing and there was a prescribed way to form and join letters of the alphabet into words. But as we grew older, individualistic tendencies crept in. In secondary schools we started developing our own unique handwriting style.

When I look at my own handwriting now, I see I have become lazy. Computers are the enemy of good handwriting, don't you think? Still, my handwriting is pretty legible, even when I write fast. I often thought the entire time I was growing up that I would have beautiful, elegant handwriting when I became an adult. That didn't quite happen. Now that we hardly write by hand, I think even that will deteriorate further.

I miss the joy of receiving letters and writing them. I know email is faster but there is something about holding those pieces of paper in your hand and reading words formed and joined together in the unique way of the writer. Oddly, the handwriting I miss the most was also the worst handwriting I have ever come across. Rosemary's handwriting was the subject of many jokes in our circle of friends. The sentences were worse than scrawls. Somehow, I was the only one who could decipher her letters from the many places she lived overseas with her diplomat husband. Whenever a letter from Rosemary arrived, we had to meet up and I had to read it to the gang. By the time they lived in Venezuela, there was email and those lovely, scrawly letters ended. It was through those sprawling letters that we got to know about those foreign lands and more importantly, how she was doing.

These days, there is the immediacy of SMSes and emails. So, there is simply no need for letters any more. But this much more personal method of connecting with people you care for is not quite dead. My best friend still gives me cards to celebrate various occasions: my birthday, Christmas. And in them, she always writes a little message. I love those little personal touches even though we live in the same city!

*Answer the following questions using complete sentences*

1. From paragraph 1, why is posting a message on the computer or sending an SMS not considered literal ?
2. From paragraph 2,a) what are aerogrammes ?  
b) give **two** reasons why using aerogrammes for letter writing is considered antiquated ?
3. From paragraph 3,a) what are the three aspects of good penmanship ?  
b) what happens to one's handwriting as one grows older ?
4. From paragraph 4,a) why do you think the writer says that computers are the enemy of good handwriting ?  
b) what does the writer feel will eventually happen to her handwriting ?
- 5.a) From paragraph 5, what two things did the writer gain from her friend's sprawling letters ?  
b) From paragraph 6, how would you like your friends to send their greetings for various occasions ? Give reasons for your choice.

## COMPREHENSION

### 71

A few days of fever, chills and generally feeling awful: that's a typical case of the flu. But many times a century, flu viruses change so radically that they can trigger a pandemic - as health experts fear could happen with the swine flu.

The history of influenza may go all the way back to the beginning of medicine; a similar illness was first described by Hippocrates in Greece in 412 B.C. In 1485, a flu-like ‘sweating sickness’ swept across Britain, leaving many dead - and treatments of the time, including bleeding, did not help. The latest pandemics, in 1957 and 1968, were mild, with global death tolls of about 2 million and 1 million respectively. But doctors live in fear of a killer like the 1918 Spanish flu, which caused up to 100 million deaths. Undertakers were so overwhelmed that corpses were left inside homes for days. Cities passed laws requiring citizens to wear masks in public places, but the virus defeated that barrier; little slowed the spread of the disease.

From 1917-1918, average life expectancy in the U.S. dropped an amazing 12 years. Cruelly, the 1918 virus was especially lethal in young and healthy people. The disease seemed to trigger a massive overreaction of victims’ immune systems; when autopsies were performed on flu victims, lungs were found to be blue and filled with water. They had died by drowning. The Spanish flu pandemic ended only when the virus had infected so many people that it burned itself out. The most recent pandemic in 1968 is called the Hong Kong flu after its origin. The virus is comparatively mild. In 2003, Southeast Asia suffered from the H5N1 avian flu. The governments responded by stockpiling the antiviral Tamiflu.

Today, doctors have better tools - antivirals and respirators - that would cut the potential death toll. But influenza is unpredictable. Decreasing transmission is the best strategy to prevent the A (H1N1) flu outbreak. The more everyone follows the practices below, the safer YOU are from it.

First, keep your hands clean. Wash your hands after contact with common surfaces and utensils. Make sure you wash your hands properly. Next, practise cough and sneeze etiquette. You have to sneeze or cough into a tissue. Wash your hands after throwing it away. If you have a cold or sniffles, and need to be in crowded, public areas, wear a mask.

Of course, if you are ill with flu-like symptoms, stay at home. Seek medical treatment if symptoms get worse. Minimise contact with friends and relatives.

*Answer the following questions using complete sentences*

- 1.From paragraph 1, what are health experts afraid of ?
- 2.From paragraph 2,a) who is the father of medicine ?b) which expression tells you that a pandemic took place in Britain ?
- 3.From paragraph 3,a) how many people died of flu in 1968 ?b) which word tells you that the Spanish flu affected many people ?c) did wearing masks in public help to stop the flu from spreading ?
- 4.From paragraph 5,a) in which place did the flu start ?b) what was the medicine to take to cure the avian flu ?
- 5.From what you have read in this article, give **two** characteristics of a pandemic.

## COMPREHENSION

### 72

Dasrath Manjhi took twenty-two years to build a road through the mountains in Bihar. The road is an amazing achievement for a landless farmer and a symbol of selfless service to mankind. He did it mainly by his own efforts, his drive and his indomitable determination. He did it for the sake of his fellow men, not expecting rewards of any sort. He did it using the simplest of tools-a chisel, rope and a hammer!

Dasrath Manjhi, 31 years old at the time, set out to carve a 1km-long path through a rocky hillside. He wanted life to be easier for his fellow villagers. The hill kept the villages in isolation, forcing people to trek through dangerous ground for hours just to reach the nearest market town. Children had to walk eight kilometers to reach school, but thanks to Dasrath Manjhi's handmade road, that distance has been reduced greatly. People from over 60 villages now use it every day.'

This hill has given us trouble and grief for centuries. The people asked the government many times to make a proper road through the hill, but nobody paid any attention. So I just decided I would do it all by myself,' Manjhi told the newspaper in 2007. However, what empowered a single man to accomplish such an enormous task? For Dasrath, it was love for his wife. 'My wife, Faguni Devi, was seriously injured while crossing the hill to bring me water. At that time, I worked on a farm across the hills. That was the day I decided to carve out a proper road through this hill,' the farmer said. Sadly, his beloved wife didn't get to see the fruits of his labour, as shortly after the accident she fell ill and died. She could have been saved if she was taken to the hospital in time. The tragic loss only made the ambitious man more focused on his task, and fellow villagers remember seeing him 'hacking at the hill day and night as if he were possessed'. At the beginning, most people didn't take his project seriously and they ridiculed him and called him a madman for taking on such a Herculean task. As time went by, and as the unfazed farmer continued to split the troublesome hill in half, he started getting some help.' Though most villagers taunted me at first, there were quite a few who lent me support later by giving me food and helping me buy my tools,' he remembered. Now, all the people of the Gaya district have nothing but gratitude for the 'mountain man' who single-handedly made their lives so much easier. He never received any recognition from the government for his accomplishment. 'What I did is there for everyone to see. When God is with you, nothing can stop you,' Dasrath Manjhi once said. 'I am neither afraid of any punishment from any government department for my work nor am I interested in any honor from the government.' Dasrath can teach us many valuable lessons through his accomplishment. He proved by his contribution that patience is the greatest virtue that leads to success. After all, he took twenty-two years for his project. He proved to us that one can dream the impossible and yet make it come true. He also proved to us that it is really one's attitude that decides how we want to live. He didn't let his personal tragedy or his poverty come in the way of his project. He kept positive despite everyone's criticism and comments. He didn't lose heart even though he was called mad or crazy. He dared to be different.

*Answer the following questions using complete sentences*

- 1.a) From paragraph 1, why did Dasrath Manjhi decide to build the mountain road ?b) From paragraph 2, what was wrong with the present road ?
2. From paragraph 4, why did Dasrath's wife meet with a tragic end ?
- 3.a) From paragraph 5, how do you know that the villagers didn't support his work ?b) From paragraph 6, who did Dasrath feel was on his side ?
- 4.a) From paragraph 7, how do you know that Dasrath was a patient man ?b) Which word in paragraph 7 shows Dasrath's attitude ?c) From paragraph 7, what did the road represent to the people ?
5. What kind of a person was Dasrath ? Give one quality and provide a reason to support your answer.
6. Based on the passage given, write a summary of :\* why Dasrath decided to build this mountain road, and\* the invaluable lessons we learn from his act Your summary must not be longer than 130 words, including the 10 words given below *Dasrath decided to build a proper road through this hill ...*

**COMPREHENSION****73**

Ignacy J. Paderewski, former president of Poland, once performed a piano recital at Stanford University. Two eighteen-year-old students at the university organised a musical concert on campus to raise money for their education. They had been struggling to pay their fees, and needed a well-known name to be part of their concert, in order to draw the crowd.

Paderewski's manager demanded a guaranteed fee of two thousand dollars for the piano recital. The boys agreed and worked to make the concert a success. Unfortunately, they had not managed to sell enough tickets. The total collection was only \$1600. Disappointed, they went to Paderewski and explained their plight. They gave him the entire \$1600, plus a cheque for the balance. They promised to honour the cheque as soon as they could.

'No,' said Paderewski, 'This is not acceptable.' He tore up the cheque, returned the \$1600 and told the two boys, 'Here's the \$1600. Keep the money you need for your fees and just give me whatever is left.' The boys were surprised, and thanked him profusely. It was a small act of kindness. However, it clearly marked out Paderewski as a good human being. Why should he help two people he did not even know? We all have come across situations like these in our lives. The truly great people think, 'If I don't help them, what will happen to them?'

Paderewski later went on to become the Prime Minister of Poland. He was a great leader. Unfortunately when World War II began, Poland was shattered. There were more than 1.5 million people starving in his country, and there was no money to feed them. The war had left Poland in ruins. Paderewski did not know where to turn to for help. He reached out to the US Food and Relief Administration for help. The chief administrator was a man called Herbert Hoover — who later went on to become the President of the United States. Hoover agreed to help and quickly shipped tons of food grains to feed the starving Polish people.

Quick action saved the day, for disaster was averted in Poland. Paderewski was relieved greatly that his people were saved. He decided that the least he could do was to go to the United States to thank the man who had saved his countrymen. He arranged to meet Hoover and personally thank him. When Paderewski began to thank Hoover for his noble gesture, Hoover quickly interjected and said, 'You shouldn't be thanking me, Mr Prime Minister. You may not remember this, but several years ago, you helped two young students pay their university fees. I was one of them.' *Answer the following questions using complete sentences* 1.From paragraph 1, why did the students organise a music concert at their campus ? 2.a) From paragraph 2, what was the reason to get a well-known person to be part of the concert ?b) From paragraph 3, why did Paderewski act the way he did ? 3.a) From paragraph 4, what makes this act of kindness special ?b) From paragraph 5, how did Paderewski solve the food problem ? 4.From paragraph 6,a) which word describes how Paderewski felt when his people had food ?b) why did Paderewski go to the United States ?c) what made this meeting unusual ? 5.What kind of a man was Herbert Hoover ? Give one quality and provide a reason to support your answer. 6.Based on the passage given, write a summary of :\* how Paderewski helped Hoover get an education, and\* how Hoover helped Paderewski feed his peopleYour summary must not be longer than 130 words, including the 10 words given below

*The big day of the concert arrived but unfortunately, the ...*

**COMPREHENSION****74**

There were many girls at the party, but I couldn't help noticing her. She was attractive in a different way. Her smile lit the room and her voice reminded me of soft bells. She spoke to her friends just three feet away from where I stood, eavesdropping near the buffet table while trying to look uninterested. It was an impromptu party, organised soon after the final SPM exams. I was invited because the party was at my best friend Michael's house. Michael is very popular with the Convent girls. Well, there is also the fact that I knew how to use a barbecue set properly.

Although I was outspoken and funny with the guys, I froze around girls. Pretty girls in nice dresses made me completely tongue-tied. They just seemed so mature and refined. Roger, as usual was boasting about his recent overseas holiday. How I wished that I was as tall and as rich as he was. He was now talking to her and I knew I didn't have a chance.

Suddenly, she left Roger's company and came over to the buffet. I was about to faint in fright. She said a soft 'Hello' and I mumbled something back. She asked me if I was 'T.J', and we struck a conversation that lasted most of the night. I was on cloud nine. I even had the chance to take her home on my bike.

As I negotiated a corner in my dreamlike state, a stray dog ran across the road. I lost control of my bike and we landed in a ditch. Covered in mud and bruises, we lay in the ditch too stunned to move. I crawled over to her and asked her if she was okay. She managed to sit up. Luckily, she suffered just a few scrapes and a twisted wrist. I was even luckier as I was none the worse for being flung into a ditch.

At that time, mobile phones were unheard of. Luckily there was a public phone twenty feet away. I called Michael and Roger, who immediately dispatched a noisy posse of bikers. We were taken back to the house as Michael's parents had just come home, and his mother was a nurse. While Janet's wounds were cleaned and her wrist bandaged, I went upstairs to clean up and change into borrowed clothes.

When I came down, Janet had already gone home with her parents, who were informed of the mishap. That was the last I saw of her, as her parents forbade her from any more parties that involved Michael or me. Soon the STPM exams came and went. It was time to go to college or work. Many went to university while I settled for a job as I didn't do very well in the exams.

Some old friends had told me that Janet had gone to Singapore to study law. I joined a shipping line as a cadet officer and gave up on seeing her ever again. Years passed and one day I piloted my ship — I was a captain by now— into Singapore. While on shore leave, as fate would have it, I ran into Janet at Tangs on Orchard road. My heart skipped a beat and she smiled joyfully. We've been married for fifteen years now.

*Answer the following questions using complete sentences*

- 1.From paragraph 1, the author states that he was attracted to Janet because she was \_\_\_\_\_.
- 2.a) From paragraph 2, we can say that the party wasn't \_\_\_\_\_.
- b) Give **two** reasons why the author was invited to the party.
- 3.From paragraph 5,a) what caused the author to lose control ?
- b) which phrase means not injured ?
- 4.From paragraph 7,a) what word means accident ?
- b) why did Janet's parents forbid her from parties ?
- 5.In your own words, give **two** reasons why the author had given up on seeing Janet again.

6.Based on the passage given, write a summary of :\* what happened during and after the party, and\* how he met Janet again and what happened thereafter Your summary must not be longer than 130 words, including the 10 words given below *Although he was outspoken and popular among the guys, he ...*

### **COMPREHENSION**

#### 75

Daniel struck the wall angrily and stormed out. His parents had had a violent quarrel again and the whole house reflected that. There were things lying all over the house. It had been like that for the last year and he and his sister, Karin, had suffered seeing their parents quarrel.

Daniel no longer cared about what happened at home. School didn't matter and neither did his future. He smoked a lot these days but that made him feel good, he told himself. His friends too were like him, from dysfunctional homes and they lived a life that left them on the streets often. There was no one waiting at home to care anyway! Daniel remembered the time when the police picked him and his friends up for being near a robbery scene. They had a rough time at the police station. Another time they had got into a gang fight. His parents were furious with him when they were informed about it. His father had hardly spoken a word to him while his mother had wailed. Tears didn't move Daniel any more.

He remembered the many days when he had cried to himself hearing their violent quarrels and wondered if he was to blame. Karin too used to hide in her room until the storm of words was over. She had wanted to be a doctor once and Daniel had wanted to be a pilot. Now, they may remain only dreams.

Daniel saw his neighbour, Rob, dragging his feet to school. Rob was disabled and had been given up for adoption at a young age. His foster parents adored him and gave him love and attention. They talked to him and took him for extra classes but they didn't pamper or spoil him. He was expected to do chores at home and work hard at school. His foster father had told him that he had to start his work earlier and work harder if he was to cope with the rest of the students at school.

Daniel made up his mind. He realised that he was tired of all that he was going through. Totally miserable about his family conditions, he decided to talk to Rob's father, Mr Pattinson. He told him his problems. Mr Pattinson listened quietly and asked a few questions. Then, he spoke to Daniel and in his calm voice, advised him, 'Your parents are going through some bad times but they do love you. There are many other people who love you too. So it is your duty to do something for yourself. You are special and unique, just like our Rob. Go ahead and make a good life so that you can reach out to others.'

When you make mistakes, remember some good will come out of it too. You learn from your mistakes and trials and troubles make you strong and resilient. Don't be frightened by them. Remember that the bad times will pass. They say that when life hands you a lemon, ask for sugar. Make the best of a bad situation rather than make it worse. You are not the only one with a problem. There are millions of people who are a million times worse off than you!

Don't rely on friends — not all are good. Drop the friends who make you do bad things. You are intelligent enough to know what is right or wrong and stay away from bad influences. If friends lead you to harmful things, they can't be thinking of your best interests. Move on, Daniel. Help your sister too in the process. If you are supportive, she too can achieve her ambition. Not all successful people come from wonderful and loving homes. Using a broken home as an excuse not to make something

out of your life is weak. I will help you in whatever way I can but everything lies in your hands.' Daniel looked long and hard at Mr Pattinson, tears finally returning to his eyes.

*Answer the following questions using complete sentences*

- 1.From paragraph 1, how did the house reflect the parents' quarrel ?
- 2.From paragraph 2,a) how did Daniel feel about school and his future ?b) '*His friends too were like him, from dysfunctional homes ...*' (i) Which word tells you that something was wrong with Daniel's friends' homes ? (ii) Why was it sad that the children were often left on the streets ?
- 3.From paragraph 4,a) what were Daniel's and Karin's dreams ?b) why does the writer say they 'may remain only dreams' ?
- 4.From paragraph 6,a) why was it Daniel's duty to do something for himself ?b) which word means 'one of a kind' ?
- 5.In your own words, do you agree with the advice that Mr Pattinson gave ? Support your answer.
- 6.Based on the passage given, write a summary of :\* what led Daniel to see Mr Pattinson, and\* the advice that Mr Pattinson gave Daniel.Your summary must not be longer than 130 words, including the 10 words given below:

*Finally, Daniel feeling tired and miserable about the conditions at ...*

## **COMPREHENSION**

### 76

Anthony Abraham, a 34-year-old crane driver, barely managed to get out of the way of falling steel. Turning around, he could hardly believe the horrible scene that lay before him.

Girders were piled on top of the crane in a haphazard fashion, like gigantic pick up sticks. All he could see of the machine was its rear wheels and *a section of what had been the cab*. Abraham raced to the cab, shouting his friend George Burns' name. As he reached the site, he could see blood oozing out of the sides of the cab. By then, three other iron workers had reached the scene of the carnage. One of them yelled, 'George, can you hear me?' Over the din of the diesel engine, a strained voice responded. 'I'm not sure if you can get me out of here, guys,' came George's voice. George could hardly move. The falling steel had crumpled his 4 by 6 foot cab into a crushed tin can. Although he was still in an upright sitting position in the operator's seat, the space had been reduced to that of a filing cabinet. He couldn't even brush away glass fragments from his eyes, as his arms were pinned down along with his chest and legs.

Steel fragments pressed down on his neck, dangerously close to his jugular. If the wreckage shifted he could be decapitated. Despite his unfortunate situation, George remembered the radio in his cab. He managed to flip the mike switch and asked, 'Is there anyone else hurt?' Anthony replied that that everyone was fine and that they'd have him out soon, although George didn't really see how.

Anthony, of course, had lied, as two others had died and the 20 firemen who had arrived were equally stumped as to how to get George out. Fire chief Robert Garr decided that the only way to get George out without crushing him was to cut away at the wreckage piece by piece. They would punch a hole using oxyacetylene torches and power saws.

It was a dangerous plan that could kill George and the other rescuers as well. Soon, firemen had cut away a piece of the cab's roof to reveal a bloodied George below. However, they soon realised that it would be impossible to free him by pulling him out, as his legs had been trapped by a mass of tangled

pedals and wires. By then, another problem had set in. The temperature was falling and the cold made rescue work much more crucial.

Firemen got below the cab and frantically cut away metal to free George's legs. In the meantime, his wife and two grown sons had reached the scene to give George moral support and courage as he weakened due to his injuries. A trauma team fed him warmed saline through a drip to stabilise his body temperature.

After two more hours of frantic cutting, firefighters pulled George Burns out of the wreckage. Doctors at Nottinghill Hospital had to treat him quickly for severe hypothermia due to the cold and eventually had no choice but to amputate his severely damaged left foot. However, a year later, the indomitable George climbed back into the cab of his crane, fitted with a prosthesis, to lift steel.

*Answer the following questions using complete sentences*

1. From paragraph 1, why was Anthony shocked ?
2. From paragraph 2,a) who was manning the crane ?b) 'a section of what had been the cab ... ' (i) What does this tell you about the condition of the cab ? (ii) What do you think crossed Anthony's mind when he saw the cab ?
3. From paragraph 4,a) why was George worried about his jugular vein ?b) which word means 'unlucky' ?
4. From paragraph 7,a) why were the firemen working frantically ?b) why did the paramedics insert warm saline ?
5. In your own words, describe two qualities that George Burns possessed.
6. Based on the passage given, write a summary of :\* the rescue, and\* the ways in which George Burns demonstrated his courage throughout the ordealYour summary must not be longer than 130 words, including the 10 words given below:

*After escaping the crash, Anthony raced to the wreckage and ...*

## **COMPREHENSION**

### 77

It was the beginning of the wet season. After a tiring descent from the mountain, Daniel decided to spend a night at a chalet before continuing his journey home the next morning. There were not many mountaineers at that time because of the unfavourable weather conditions.

That night, Daniel was woken up by a loud roar of thunder. Suddenly, it dawned on him that there was a terrible storm outside. The sound of the howling wind echoed through an open window. As he was about to get up to close it, his bed started trembling. He screamed as the windows, walls and ceilings crashed around him without any warning. Seconds later, when the chaos had subsided, he tried to sit up but instead bashed his head against something hard. It felt like concrete. It was then, he realised with horror that the chalet had collapsed and he was trapped!

Not long after, he heard a rumbling, gushing sound. *Water!* Just then, a mixture of water and mud rushed through the gaps above his head, filling the small space. Instinctively, he knew that he was in the midst of landslide. Desperately, he tried to lift himself up but was unable to do so. Feeling completely helpless, he knew that he had no choice but to wait for help. Time seemed to pass very slowly and he was beginning to lose all his hope of ever being rescued. He thought of his loving wife and his baby son who would be waiting for his return.

It had been ten hours since his last meal and he was tired, hungry and thirsty. He knew he had to keep warm. He felt a cotton cover at the end of the bed. Stretching down, he ripped a piece of the material free. It just covered his stomach and thighs. Next, he found a jacket he had left on the bed and struggled into it. He felt warmer and more comfortable after that.

Meanwhile, rescue operations were underway. Eleven hours after the incident, workers and volunteers were still clearing the rubble - pieces of shattered concrete, furniture, bricks and timber. Firefighters crawled over the rubble and peered into gaps, yelling, "Rescue team above - can you hear me?" initially the only sounds were from the birds overhead and the gurgle of water beneath the rubble. Just as they were about to give up and leave that spot, suddenly they heard Daniel's faint voice, "Help! Help!" coming from beneath.

News of the survivor spread quickly and the recovery team worked tirelessly to save him. After an hour, workers exposed a huge slab of concrete just above Daniel. Through a jagged, half-metre-wide opening, they heard Daniel's voice sounded more clearly now. The rescuers realised he was just beneath them. They wriggled into a small chamber and began clearing more rubble. Soon they discovered another concrete slab two metres lower. After three hours digging, a rescuer's light lit up a crack in the lower slab.

Against the dim light, Tony, a fireman, saw a hand emerging through a crack. "There's someone down there," he shouted. The rescue workers started digging in that particular area immediately. They knew that they were racing against time. Despite feeling exhausted, they continued digging. After removing two boulders, they could hear a voice. Realising that they had to rescue the victim quickly, the team took prompt action.

The rescuers started cutting a hole through the slab above the victim, using a circular saw. Once that was done, the hole was now large enough for Jim, a paramedic, to enter. Jim quickly slid into the cavity to prepare his *patient* so that he could be moved to safety. He carefully placed a harness around Daniel's waist, making sure that Daniel would not feel any discomfort. He gently pulled Daniel until his head was just beneath the hole. Then, all the other rescue workers above the hole slowly hoisted Daniel to the surface.

Just before he was airlifted to a nearby hospital, Daniel thanked the rescue team for having saved his life. The doctors at the hospital were astonished to discover that he suffered only dehydration and superficial cuts. Daniel was hospitalised for three days. Despite the ordeal he had gone through, he had this to say: "Mountain-climbing has always been my passion. I can't wait for my next mountain-climbing expedition."

*Answer the following questions using complete sentences*

1. From paragraph 1, why were there not many mountaineers at the chalet ?
2. From paragraph 2,a) what caused Daniel to wake up ?b) what made Daniel realise that the chalet had collapsed ?
- 3.a) From paragraph 3, which words means 'without having to think' ?b) From paragraph 4, what **two** things did Daniel use to keep himself warm ?
- 4.a) From paragraph 5, why do you think the firefighters looked into cracks and yelled ?b) From paragraph 8, who was the *patient* ?

5.“Mountain-climbing has always been my passion. I can’t wait for my next mountain-climbing expedition.” Based on this statement, how would you describe Daniel’s character ? Give a reason to support your answer.

6.Daniel was trapped in his room during a landslide. Based on the passage given, write a summary on **what the rescuer did to save him**.

Your summary must not be longer than 130 words, including the 10 words given below

*Rescue workers and volunteers started by clearing the rubble and ...*

## **COMPREHENSION**

**78**

Since his childhood days, Amir had lived alone with his grandpa and the two of them shared a very special relationship. They were always seen together and seemed inseparable. Both of them had a common passion - football.

Amir was the smallest of the class when he entered secondary school. Although he loved football, he was only selected as a reserve player as he was not good enough and was also considered too short. He was always sitting on the substitute’s bench watching the game. However, as a determined person, Amir always hoped he would be given a chance to play when he became a senior.

All through secondary school he came early for all the games, but remained a substitute throughout the five years. Amir was very envious of the other players who were all very much better than he. In his free time, Amir would be watching videos of great football matches to improve his skills. Determined to become a better player, he asked for extra tips from his coach. Not wanting to disappoint him, the coach agreed but knew it would not make any difference. Using the tips he had learnt, he practised regularly. His faithful grandpa would be in the stands, always with words of encouragement for him. The coach and his teammates were very impressed with his grandpa.

When Amir went to college, he decided to try out for the football team there. Everyone was sure he would not be selected, but he proved them wrong. He made the team but again as a reserve. The coach admitted that he kept Amir on the reserve list because he had always put his heart and soul into every practice. Besides, his dedication inspired the rest of his team. The news that he had been selected thrilled him so much that he rushed to the nearest telephone to call his grandpa. The old man was equally excited. Each time Amir’s team played, he made it a point to be there. The persistent young athlete never missed practice during his four years at college but still he never got to play in any matches.

It was the end of his senior football season and, as he trotted onto the practice field shortly before a match, the coach met him with a message. Amir read the note and he turned pale. Swallowing hard, he mumbled to his coach, “My grandpa ... died this morning. Is it all right if I miss practice today?”

“The coach put his arm gently around his shoulders and said, “Take the rest of the week off, son. And don’t even plan to come back to the game on Saturday. Take care.”

Saturday arrived, and the game was not going too well. In the second half, when the team was two goals behind, a silent young man quietly slipped into the changing room and put on his football gear. As he ran onto the sidelines, the coach and his players were astounded to see their faithful teammate back so soon after his grandpa’s death.

A whistle sounded. A player was injured and had to be taken off the field. A substitute was needed. Amir boldly approached the coach. "Coach, please let me play. I have just got to play today," Amir pleaded.

The coach pretended not to hear him. There was no way he wanted his worst player in such an important game. But Amir persisted and, finally feeling sorry for him, the coach gave in. "All right," he said. "You can go on."

"Before long, the coach, the players and the spectators could not believe their eyes. This unknown little reserve, who had never played in the team before, was doing everything right. The opposing team could not stop him. His team began to triumph. The score was soon tied at 2-2. In the closing seconds of the game, Amir took control of the ball and raced past three defenders. The cheering was thunderous. Amir had scored the winning goal! The fans were overjoyed. His teammates hoisted him onto their shoulders. It was indeed a sweet victory for Amir."

Finally, after the team had showered and left the changing room, the coach noticed Amir sitting quietly in the corner all alone. Approaching him, the coach patted his shoulders and said, "Amir, I can't believe it. You were fantastic! How did you do it?"

"Amir looked at the coach and with tears in his eyes said, "Well, you knew my grandpa died, but did you know that he was blind?" He swallowed hard and forced a smile. "Grandpa came to all my games, but today was the first time he could see me play, and I wanted to show him I could do it!"

*Answer the following questions using complete sentences*

- 1.a) From paragraph 2, give **one** reason why Amir was chosen only as a reserve player.b) From paragraph 3, why did the coach agree to give Amir extra tips ?
- 2.From paragraph 4, how did Amir feel when he was selected as a reserve player ?
- 3.a) From paragraph 5, what news was conveyed in the message ?b) From paragraph 7, why do you think the coach and the other players were surprised to see Amir ?
- 4.a) From paragraph 9, why was the coach unwilling to allow Amir to play in such an important match ?b) Which word in paragraph 10 has the same meaning as 'deafening' ?c) From paragraph 11, why do you think Amir was sitting all alone in the corner ?
- 5.What kind of man was Amir's grandpa ? Give **one** quality and provide a reason to support your answer.
- 6.Based on the passage given, write a summary of:  
\* Amir's effort to achieve success in football after he became a reserve player, and\* how he surprised his coach on the day of the important match  
*After Amir had been chosen as a reserve player, he ...*

## **COMPREHENSION**

### 79

The thrill of seeing the first hummingbird in my garden has never left me - the sight of this unbelievably tiny creature with striking feathers flitting boldly from flower to flower. To attract other birds, I began growing their favourite plants. Soon, more hummingbirds began visiting my garden from May through late September, before departing for countries with warmer climates. In 1998, the last one left on October 3 - or so I thought.

On October 21, I went outdoors for my early morning chores. Suddenly, I saw a young male hummingbird. I couldn't believe my eyes as I thought these birds should have migrated by then. I quickly looked around the garden as hummingbirds usually need to feed once every ten to fifteen minutes and my garden was bare. This bird would have nothing to eat so I hung out a feeder

containing liquid nectar. However, the bird didn't seem to know what to do with it and kept circling a particular spot. Finally, I placed a trail of plants leading to my conservatory, a special room where I grew my flowers. When the hummingbird came inside, I closed the door behind him to keep him safe and then set up another feeder. The bird went from flower to flower before he discovered the feeder. He liked the nectar and fed on it for the rest of the day.

Although I loved the idea of a hummingbird spending the winter in my conservatory, I hesitated to take away his freedom. But I also didn't want him to die. So I called an ornithologist, an expert on birds, for advice. He warned me that this bird was probably not going to live and gave me three choices: I could keep the bird all winter, or I could fatten him up and let him go after a few days, or I could find someone to release him down south where it was warmer. I reasoned that if the bird had nothing outside to eat that day, the next day wouldn't be any better. And sending him south was not practical. However, I could provide suitable living conditions to keep him warm in my conservatory. I named him Squeak because of his constant squeaky chirping.

Offering Squeak a balanced diet now became my main concern. Besides nectar, hummingbirds need protein from insects. The ornithologist then suggested Nektar-Plus. I kept two feeders of this complete diet going at all times. As hummingbirds love to bathe, I also bought a small plastic bird bath for Squeak. But he had different plans as bath time was always a game to him. He would rather slide around on the wet leaves and get his entire body soaked. After bathing, he would fly around the room to dry himself. Once when he became sick, I had to nurse him back to health.

As winter turned to spring, we had strengthened our friendship. Hoping that he would make my garden his territory, I gave him a special treat. I filled a feeder with a particularly sweet solution and held it in my hand. After just one taste, Squeak loved it. He began watching for me and waiting eagerly by the door handle for this treat. By then, he would even allow me to stroke him. I began to spend more time with him.

In early May, the other hummingbirds returned and when Squeak spotted them outside, he became excited, chattering and flying rapidly to and fro. One day, I saw him and another hummingbird hovering beak to beak with the window between them and I knew then what had to be done. As much as I loved having Squeak, I realised that I had to let him go. That morning, as usual, Squeak had a shower after which I opened the door in the conservatory. I then coaxed him with a treat in my hand. He came over for a sip, then flew back inside. He did it again and again. Each time I moved farther away and after much coaxing, he finally came all the way out to where I was. He took a drink, then inspected a plant hanging on the porch. Suddenly he lifted up, flew over the roof of the house - and was gone. My eyes filled with tears. I was sorry for releasing him - yet I also knew it was for the best.

*Answer the following questions using complete sentences*

- 1.From paragraph 1, what did the writer do to encourage more hummingbirds into her garden ?
- 2.From paragraph 2,
  - a) why was the writer surprised to see the hummingbird ?
  - b) what did the writer put in the feeder for the bird ?
- 3.From paragraph 3,
  - a) which word tells you that the writer was not sure what to do with the bird ?
  - b) of the three choices suggested by the ornithologist, which option did the writer choose ?
- 4.a) From paragraph 4, what evidence is there to show that Squeak had fun during bath time ?

b) From paragraph 5, give **two** pieces of evidence to show that Squeak enjoyed his special treat.

5.In your own words, give **two** reasons why the writer was sad to release Squeak.

6.Based on the passage, writer a summary on **how the writer showed her love and care for the hummingbird.**

Begin your summary as follows: *To show her love and care for the hummingbird, she ...*

## **COMPREHENSION**

**80**

*Pay It Forward* is a book, written by Catherine Ryan Hyde, which was later made into a movie of the same name. In the movie, a young boy, Trevor, was challenged by his teacher to come up with an idea that could change the world and to put this idea into action. Trevor decided to do a kind deed for three different people. These people then did the same to others. Each of these three people then did the same good deed for three other people. As a result, Trevor's one good deed led to nine acts of kindness and so the cycle continued.

Trevor may just be an imaginary character, but this work of fiction has been put into practice by the *Random Acts of Kindness Foundation*, an organisation set up to encourage people to carry out good deeds. People all over the world are experiencing the pleasure of having kind deeds done for them and they in turn reciprocate.

There are countless ways for people to show acts of kindness. It is not limited to giving money by donating to a needy cause, but we can also take time out to listen to someone who has a problem and needs a friend. "Somebody paid for my order at a restaurant once," says Syed Haizir. "It really made my day, so I try to do something similar as often as I can," he adds. Au Yeong, a student, also found inspiration from the movie, *Pay It Forward*. On some days, he buys copies of newspapers and puts a note between the pages saying, "Enjoy reading ... from someone who just wants to be kind." Then he gives the newspapers free to people waiting at the bus-stop or at the train station.

A little creativity is very helpful in making others happy. If you come across a humorous comic strip or an inspiring article, cut it out. Pass it on to someone who might be interested in reading it. This will put a smile on their face. Put together writing kits with stationery, envelopes, stamps or art supplies and hand them over to patients at a hospital. These items will come in handy to help patients keep in touch with friends as well as to keep **them** occupied. You can give students inexpensive raincoats which they can keep in their bags. On rainy days, these will really be appreciated: textbooks and uniforms can be kept dry, and colds may be prevented. A small act of kindness goes a long way.

There are indeed many ways to show kindness. You may think that being kind will cost you a lot of money. Even those with the kindest hearts can be overwhelmed by the idea of doing charity because they think it will take up too much of their time. However, you can do good deeds for others with just what you have, and the wonderful thing is that there are a lot of benefits for the people who do these deeds. When people help others, they feel great about what they do. They experience a greater sense of well-being which is critically important as it helps to reduce common problems like stress and depression. These people will be able to cope better with their own worries and problems.

Kindness has a way of catching on. Acts of kindness will give rise to more acts of kindness. When more people show kindness to each other, society will undergo changes. As each good turn leads to the next, the effect will multiply, thus producing a caring society where people will be more concerned for others. Consequently, this will lead to more positive effects like a lower crime rate and happier citizens.

We may start by wanting to do something good, without expecting to get anything in return at all. However, what a thrill it is to be on the receiving end. Somehow, someday, our acts of kindness will certainly come back to us.

*Answer the following questions using complete sentences*

- 1.From paragraph 1, a) what is the name of the movie ?b) how did Trevor try to change the world ?
- 2.From paragraph 2, a) what is the aim of the *Random Acts of Kindness Foundation* ?b) which word from the paragraph means ‘do the same to others’ ?
- 3.From paragraph 4, a) what effect can a comic strip have on a person reading it ?b) who does the word **them** refer to ?
- 4.From paragraph 5, give **two** reasons why some people are not prepared to do acts of kindness.
- 5.Without using examples from the passage, suggest **two** ways in which you can be kind to others.
- 6.Based on the passage, writer a summary of.\* the ways in which people can show acts of kindness, and\* the benefits that can be experienced from acts of kindness

Begin your summary as follows: *One of the many ways to show kindness is to ...*

### **COMPREHENSION**

#### **81**

Ten years ago, I led a fast-paced life. I was an accounts manager for a top trading company, putting in at least 12 hours a day at the office. For three consecutive years, my team had raked in the highest profit and I had received numerous awards. Life was exciting and I was fortunate to have hired help at home. Little did I know that I would lose **it** all in the next few months.

It happened after a business trip to China. I developed a persistent back pain and a low grade fever at night. I thought I was overworked and decided to take some painkillers. When I told my husband about it, he said I probably needed a holiday. He promptly booked a holiday for us both to Bali the next day. In Bali, things got worse, especially at night. I had night sweats and I began coughing. I was so exhausted that I cut short the holiday and flew home.

The next day, I could hardly get out of bed. My family doctor advised me to take an X-ray. To my utter dismay, the X-rays revealed that I had tuberculosis (TB) ! He put me on a regimen of 20 tablets a day, containing the usual drugs to fight TB. I soon felt better and everything was back to normal. However, when I returned from my trip to Singapore, I had developed a persistent cough again. This time, I decided to make an appointment with my friend, Dr Azlin, a consultant chest physician. Another X-ray revealed a fist-size cavity in my lower left lung, caused by a multidrug-resistant strain. My TB was definitely still around. By this time, my weight had dropped to 40 kilos. I could hardly eat anything as the powerful drugs made me sick. I was warned that the treatment would cause nausea, heart palpitations and joint pains. It might also lead to liver problems and blindness. I did not hesitate, as I did not have any choice. I could hardly breathe and a simple conversation was almost impossible. In the meantime, I had a heart-to-heart talk with my boss, Encik Razman, and we decided that I should hand over my team to my assistant while I recuperate. He was very understanding and kind which made it even more difficult for me. I was used to fighting my way up and we always had heated arguments about our projects. Seeing his sympathy and kindness made me reflect upon the seriousness

of my condition. I told him that I wanted to take no-pay leave and he assured me that the job would always be there waiting for me. It was the first time he saw me cry.

I began to think about my job and my accomplishments. I spent a total of four months in bed. During that time, my family and friends could not visit me for fear of infection. I contemplated my future, if I had one. I wanted to die at one point as I had never felt so hopeless. I was slowly losing the battle. Then, my husband bought a journal for me and I began writing again. It was something that I had always wanted to do but did not have the time. I guessed he must have seen the emptiness in my eyes and he desperately wanted to help. One night, when I wanted to go to the toilet, I heard him crying in the study room. It was then that I resolved to get well. I realized that I had put him through so much and he had never once complained to me about the household. When I was better, my children visited me. I missed them more than I realized. A week later, I began painting again, a hobby which I had pursued as a child. I painted and wrote as if I had only weeks to live. My drive and will began to return. I felt better but dared not believe the first negative test results that came back. I had been there before. Finally, after 36 harrowing months, I was declared free of TB. However, **the disease had taken its toll on me**. It had destroyed 25 per cent of my left lung. Each day, for the next six months, I still had to continue taking the medicine to avoid any relapse.

Finally, a year later, I was pronounced cured. I was finally able to go back to work. A sea of new faces greeted me on that day. I felt insecure but happy to be back. Then, Encik Razman and my team were waiting in my room for me. I was overjoyed that they had maintained the room for me. I cried tears of joy as I hugged my team members.

Although I feel weak and I am constantly on antibiotics, I am enjoying life again. I am thankful for the break that the disease gave me as it had taught me life's lessons. I learnt to appreciate my family and life. I learnt that it is all right to lean back and let others get ahead of me. I learnt that material wealth is nothing compared to health, love and life.

*Answer the following questions using complete sentences*

- 1.From paragraph 1,(a) according to the writer, what accomplishment can the writer boast of as an accounts manager ?(b) what does **it** refer to ?
- 2.From paragraph 2, why did her husband book a holiday to Bali ? How do we know that she was still unwell in Bali ?
- 3.From paragraph 4, give one example of the seriousness of the writer's condition.
- 4.From paragraph 6,(a) why was the writer unable to receive any visitors ?(b) give a reason why the writer dared not believe the first negative results that came back.(c) explain the phrase '**the disease had taken its toll on me**'.
- 5.From paragraphs 8, give **two** lessons of life that the writer got from her illness.
- 6.Based on the passage given, write a summary \* on the writer's reactions and feelings and\* what she did to deal with the situation Begin your summary as follows :*The writer had a serious discussion with her boss and ...*

### **COMPREHENSION**

#### 82

Narayanan Krishnan was an award-winning chef with Taj Hotels in Bangalore in the state of Karnataka in India. His excellence meant that he was short-listed for an elite job in Switzerland. It was the year 2002. An unforgettable horrible sight changed Narayanan's life forever. He saw a very old

street dweller eating his own human waste out of hunger. Narayanan quickly ran to a nearby restaurant and got some idlis (a popular item eaten as breakfast). When he gave the idlis to the old man, he was surprised at the speed with which the man ate. It brought tears of joy into Narayanan's eyes. More importantly, it did something to his heart. A dream job in Switzerland was beckoning, but Narayanan found his calling in life when the old man ate his idlis.

Narayanan started to feed the homeless and mentally-disabled in Madurai. The next year, he started the Akshaya Trust. Today, he serves breakfast, lunch and dinner to 425 indigent and elderly people in Madurai. He also provides haircuts and shaves to give dignity to those he serves. Recognizing how he had scaled the heights of true human spirit, Narayanan Krishnan was selected as one of the Top 10 CNN heroes of 2010. That same year, the Top CNN Hero was a woman from the small nation of Nepal. Pushpa Basnet was an undergraduate in Social Work in a college in Kathmandu. As part of her college assignment, she visited the inmates of a woman's prison there. She was utterly dismayed to find that children lived with their mothers behind bars. Only 21 and not earning yet, she quickly raised 70,000 rupees from her close friends and sister. She started a non-profit organisation called the Early Childhood Development Centre. The outfit was set up to provide a day-care program for the children. This was in 2005. In 2007, she opened a residential home for kids to live outside the prison all year round, while still visiting their imprisoned mothers on weekends and holidays. Basnet runs both a day care centre for the prison children and a residential home for the older ones. She has helped provide alternative residence, school enrolment, free meals and medical care to them.

In 2009, she started a program to coach parents to make handicrafts inside the cell. Basnet wanted to make inmates as well as former inmates to become involved in income generation as a means to help them break out of the cycle of crime and poverty. Gaining respect as a genuine and dedicated social worker, donations started to pour in. As Top CNN Hero, she was granted a total of US\$ 300,000 to continue with her work.

Connie Siskowski was eleven when her grandfather fell ill and she became his primary caregiver. Caregiving youth were an invisible population of young persons involved in taking care of elderly or sickly family members. Family caregiving happens behind closed doors and hence hardly ever comes to the notice of the general public. Connie Siskowski was a caregiver herself when she was 11. She knew first-hand how difficult it can be to juggle school, care and a social life. When she started the Caregiving Youth Project at Boca Raton Middle School, the programme proved very successful in helping young caregivers to succeed academically and personally.

In 2002, she founded the American Association of Caregiving Youth. The non-profit organisation succeeded in raising awareness on the issues that young caregivers faced and provided them with support in their home and school life. It included special classes to cover stress and anger, finance management and goal-setting. Home care demonstrations and workshops educated the youngsters on how to be better in performing the care they gave their needy family members. Teachers and school administrators were brought into the know about the stresses of young caregivers that until then had led to truancy, absenteeism and reducing academic performance. In talking about the caregiver youngsters, Connie says that "when people understand about this precious population, they will want to recognize and support them."

Narayanan Krishnan, Pushpa Basnet and Connie Siskowski met for the first time at the presentation ceremony of the 2012 CNN Hero of the Year awards. They spoke different languages. Yet, they had more in common than most of us. They listened to their hearts and rather than reporting to authorities

regarding actions that needed to be taken, they took it upon themselves to rise up to the challenge. Each one of them started out single-handedly and led to the world recognizing the validity of their solutions to the problems they addressed. They scaled the heights of excellence with only their determination and single-mindedness, which were worthy of recognition as real life heroes of the world.

*Answer the following questions using complete sentences*

- 1.From paragraph 1, where was Narayanan Krishnan supposed to go from India ?
- 2.(a) From paragraph 2, what organisation did N. Krishnan start with ?
- (b) From paragraph 2, how many meals does he serve in a single day ?
- 3.(a) From paragraph 3, who was the Top CNN Hero of the year in 2012 ?
- (b) From paragraph 4, name the **two** facilities that Pushpa Basnet set up in 2007.
- 4.(a) From paragraph 6, what did Connie Siskowski succeed in bringing to light ?
- (b) Why was it important to help the caregivers ?
- 5.What characteristic stands out in the three CNN Heroes mentioned in the passage ?Characteristic : \_\_\_\_\_ Reason : \_\_\_\_\_

6.Based on the passage, write a summary of :• The circumstances that led to the three heroes taking the paths they did. • The good that happened because of their individual efforts.

## **COMPREHENSION**

### **83**

The Three Gorges Dam in China cost USD37 billion to build. It created a reservoir hundreds of feet deep and nearly 400 miles long. To achieve this, 13 cities, 140 towns and more than 1600 villages had to be evacuated and then inundated. The dam generates 11 times as much power as the Hoover Dam in the United States.

The Three Gorges Dam, built across three gorges in the Yangtze River, was supposed to control flooding on that river. Yet, 2010 saw the worst flood in years. There is now a USD 62 billion project to divert water to China's scorched Northern region. Northern China has half the population of the country but only 15 % of its freshwater.

The ambitious Three Gorges Dam was first envisioned in 1919. Much of the approach to the project did not take into account the warnings of various scientific groups and activists. More often than not, it was in direct contradiction to scientific recommendations. The massive quantity of water dammed up is said to slow Earth's rotation. This may sound far-fetched. But it must be noted that the detonation of the largest bomb by Russia is said to have produced a sonic wave that went round the Earth twice. Our region has been suffering the haze for more than twenty years due to massive fires in a neighbouring country. The point to be noted is that man is capable of projects and activity massive enough to have a tangible effect on the planet as a whole.

The environmental consequences of large dam include direct impacts to the biological, chemical and physical properties of rivers and the stream-side environments. Fish that migrate upstream to spawn can lose access to their spawning grounds when rivers are dammed up. In some parts of the world, small side streams connect the upper and lower parts of the dammed river to create a path for the fish to move upstream and find their natural spawning grounds.

Dams trap sediments that are an integral part of physical processes and habitats downstream, including productive deltas, barrier islands, fertile floodplains and coastal wetlands. Damming slows the water flow. From a free-flowing river the body of water becomes an artificial slack-water reservoir. This completely changes the environment of the river as a body of water. Aquatic plants and animals suffer to adapt to the change in temperature, chemical composition, dissolved oxygen levels and physical properties of the river that becomes a reservoir. Non-native and invasive species move in to the detriment of the river's natural communities of plants and animals.

The greatest sustained environmental impacts of dams are the alteration in the river's flow and transportation of sediment downriver. Areas of the river's reaches, the natural seepage of water to the sides are disrupted. This dewatering severely affects the life forms contained in these areas. The ecological web of the river system is adversely altered.

Some sediment naturally replenish downstream ecosystems. Riverbeds downstream of dams are typically eroded by several meters within the first decade itself. This damage can extend for hundreds of kilometres below a dam. This deepening of the riverbed will lower groundwater tables along the river. Plants will lose their supply of groundwater as will human communities who draw from wells. Invertebrates and fish lose this riverbed environment for natural spawning.

Dams also have a significant effect on the atmosphere. Most reservoirs in the tropics show a significant increase to greenhouse gas emissions. Large dams have led to the extinction of many fish and other aquatic species, the disappearance of birds in floodplains, huge losses of forest, wetland and farmland, erosion of coastal deltas and many other negative impacts that cannot be reversed.

*Answer the following questions using complete sentences*

1. From paragraph 1, how much did the Three Gorges Dam cost ?
- 2.(a) From paragraph 1, how long is the reservoir of the Three Gorges Dam ?(b) From paragraph 1, in terms of power generation, how does the Three Gorges Dam compare with the Hoover Dam ?
- 3.(a) From paragraph 4, how are fish that move upstream to spawn affected by dams ?(b) From paragraph 6, what are the **two** sustained environmental impacts of dams ?
- 4.(a) In your own words, what does the term non-native species mean ?(b) What is the negative effect on the environment of dams in the tropics ?
- 5.What characteristic in dams outweigh the benefit of a continuous supply of electricity ?
- 6.Based on the passage, write a summary of :• How dams should only be the last recourse as a source of electricity. • How dams affect an ecosystem.

## **COMPREHENSION**

### 84

Pollution is the primary way in which humans have caused drastic changes of wildlife habitats. For too long, man has behaved with little regard to the ecological consequences of his habits. Nature and wildlife populations are confronted with a bewildering array of pollutants that we intentionally or by accident release into the environment.

Pollution can be viewed as the negative alteration in the chemical or physical characteristics of the environment due to human activities. On the global scale, this is evident in the melting of the ice-caps, both at the poles and in mountain tops, and also in global warming with the release of greenhouse gases into the atmosphere.

After World War II, the use of synthetic chemicals to control insect pests, weed and fungi became an integral part of agriculture. The Nobel Prize for medicine was awarded to Paul Mueller, a Swiss chemist, for discovering the insecticidal properties of DDT. By 1964, the annual production of DDT in the US reached 90 million kilograms. By then, scientists were already discovering the disastrous side effects DDT. In the 1970s, most industrial countries banned the use of DDT because of its unacceptable side-effects on wildlife, humans and the food chain.

Modern society heavily relies on the use of fossil fuels. It is not just a source of energy, but also a raw material for synthetic chemicals, plastics and Styrofoam. Half the global use of petroleum is in North America and Europe. Because of this, massive quantities of oil are transported around the globe each year. An inescapable consequence of this is the accidental spillage of oil at the point of extraction, in transit and even after delivery to refineries.

When a spill occurs, the most obvious effect on wildlife is that animal furs and bird feathers get covered with oil which naturally has high concentrations of toxic components. In the long term chemicals on beaches, in the water and in the food chain may throw up a variety of impacts. These may include impaired reproduction, reduced resistance to diseases, neurological damage and birth defects in creatures that exist in that environment. These can easily lead to the extinction of species. The Exxon Valdez spill that occurred in March of 1989 adversely affected three national parks, four national wildlife refuges and a national forest. Eventually, the spill spread over an estimated 1400 miles of shoreline blackening every bay, beach and estuary in California. Nature's recovery from this may take hundreds of years. A total of 36,466 dead seabirds, 1015 dead sea otters and 144 bald eagles were recovered from the area. This excludes animals that sink into the water when they die and fish. The human population is extremely large. The advance of technology meets the demands of this population. Not all technology is about human comforts. Much of it is a response to basic human needs, like food, clothing and shelter. Every morning, 7 billion humans have breakfast. Can you imagine the amount of work involved in manufacturing just this one meal?

For the orderly existence of humans, disorder has to happen in the lives of other creatures of the world and to the world itself. The total destruction of wildlife habitats, human encroachment into existing habitats, and alteration in climatic balance can directly be related to the existential needs of humans. It may be impossible to stop this effect. At best, it can be mitigated.

*Answer the following questions using complete sentences*

- 1.From paragraph 1, what is the basic way in which man affects the environment ?
- 2.(a) From paragraph 2, how can pollution be defined ?  
(b) From paragraph 2, give two negative effects of pollution.
- 3.(a) From paragraph 3, why was the Swedish scientist Paul Mueller awarded the Nobel Prize ?  
(b) From paragraph 3, what was the peak production of DDT in the US ? How did DDT affect man and nature ?
- 4.(a) Why is petroleum transported in large quantities ?(b) Where do spills occur ?
- 5.Without using data from the passage, mention two forms of pollution that you are aware of.
- 6.Based on the passage, write a summary of :• The crisis that the environment and nature faces due to human activity.

## **COMPREHENSION**

There are many aspects that are involved in taking care of elderly or aged people. Those who have the responsibility of taking care of the aged need to be aware of the various needs and requirements that the elderly have.

Elderly individuals who live on their own, without the support of anyone, may have a certain amount of financial needs. Such people need to fend for themselves for everything, including food, groceries, medicines etc. Pensioners have the benefit of a steady source of monthly income. Those who do not have any pension or other source of income would have to live entirely on their saving or through special senior citizens' government financial schemes or donations from charitable organisations. It is natural that elderly people prefer staying at home in their old age. This brings the benefit of familiar surroundings and people around them. The homes of such people may be modified to accommodate their changing needs. There is the added benefit of familiar neighbours in the event of an emergency. Transportation is quick and easier for elderly people residing in areas that are familiar to them.

Health services are the most important requirement when it comes to elderly needs. Elderly people have age-related health issues. This is a normal part of life and cannot be avoided. Proper care and nursing facilities go a long way in keeping most of these health issues in check and also preventing them from causing any serious harm. Regular medical check-ups are useful to monitor the health of the elderly and also to anticipate potential future issues. Regular medical check-ups also help in identifying serious health problems at the initial stage when treatment has a greater chance of success. As people age, their digestive systems gradually starts to weaken. Elderly people often find that they have difficulty digesting certain foods. It is important to realize that diet has to change to accommodate the reduced ability of the body. It may be okay to over-indulge with regards to food when young. But for the elderly, a nutritious and balanced diet made up of foodstuffs that the digestive system is able to accept is of utmost importance. Very often, the diet needs to be altered taking into consideration the medicines that are consumed each day.

For the elderly whose mobility has been affected due to aging, a certain amount of assistance in the daily routines becomes a necessity. It may not be possible for a family member to be present the whole day. Home nurses are the latest professionals to have appeared on the career list. For those elderly who need assistance in basic activities like walking, eating, bathing and dressing a home nurse is an invaluable companion.

The elderly have social needs too. Being debilitated by age is no reason for the elderly to be confined to themselves or in their rooms. Modern medicine recognises as fact that the elderly, just as ordinary people, need to feel wanted, cared for and loved. The world over, kind-hearted people take turns to give companionship to the elderly. Oftentimes, just physical proximity is enough comfort for the elderly. Some read to them and some others chat with them.

Physical comfort for the elderly differs from the needs of the young. As an example, air-conditioning may be looked upon as a necessity for the young. Yet, for an aged body, it may be very uncomfortable.

Considering all that has been said, is it any wonder that care homes have become a billion dollar industry? Not every business is about profits. Care homes serve an important purpose in modern society. Nursing homes, care homes, retirement villages and retirement communities are just some of the forms that organised elderly care has taken. In the United States alone, this industry was worth USD 17 billion in 2010.

*Answer the following questions using complete sentences*

- 1.From paragraph 2, in what manner do the elderly living alone have to fend for themselves ?
- 2.(a) From paragraph 2, what is the benefit of having a monthly pension ?(b) From paragraph 2, how do those without a pension survive ?
- 3.(a) From paragraph 3, what are the advantages of the elderly who live in their own homes ?(b) From paragraph 3, mention two benefits of living in familiar surroundings ?
- 4.(a) From paragraph 4, what is the greatest need of the elderly ?(b) From paragraph 5, what happens to the digestive systems of the elderly ?
- 5.Care homes serve an important purpose in modern society.

Based on this statement, how would you describe the characteristic nature of care homes ?

- 6.Based on the passage, write a summary of :• The changing nature of elderly care. • The good that care homes serve.

## **COMPREHENSION**

### **86**

A product profile is a general description of a product. Based on the style of presentation, the amount of detail it contains can vary. The product profile details what the product is and how it will appeal to the consumer. The objective is to determine what makes the product attractive to the consumer. This is an important analysis that will help in the marketing of the product.

Mass marketing is a technical term that refers to the selling of a product on a large scale. It involves products that are produced in large quantities. There may be minor differences in localized markets. The mass marketing strategy ignores these. Mass marketing appeals to the whole market with a single offer or strategy. This is done by broadcasting a message that will reach the largest number of consumers possible.

Mass marketing uses the mass media to get their message across. Radio, television and newspapers are the usual vehicles employed. With the advent of social media, strategies are now also devised to take advantage of this new avenue. Exposure to a product is maximized by reaching the largest audience possible. This often directly correlates to a larger number of sales.

Mass marketing focuses on high sales and low prices. This is just the opposite of Niche marketing. Niche marketing targets a very specific segment of the market. It involves specialized services or goods with few or no competitors.

Mass marketing came into existence in the 1920s when mass radio came into use. The mass radio, broadcasting to huge audiences nationwide gave corporations an opportunity to appeal to a wide variety of potential customers. Before this, the strategy of marketing was what may be called variety marketing. In this strategy, different methods were used to appeal to different sections of society most often according to geographical location. In order to appeal to and persuade a wide audience, this had to change. Over the years, mass marketing has developed into a world-wide multi-billion dollar industry.

Things which are perceived as necessary or essential are subjected to mass marketing. To further increase profits, these products are often touted as durable goods when oftentimes they are made of substandard materials. This affects the longevity of the product. This practice of planned obsolescence ensures future sales opportunities by preventing the market from becoming saturated with high-quality, long-lasting goods.

One of the biggest benefits of mass marketing is that the target audience is broad. This translates to a higher number of successful sales. Drop in sales in some areas may be offset by sales in other areas. This helps overcome potential losses. Another positive factor is that production costs are lowered by mass production. Marketing research and advertising costs too are lowered. Mass marketing campaigns also benefit due to the magnitude of appeal to larger audiences.

Mass marketing also has its disadvantages. It attempts to appeal to the entire consumer population instead of focusing on a particular niche of consumers. The strength of the product and business can affect performance. The strength of the competition too has a bearing on the performance. Another factor is that overexposure can make consumers grow tired of seeing a business's name and products everywhere.

One factor that is inevitable in mass marketing is heavy advertising costs. It is expensive to establish brands and keep them in the public eye. Often, competition is stiff. Besides, to stay ahead of the competition, high innovation and market research costs have to be incurred.

*Answer the following questions using complete sentences*

1. From paragraph 1, what does the product profile describe ?
- 2.(a) From paragraph 2, what does the term mass marketing refer to ?
- (b) From paragraph 2, what does mass marketing ignore ?
- 3.(a) From paragraph 3, what mass media vehicles are used in mass marketing ?
- (b) From paragraph 3, mention the **two** advantages of using mass media.
- 4.(a) From paragraph 6, what is planned obsolescence ? How is it beneficial ?
- (b) From paragraph 7, what are the biggest advantages of mass marketing ?
- 5.“Mass marketing has its disadvantages.
  - (a) Identify one of the disadvantages.
  - (b) How is this constantly increased ?
- 6.Based on the passage, write a summary of :• The necessity of mass marketing. • The role that it plays in modern society.

## **COMPREHENSION**

### **87**

I had just finished my twentieth year. In those days, starting to smoke was a ‘macho’ thing to do. It was like adult franchise, when one is considered old enough to vote in the country’s election. It was like a rite of passage, when one moved on from being a boy to being a man, an adult. Friendship in those days insisted on being able to do similar things together. So, if one had the bad luck of being among smokers, picking up the habit was the most natural thing to do.

It was a time when tobacco companies were systematically hushing up the real details of the hazards that came with smoking. The first real indication that things were not that rosy came up when the ‘star’ of a cigarette advertisement, one that had a lovely slogan about smoking being a truly glamorous and manly thing to do, died of lung cancer. Pretty soon, stories of others who died of respiratory ailments after years of smoking became common news. Even non-smoking tobacco company employees developed lung cancer and other complications. It would be another fifty years before tobacco companies admitted that tobacco plants were genetically modified to create faster addiction to nicotine among new smokers.

By the time all these came into the public domain, I had been smoking for more than twenty years. The addiction was so entrenched that I never mentally accepted that I had an addiction. My best friends' wife died of lung cancer despite never having smoked a cigarette all her life. Only much later did we realise that sleeping all those years next to him was the real cause of her cancer. We had heard of secondary smoke. He smoked everywhere in the house. But worse still was that his breath was poisonous for her, even when he wasn't smoking, because he was a chain smoker.

Another friend of mine, although not a chain smoker, was a heavy smoker. Famous for his deep guttural smoker's cough, over the years he steadily lost his physical capabilities. Being close friends, he used to confide in us that his sexual ability was on the decline. He had very bad emphysema and would be gasping for breath after climbing just a single flight of stairs.

Several times, I started on nicotine replacement therapies. But it was not helpful, because in my opinion it did not address my addiction. It only replaced the source of nicotine that my body yearned for. It was only a matter of time before I started to smoke again. I now realise that I should have continued with counselling sessions after the nicotine therapy.

Another friend of mine, also a smoker, had a heart attack. Being close to me and not having a big family, I became a constant companion. I drove him to all his hospital visits over the next few months. The doctors convinced him, with detailed x-rays and other materials, that the real cause of his heart disease was the smoking habit. Having been hospitalized for more than a month after the heart attack, the confinement in hospital meant that he naturally stopped smoking. I realised that if I did not stop now, I would only be encouraging him to start smoking again.

I decided to totally removed cigarettes from life. I got rid of all the ash-trays in my house and the office. I did not throw away the cigarettes. The first one week can best be described as totally terrible. My moods fluctuated from one extreme to the other. Every time that I very badly wanted a cigarette, I would hold a cigarette in my hand and stare at it closely. I would build up the hatred that I had for it, for having taken over my life so insidiously. I would then crush it between my fingers, grind it up in my palm and throw it into the rubbish bin!

One day, it struck me out of the blue. I realised that smokers love cigarettes because they fed their nicotine addiction. Nobody loves the smoke. In fact, who would want to fill their chest with suffocating smoke? We never see a smoker burn stuff just to inhale the smoke. It is the nicotine in smoke that they are really after. I discussed this with my friend who is a psychologist. He was very interested in my concept.

He said he would look into the possibility of coming with a psycho-therapy program which planted a hatred for cigarettes in the smoker's mind. But he warned me that it might not work because people might object to it as an invasion of privacy. Who knows? I hope he is not right. Anyway, I am happy. My life is now cigarette free. My house, office and clothes no longer have a burnt smell.

One big change I have found was that food tasted better. Only then did I realise that the smoke that I had inhaled all my life was at a very high temperature. It was burning my taste buds. In fact I also realised that my sense of smell was never better. Even the smell sensors in my nose were affected by the hot smoke that I was inhaling.

Believe me when I say this as a previously heavy smoker, the only good that comes out of smoking is that it makes tobacco companies richer, and you poorer both financially as well as physically.

*Answer the following questions using complete sentences*

1. From paragraph 1, what is adult franchise ?

- 2.(a) From paragraph 2, what happened to the model in the cigarette advertisement ?  
 (b) How do you think non-smokers in tobacco companies developed lung cancer ?  
 3.(a) From paragraph 3, what would have caused the friend's wife's lung cancer ?  
 (b) From paragraph 3, mention the **two advantages** of using mass media.  
 4.(a) From paragraph 5, in two sentences, explain why you think the nicotine replacement therapy failed ?(b) How did hospitalization helps the friend to stop smoking ?  
 5.“ ... it makes you poorer both financially as well as physically. “Based on this statement, how would you describe the detrimental characteristic of cigarettes ?  
 Characteristic:Reason:  
 6.Based on the passage, write a summary of :• The circumstances that led to the smoking habit of the writer. • The different ways in which families suffer because of the smoking habit.

### **COMPREHENSION**

#### 88

Physical fitness is a pre-requisite for experiencing a satisfying and fruitful life full of joys and fulfilment. Barring a small minority, most humans are healthy when they are young. By the time they are in their teens, their interests and tastes start to surface. Some like to read and write. Others develop talents that they discover in themselves. The concern about settling in a job that brings a good salary is the primary objective for most people. Other than for the exceptionally talented, this means a dreary existence where financial security is given greater importance than one's own personal enjoyment. Up until the recent past, rest and recreation were viewed by many as irresponsible and self-indulging. It was opined to be an expression of selfishness, with hardly any economic benefit. This evaluation was proven to be fallacious with the discovery of stress as a malady. When people started to 'feel tired' even in the absence of physical exertion it made doctors and scientists wonder about the phenomenon.

Previously, stress was nearly always viewed as beneficial as it made people rise up to challenges and even become creative. The normal remedy to being tired is to rest. Doctors started to ask why a person in a sedentary job, with little physical exertion could feel abnormally tired. Studies showed that those with hobbies and those who indulged in physical activity that resulted in bodily tiredness were less 'stressed. The importance of rest and recreation thus came into consideration as a remedy for stress. Today, attitudes have changed to such an extent that rest and recreation are now considered essentials to a healthy and satisfying existence. Sports, games and other forms of physical exertion are now identified as absolutely necessary for a healthy body and hence a healthy mind. For the first time in human history, mental health has been given an equal footing to physical health.

This has led to the emergence of various sciences that deal exclusively with a person's mental health. Gone are the days when 'mentally imbalanced' meant 'stark raving mad. Today, mental imbalance is accepted as a natural phenomenon and is more often than not addressed by counselling, by qualified professionals. Traumatic experiences like grief, disease, natural and unnatural disaster (like financial ruin due to various reasons) are all treated successfully with psychological counselling. It helps victims in such stressful situations to recover from their bad experiences in a shorter space of time and become productive, self-respecting, respectable citizens again.

The parameters to physical and mental balance have been clearly identified. They are regular physical examinations, a proper balance of rest and recreation, contact with loved ones, friendship and companionship. Today, being employed no longer just means being present to do one's work each

day. Today, being employed also means having annual medical check-ups, eating right, being involved in physically exertive activities, attending seminars to enhance one's mental training and attending annual dinners.

Gone are the days when there was a single guideline on what is good decorum and discipline. Today's attitude is such that there is acceptance to how children, youngsters, teenagers, youths, adults and the aged behave differently. Creches and kindergartens cater to the needs of children. Today, on the other extreme, we have homes for the aged that cater to the needs of the elderly. This is a direct result of the development of sciences that deal with physical and mental balance of various ages.

In the age of the digital revolution, we may expect more inventions that constantly analyse our physical and mental balance on a more regular basis. When we wear devices that monitor our health constantly, the annual medical check-up will surely become obsolete. The validity of constant information retrieval about our physical and mental balance may best be seen in the case of the pilot who deliberately crashed a plane full of people. He was already proven to have psychological problems. But the information was hidden from the authorities.

*Answer the following questions using complete sentences*

- 1.From paragraph 1, what is the pre-requisite for a life full of joys and fulfilment ?
  - 2.(a) From paragraph 2, what was viewed as irresponsible and self-indulging ?(b) From paragraph 2, what discovery led to the validity of rest and recreation ?
  - 3.(a) From paragraph 4, who were the less stressed people ?(b) From paragraph 6, what did mentally imbalanced mean. In your own words, what does it mean today ?
  - 4.(a) From paragraph 8, how has today's attitude changed in relation to people of different ages ?(b) What is the other extreme of creches and kindergartens stated ?
  - 5.In your own words, what characteristic of a human life is enhanced with good physical and mental balance ?
- Characteristic:Reason:
- 6.Based on the passage, write a summary of :• The The importance of physical and mental balance• The good that still happens despite being sickly and physically handicapped

## **COMPREHENSION**

### 89

There are many misconceptions and myths that people have about dyslexia. It is important to address these so that we can have a true understanding of dyslexia. It will help promote the strengths of people who have the condition. Many people think that clever people will not be dyslexic or have a learning disability. The real fact is that there is no relationship between intelligence and dyslexia. There have been many cases of dyslexic people who were very bright and creative and have achieved amazing results.

Dyslexia is one of the most common learning disabilities to affect children. Research has shown that one fifth of all Americans are affected by the condition. Some people may have mild forms of dyslexia whereas others may experience it more severely. This goes to show that dyslexia is more common than we think. Dyslexics have difficulty on reading, writing or spelling.

There are people who think that dyslexia will go away with age. This is really a myth. There is no outgrowing dyslexia. The good news is that dyslexia can be minimized with early and effective intervention.

Science is developed enough to recognise dyslexia as early as age 5. Educational psychologists and specialist dyslexia teachers use special tests to diagnose dyslexia. The sooner the diagnosis, the faster the child can get help. This is important as dyslexic children face much bullying and trauma in the secondary school years. The bullies are not at an age where they will be sensitive to the special needs of the dyslexic. On the personal level, the psychological scars from being bullied lowers an already low self-esteem.

Dyslexia is not a medical problem. There is no medication that can heal dyslexia. It is detected by testing reading, writing and spelling. Such testing does not come within the ambit of a doctor's practice. It is more the area of psychologists and other such therapists who have special training for the purpose. Comparative studies have successfully shown that people may be trained to overcome dyslexia. Brain scans of a person who reads normally and a dyslexic as they read are different. When the dyslexic has been trained to overcome his disability, his brain scan when reading will look just like the normal person's. This is proof that the dyslexics may be helped to overcome their disability. One thing that can be observed in a dyslexic's writing is that some of the letters will be written backwards. Because of this people used to think that dyslexics see alphabets backwards. This is not true. Normally by the age of 8, most dyslexics will get this problem solved

.Speech therapy is of tremendous benefit for children with dyslexia. It teaches them 'phonemic awareness'. Phonemic awareness is the ability to hear and work with the sounds of letters and letter combinations. Sometimes, it is beneficial to teach the kids the relationship between letters and the sounds they make. Therapies are directed at reducing the child's anxiety about school. It makes it easier for the child to perform in class. Psychological counselling is also sometimes needed to help the child.

Since dyslexics do not make the connection between letters and sounds, the Orton-Gillingham program was designed to address this specific problem. Even after several decades, this program is still the standard for nearly all learning programs. Many teachers choose the strategies developed by this program to teach alphabet and sound. An example of the Orton-Gillingham is having students walk around on the floor in the pattern of a letter.

*Answer the following questions using complete sentences*

- 1.From paragraph 1, what are dyslexics of low intelligence ?
- 2.(a) From paragraph 2, what percentage of Americans have dyslexia ?(b) From paragraph 3, will dyslexia go away as one grows older ?
- 3.(a) From paragraph 4, what is the earliest age at which dyslexia may be detected ?(b) Who are the professionals who conduct tests to detect dyslexia ?
- 4.(a) From paragraph 5, how do the reading brain scans of a normal child and a dyslexic compare ?(b) From paragraph 5, what does the reading brain scans of a trained dyslexic look like ?
- 5.'Dyslexia is not a medical problem.'

What characteristic of dyslexia validates this statement ?Give reasons to support your answer.

Characteristic :Reason:

- 6.Based on the passage, write a summary of :• The difficulties that dyslexics face• The good that can happen with specialised training to remove the disability.

## COMPREHENSION

In 2013, the world's population of humans hit 7 billion. In the same year, the number of mobile phones in the world was 6.8 billion. This means that there were that many entry points to the internet. Accessibility to mobile phones has helped the farming and agricultural community all over the world. Eric Owandu, a farmer in Kenya participated in a regional trial of a text messaging service for farmers. The service gave Eric advice on crop management, the different maize varieties available, the right fertilizer to use and other such relevant data. In his own words, "This service has helped me a lot to improve my production and profits." A clear advantage of the service was that important information reached farmers faster than the usual personal visits by agriculture advisors. The farmers were also able to time their planting at the correct time based on the advice sent to them. This advice was always based on expert analysis of the weather and climate patterns and many other parameters. Much of this is information that the farmers did not have before.

Since 2011, rice farmers in the Philippines have been receiving free fertilizer guidelines via their mobile phones. A simple call on a toll-free number gave them advice on the right type and quantity of fertilizer to use on their crops, as well as the right timing of their fertilizer programs. The information given to the farmers helped to maximize production and profits and also reduce waste.

A similar mobile phone application launched in Indonesia helped more than 300 rice farmers across nine provinces in the country. Farmers in all the provinces increased their rice yields and earnings by making the recommended changes to their fertilizer regimen. An added benefit of the program is information retrieval from the fields, especially about the occurrence of pests and diseases. This helps to provide early intervention when needed.

India has launched a comprehensive agro-advisory service for smallholders using mobile device technology. Small scale dairy, poultry and goat farming have been especially targeted at the initial implementation of the programme. These initiatives promote the use of mobile telephone to help farmers maximize their resources. Mobile phones are used to share all kinds of information relevant to the farmer.

Kerala is a small state in the south-east corner of India. It has seen an amazing impact in the use of mobile phones among fishermen. Kerala has successfully eliminated 100% waste of throwaway fish at the port markets. US farmers are well ahead of other farmers around the world in the use of mobile phone technology in their farming enterprises. Computer technology provides them with accurate data on the weather, irrigation scheduling, market prices and many other management tools.

With the advent of mobile phones, farmers do not anymore look to signs in nature to plan their farming activities. There were many quirky and strange parameters that farmers used to understand the weather. Some looked to the direction of wind. Others observed the striations in clouds. The most comical was killing a goat and studying patterns on its intestines. Today, the same farmer will be looking in different directions simply to find out in which direction his mobile phone signal is best. In a futuristic scenario, a farmer inspecting his fields may take a photo of an unfamiliar insect and upload it to a relevant authority. The authority may ask him to make a check to see how wide-spread the infestation is. Then he would be asked to send them the GPS coordinates of the area infested. He would then be connected to a trustworthy pest control company that can handle the problem. The company would give him a quotation on the cost of the necessary pesticide application on the area. The farmer would confirm the order and make payment using his mobile. As he drives away, the pest control company would send a drone with the necessary quantity of pesticide and spray the area. By this time, the farmer himself would be in some far away corner of his field attending to other matters.

It is noteworthy that all the technology mentioned in the scenario is already available. It is only that they have not been employed in the way described.

*Answer the following questions using complete sentences*

- 1.From paragraph 1, in your own words explain the difference between farming and agriculture.
- 2.(a) From paragraph 2, what advice did Eric Owandu get on his mobile phone ?(b) How did the service help Eric ?
- 3.(a) From paragraph 3, when was the mobile phone service for rice farmers started in the Philippines ?(b) What were the two advices that the rice farmers were given ?
- 4.(a) From paragraph 7, what information do US farmers get with computer technology ?(b) Mention two strange methods that farmers used to decide on planting times.
- 5.In your opinion what is the foremost characteristic that benefits farmers in the co-ordinated use of mobile phones ?Characteristic :Reason:
- 6.Based on the passage, write a summary of :• The benefits that farmers can enjoy by being in constant communication with relevant authorities. • How this could change the face of farming.

### **COMPREHENSION**

#### **91**

The Palaeolithic Period started 2.5 to 2 million years ago. This is the earliest period of man's history that is marked by the use of tools made of chipped stone. It ended about 10,000 years ago. Cave paintings from this period consistently show an absence of people attacking people. The hunter-gatherer were generally peace loving. When groups started to grow large enough to cause conflict, man's ancestor is supposed to have migrated out of Africa, 1.8 million years ago. Modern man appeared on the scene only about 200,000 years ago.

Man's progress to civilization continued in the Mesolithic period, Neolithic period, Bronze Age and Iron Age. Each period saw a steady increase in the sophistication of weapons and warfare. It would almost look as if fighting wars is an innate quality of the human being. Man's civilisation truly started when he started to look for peace and peaceful co-existence.

Today, the world has rapidly become much smaller. How is this possible? Just fifty years ago, it took much longer for news to reach the far corners of the world. Today, with the mobile phone and internet technology, it is not just news that reaches us in real time, as they occur, but we also get to see the events live.

The various avenues of social media give the world's citizen direct access to people all over the world. This is a new phenomenon that has gained ground over the last decade. This also means that people get to share their concerns, values and interests. The social media has had a direct impact on the values and beliefs of cultures around the world. Knowledge of conditions and values in each country are freely available to today's generations.

Compared to 5 decades ago, people are more pro-active about their basic rights. They also hold companies and governments accountable to transparency. For example, the days of secretly testing experimental drugs on the unsuspecting peoples of poorer countries is a thing of the past. In fact, today there are activists who demonstrate against the testing of experimental drugs even on lab animals. This is just one example of righteous demonstrations that occur all over the world. People have moved on from human rights to animal rights.

Demonstrations occur in places like the United States when the police force is perceived to use excessive force when apprehending suspects to a crime. Social responses and social unrest are not a matter of a few people shouting slogans. Whole communities, towns and cities can go into shut-down because of such social disturbances.

Disillusionment with the authorities today leads to demonstrations all over the developed world. It is only in the less developed countries, where there isn't as much freedom, that we do not see as many social uprisings. Demonstrations can easily get out of hand due to the instant information retrieval that comes from the use of social media.

When employees' unions announce strikes in the developed countries, their freedom to do so are guaranteed by their legal rights. The unions are not responsible for the losses incurred by the employer. In today's world, these losses can be massive because most successful companies are massive because of mergers and globalisation.

The above mentioned are just a small representation of the how there can be a lack of peace even in the absence of war. We in Malaysia are lucky that we do not have such problems. This is a result of the responsible governments that we have had over the years. The needs and rights of citizens and employees are guaranteed without the need of unions having to go on strike.

The non-confrontational approach that has proven so successful in our history is more valuable than we can imagine. The value of the peace that exists here can truly be appreciated when we imagine a situation where it has disappeared, and people are protesting and agitating all the time. This is true of many countries, where there are strikes and demonstrations nearly every day. The pasar malams and al fresco dining that is very common throughout Malaysia is a true example of how peaceful the country and its people are. Inter-racial and inter-religious tolerance and acceptance are typically Malaysian.

#### **This can surely be emulated elsewhere.**

Gone are the days when governments went to war. Today, terrorist organisations wage insidious war without the limitations of national boundaries. It is up to each citizen to be alert to misguided individuals and to report them to the relevant authorities before our invaluable peace is destroyed.

*Answer the following questions using complete sentences*

- 1.From paragraph 1, what reveals the fact that pre-historic man did not attack each other in the Paleolithic Period ?
- 2.(a) From paragraph 2, what were the intervening periods in man's history between the Paleolithic period and today ?(b) From paragraph 2, why do you think a period in man's history is called the Iron Age ?
- 3.(a) From paragraph 3, how has access to news changed in the last fifty year ?(b) From paragraph 4, give two examples of how today's generations benefit from the availability of social media.
- 4.(a) From paragraph 5, do you think it is alright to test drugs on lab animals ? Give your opinion.(b) It is up to each citizen to be alert to misguided individuals and to report them to the relevant authorities. What do you understand by this statement ?
- 5.*This can surely be emulated elsewhere.* 'What is the characteristic of Malaysia that is worthy of emulation elsewhere ?Characteristic :Reason:
- 6.Based on the passage, write a summary of :• The benefits of peace in Malaysia• The curse of war

#### **COMPREHENSION**

The year was 1943. The SS Dorchester was docked in the New York Harbor and would soon set sail. On board were hundreds of soldiers. **Their destination was classified.** It was during the height of the Second World War, so all that was known was that they would probably meet enemy ships out in the open sea.

The Dorchester was used by the army for military purposes. It was originally **a luxury liner**, meant for rich vacationers who could afford to pay to travel on the ship in luxury. However, because of the war, the Dorchester had a new use. The Germans were sinking ships rapidly. The Allied forces that were fighting the Germans were left with no choice but to make use of the luxury liners for their military purposes.

Apart from the soldiers, there were also four priests on board the Dorchester for that fateful journey. Lieutenants Fox, Goode, Poling and Washington had each joined the Corps of Chaplains. They would help the soldiers by trying to keep up their spirits.

The Dorchester set sail in a convoy. A group of ships moved off together and there were also armed ships from the Navy that would escort them to their destinations. Midway through the voyage, the men became seasick. The sea was not very choppy. The ship was small, and it became hot and stuffy inside. Judging from the direction in which they were sailing, the men soon guessed that they were heading towards Greenland. On the way there, they had to pass Newfoundland. This was definitely a dangerous journey because the waters off Newfoundland were notorious. This area was nicknamed Torpedo Junction because many ships had been torpedoed by the Germans at this spot, so that there were dozens of sunken ships on the seabed. To prepare for the possibility of being hit by an enemy torpedo, drills were held on the Dorchester. This way, everyone would know what to do in case of an emergency. All the soldiers were aware of the danger of their situation. Many were anxious and scared, so they turned to the four priests for comfort.

Efforts were made to try to raise the morale of the men. There were music and card games to entertain them. Some men sang songs. For a while at least, the men began to feel better. Then the news came. A ship accompanying them had detected a submarine close by. In spite of efforts made to get the specific location of the submarine, it remained elusive. The captain of the Dorchester prepared his men. They were ordered to sleep fully dressed, with life jackets nearby, so that they could make a quick escape should anything happen. Many men found it difficult to sleep, given the situation.

Suddenly, it happened; the Dorchester was hit and began to sink. The men rushed out onto the deck in panic. Everyone was moving about madly, unsure of what to do. Amid all the chaos, the four priests appeared. They saw at once what they had to do. Each of them guided the men to their stations, so that they could be evacuated. Seeing that some men had forgotten their life jackets in the panic, the four priests gave them theirs. As the ship sank, the priests stood together, praying. They perished with the ship.

When the Dorchester sunk, it took the lives of more than six hundred men, including the four priests. The latter were real **heroes**.

*Answer the following questions using complete sentences*

- 1.'Their destination was classified.' (paragraph 1) What does the writer mean by this according to the passage ?
- 2.Why was the Dorchester called 'a luxury liner' (paragraph 2 ) ?
- 3.Explain clearly why the Dorchester was turned into a military vessel.
- 4.Describe how the Dorchester set sail.

- 5.What made the men seasick ?
- 6.Why were the waters of Newfoundland notorious ?
- 7.How do you think music, card games and songs helped to raise the morale of the men ?
- 8.What does ‘elusive’ (paragraph 5) mean, according to the passage ?
9. What do you think had ‘hit’ the Dorchester ?
- 10.How did the priests become ‘heroes’ (last paragraph) ?

## ANSWERS

### **Exercise 1 (Answers )**

1. His **principal** reason for learning Japanese was work related.
- 2.When I arrived at the Immigration Office, I was informed about the correct **procedure** when applying for a work permit.
3. If you **lose** your ticket, you will have to replace it yourself.
- 4.The man sitting in the corner was **formerly** the headmaster of my school.
- 5.I cannot **accept** your offer of \$3500. The car is worth much more.
6. After she had done a little **housework**, she went to her room to study.
- 7.Camping is one of the most **economical** ways of having a holiday.
8. He isn’t **eligible** to enter the competition since he isn’t a citizen.
- 9.When he arrived home after the storm, his **clothes** were completely drenched.
- 10.Doctors must be very **discreet** in dealing with their patients.
- 11.He was very **bored** with life on campus.
- 12.If you like you can **take** my car as long as you **bring** it back in one piece.
- 13.Driving at night always has the same **effect** on me. I get a terrible headache and have no **alternative** but to stop and rest.
- 14.Quebec is an interesting town with a **character** all of its own.
- 15.Her parents were **dissatisfied** with her progress at the college so they went to talk to the **principal**.
- 16.She was greatly **affected** by the **sight** of her old hometown.
- 17.The town **council** is trying hard to improve the environment.
18. After five hours’ **continuous** rain, the sun finally shone.
- 19.The opposing factions could not agree on a solution so war appeared **imminent**.
20. The school was **formally** opened by an **eminent** author.
- 21.At the age of twenty-six, he now considers himself **mature** enough to get married and start a family.

### **Exercise 2 (Answers )**

1. He found it very difficult to **adapt** to his new life in Australia.
2. After many years of hard work and dedication his efforts have finally **borne** fruit.
3. The poor man was obviously in pain so I **took** him immediately to hospital.
4. You are **surely** not going to eat all of that cake yourself, are you ?
5. I found the student’s essay virtually **illegible**. His handwriting was terrible.
6. If you do not **insure** your property against damage and theft you might one day **lose** a great deal of money.
7. Every year the government gives **awards** to a number of Commonwealth students.

8. The boss **complimented** her on her efficient and **conscientious** work.
9. If the **weather** is fine we can go to the beach later on.
10. Older people always complain about **moral** standards falling but I find this idea difficult to accept.
11. Can you pass me one of the **cloths** from the cupboard ? I want to wipe the table before I **lay** it.
12. The advice of the school's career **counselor** proved very useful.
13. He kept the audience amused with his **continuous** jokes and witty remarks.
14. It is now two months since we won a game. Our **morale** is very low.
15. It is time we treated those animals in a more **humane** way and stopped these terrible experiments.

**Exercise 3 (Answers )**

1. It seems to me that you have two **alternatives**; you can either apply for a bank loan or re-mortgage your house.
2. They have chosen a beautiful **site** for the location of the new airport.
3. His **conscience** would not allow him to take part in any **illicit** or questionable business deals.
4. The **economic** situation of the world has not improved very much despite political changes.
5. The **historic** signing of the peace treaty was witnessed by millions of TV viewers.
6. Use of official **stationery** for personal letters is discouraged by the chief clerk.
7. What is your **rationale** for writing such a detailed report ?
8. He seemed utterly **uninterested** in what was going on around him and sat listening to his stereo and reading the papers.
9. The film was so heavily **censored** that we could hardly follow the story-line.
10. They **hung** a picture of the King near the main entrance.
11. The young teacher soon realized that she had to **adopt** the techniques of teaching as her students were very weak in English.
12. The escaped prisoner was finally discovered hiding in a **disused** tin-mine.
13. After a long, hard day at work, I usually go home and **lie** down for an hour or so before I do some household chores.
14. Now that your application has been approved you can **proceed** with your plans.
15. He got **quite** a good reference from his old supervisor and got the new job in Texas.

**Exercise 5 (Answers )**

11A 12A 13A 14B 15D 16A 17C 18A 19B 20A

**Exercise 6 (Answers )**

**1A 2D 3A 4B 5D 6D 7B 8C 9B 10A**  
**11C 12D 13D 14B 15B 16A 17C 18B 19A 20D**

**Exercise 7 (Answers )**

**1B 2D 3A 4C 5A 6A 7C 8A 9D 10A**  
**11C 12A 13C 14B 15C 16B 17C 18C 19C 20A 21B 22C 23B 24C 25A**

**Exercise 8 (Answers )**

**1C 2B 3C 4B 5A 6B 7B 8C 9C 10B**  
**11A 12B 13C 14B 15B 16A 17A 18C 19C 20C**

**Exercise 9 (Answers )**

- 1.The war hero was awarded the medal **posthumously**.
2. It would be considered **irreverent** for a person to joke and laugh loudly in a place of worship.
- 3.The country's oil reserves are **depleted** at an alarming rate due to official corruption and incompetence.
- 4.The police finally had a breakthrough after six months of **painstaking** investigations.
- 5.The minister's remarks about female fickleness **incurred** the wrath of the feminists.
- 6.It is an indisputable fact that smoking is **detrimental** to our health.
- 7.Your plan, though brilliant, is not **feasible** in the present economic downturn.
8. It is certainly **inadvisable** to borrow from loan sharks even when you are in dire straits.
- 9.It is a well-known fact that the Japanese have a **predilection** for hard work and perfection.
- 10.The local official appeared **diffident** in the presence of foreign journalists.
- 11.Grandma's sewing machine may be old, but it is still **functional**.
- 12.Both men pointed their guns at each other and fired **simultaneously**.
- 13.After the second World War, Japan adopted a constitution that was **pacifist/pacifistic**.
14. In an attempt to **perpetuate** his rule, the tyrant abolished all elections.
15. John's crass comments **exacerbated** the already tense situation.
- 16.John plays the piano with **dexterity**.
- 17.Can you **substantiate** your claim in a court of law ?
- 18.There was a lack of **consensus** among the major powers on the issue of nuclear non-proliferation.
- 19.Official corruption had been **rampant** in the country for decades before the revolution.
- 20.His colleagues find him **obnoxious**.

**Exercise 10 (Answers )**

**1A 2A 3B 4C 5A 6B 7A 8C 9C 10A  
11C 12A 13A 14B 15C 16A 17B 18C 19C 20A**

**Exercise 11 (Answers )**

**1A 2B 3C 4B 5A 6A 7C 8B 9B 10A  
11D 12C 13A 14B 15A 16B 17D 18C**

**Exercise 12 (Answers )**

**1C 2A 3B 4A 5D 6A 7A 8A  
9B 10A 11A 12C 13B 14A 15D 16B**

**Exercise 13 (Answers )**

**1A 2C 3D 4B 5A 6A 7C 8A  
9D 10B 11B 12C 13B 14C 15A 16A  
17A 18B 19D 20A 21A 22B 23A 24A**

**Exercise 14 (Answers )**

**1B 2C 3B 4B 5C 6D 7A 8A  
9A 10A 11D 12C 13C 14A 15A 16D  
17D 18D 19B 20C 21B 22B 23C 24A**

**Exercise 15 (Answers )**

1B 2A 3B 4B 5C 6C 7C 8D  
 9A 10B 11C 12B 13C 14D 15C 16D  
 17D 18A 19A 20D 21D 22A 23A 24D

**Exercise 16 (Answers )**

1D 2A 3A 4D 5D 6A 7A 8D  
 9A 10C 11A 12B 13A 14B 15C 16A  
 17A 18C 19B 20A 21B 22A 23D 24C

**Exercise 17(Answers )**

1C 2C 3A 4D 5B 6A 7A 8A  
 9A 10B 11A 12A 13A 14C 15D 16A  
 17B 18D 19B 20B 21C 22C 23D 24A

**Exercise 18 (Answers )**

1C 2B 3D 4B 5D 6A 7C 8A  
 9D 10B 11A 12A 13A 14C 15C 16D  
 17D 18C 19B 20B 21D 22D 23D 24A

**Exercise 19 (Answers )**

1B 2C 3A 4C 5A 6B 7D 8A  
 9A 10D 11A 12B 13 A 14 A 15A 16 B  
 17A 18D 19D 20A 21A 22C 23B 24D

**Exercise 20 (Answers )**

1A 2A 3A 4D 5D 6A 7A 8C  
 9D 10C 11A 12B 13A 14D 15D 16D  
 17C 18D 19B 20D 21B 22B 23B 24A

**Exercise 21 (Answers )**

1B 2C 3A 4D 5B 6A 7B 8D  
 9A 10B 11A 12A 13B 14A 15D 16C  
 17B 18B 19A 20A 21D 22C 23A 24D

**Exercise 22 (Answers )**

1A 2A 3D 4C 5B 6C 7A 8A  
 9B 10A 11A 12A 13B 14B 15B 16B  
 17B 18A 19A 20A 21B 22B 23B 24B

**Exercise 23 (Answers )**

1A 2D 3A 4D 5B 6B 7D 8A  
 9B 10C 11D 12A 13C 14A 15C 16C

**17D 18D 19D 20D 21A 22A 23C 24D**

**Exercise 24 (Answers )**

**1D 2B 3D 4C 5D 6B 7A 8A  
9B 10C 11C 12A 13D 14B 15A 16D  
17B 18A 19C 20B 21D 22D 23C 24D**

**Exercise 25 (Answers )**

**1A 2A 3A 4A 5C 6A 7A 8A  
9D 10A 11D 12C 13D 14A 15A 16B  
17C 18B 19D 20A 21 22B 23D 24B**

**Exercise 26 (Answers )**

**1A 2D 3A 4C 5A 6B 7A 8C  
9D 10B 11A 12A 13A 14B 15D 16A  
17A 18D 19A 20C 21B 22A 23A 24B**

**Exercise 27 (Answers )**

**1B 2C 3D 4C 5B 6A 7D 8C  
9D 10B 11A 12B 13B 14B 15B 16D  
17D 18C 19A 20A 21A 22D 23D 24B**

*NOTE: TRY OUT Exercise 28 & 29 with your tutor or teacher and see the difference! Thank you.*

**Exercise 30 (Answers)**

1. lacking in interest : **apathetic, indifferent, lackadaisical, insouciant**
2. never dying : **immortal, eternal, imperishable, undying, everlasting**
3. to fill with air, gas, etc : **inflate**
4. that can be seen : **visible, discernible**
5. that can be read : **legible, readable**
6. against the law : **illegal, unlawful, illicit**
7. the chief facts of a passage : **gist, summary**
8. to relinquish one's position or employment : **resign**
9. one of a very few : **rare, uncommon**
10. to put off to a later date : **postpone, defer**
11. that cannot be heard : **inaudible**
12. that cannot be divided : **indivisible**
13. that cannot be separated : **inseparable**

**EXERCISE 31 Answers**

1. Like a snake : **serpentine**
2. Like a wolf : **lupine**
3. Like a tiger : **tigrine**
4. Like a sheep : **ovine**
5. Like a pig : **porcine**
6. Like a lion : **leonine**

7. Like a horse : **equine**
8. Like a fox : **vulpine**
9. Like a fish : **piscine**
10. Like an eagle : **aquiline**
11. Like an elephant : **elephantine**
12. Like a dog : **canine**
13. Like a crow : **corvine**
14. Like a cow or ox : **bovine**
15. Like a cat : **feline**
16. Like an ass : **asinine**
17. Like a bear : **ursine**
18. Like a wild beast : **ferine**

**EXERCISE 32 Answers****Answers**

1. The science and art of cultivating the soil. **Agriculture**
2. The science of the structure of animal bodies. **Anatomy**
3. The science of the structure of plants. **Botany**
4. The science of the normal functions of living things, especially animals. **Physiology**
5. The science of diseases. **Pathology**
6. The science of the origin and the history of words. **Etymology**
7. The science of the earth's crust. **Geology**
8. The study of insects. **Entomology**
9. The science of the sun, moon, stars and planets. **Astronomy**
10. The science of life and living things. **Biology**
11. The science of the production and the distribution of wealth ( goods ) **Economics**
12. The art of compiling a dictionary. **Lexicography**
13. The science and study of the human mind and its processes. **Psychology**
14. The study of antiquities, especially pre-historic remains. **Archaeology**

**EXERCISE 33 Answers**

1. Egg-laying animals are : **ovipara**
2. Flower-bearing plants are : **floriferous**
3. Triplets are : **three children born at one birth**
4. Quadruplets are : **four children born at one birth**
5. Uxorial means : **of or befitting a wife**
6. Filial means : **of a son or daughter**
7. Manual means : **of or done with the hand**
8. Kleptomania means : **a morbid compulsion to steal**
9. A bibliophile is a : **lover of books**
10. The fear of animals is called : **zoophobia**

**COMPREHENSION 1****Answers to Comprehension 1**

- 1.(a) He was referring to a scratch or dent on a car.(b) One can have the scratch or dent repaired.
- 2.(a) It means making your car look as good as new again.(b) It is used to smoothen parts of dents that have been welded or knocked back into place to prepare for paint adhesion later.
- 3.(a) Dust(b) They are got rid of by using solvents.
- 4.(a) It refers to a phenomenon in which the paint of a car may look different under different light conditions.(b) It can be overcome by having special light boxes which are lit using different lighting to perfectly match the color and tint of the vehicle to be painted.
- 5.(a) He just follows the strict procedures to get the result required.(b) It must pass the final QC.

## **COMPREHENSION 2**

### **Answers**

- 1.(a) In the 13 to 19 age range.(b) Physical and emotional changes.
- 2.(a) A teenager is subjected to physical growth, hormonal changes and even dilemmas.(b) The teenager undergoes puppy love.
- 3.(i) Camping(ii) Picnic.(iii) Kayaking.(iv) Swimming.
- 4.(i) Dressing.(ii) Hairstyle.(iii) Physical image.
- 5.Parents are worried about their teenagers because of the influence from the mass media such as violent movies, obscene show and pornography that may have a diverse effect over the youngsters.

## **COMPREHENSION 3**

### **Answers**

- 1(a) A leader is someone who is talented in commanding influence to a group of followers.(b) An influence process.
- 2.(a) The leader must influence his followers so that they are motivated to do something, believe in something or act in a certain way and things are accomplished.(b) It is the pattern of behaviors used to influence others.
- 3.A good leader must have the vision so that many things can be done.
- 4.(i) To be able to focus is to ensure that work is done effectively.(ii) To be able to focus is to ensure that time is not wasted.(iii) To be able to focus is to overcome all distractions.
- 5.A leader must have a ‘holding court’ so as to be able to get his followers to listen to him and that effective measures can be carried out while work is done.

## **COMPREHENSION 4**

### **Answers**

- 1.(i) Sales personnel.(ii) Insurance agents(iii) Direct selling agents
- 2.(a) To achieve total excellence in relaying a message or a conversation.
- (b) To ensure the intended message is being relayed.
- 3.(a) A good voice.(b) ‘a smile speaks a thousand words’
- 4.(a) It distracts the attention of the listeners, causing them to leave the room.
- (b) To gain respect and attention.
- 5.Knowing the audience earlier is important so as to know of their needs, purposes and demands of coming to listen to the talk so that the speaker can be well prepared and be forewarned of the expectations and the types of audience in the room.

**COMPREHENSION 5****Answers**

- 1.This is because she is always at the aircraft door with a warm smile, welcoming and guiding passengers on board to their seats.
- 2.(a) trivial(b) performing
- 3.(a) They take the responsibility and determine the most appropriate step to deal with the situation.(b) They must put on a warm smile, welcome and guide the passengers on board to their seats.
- 4.(a) Various domestic and international airlines have increased their services.(b) India.
- 5.They can train through the military and then, fly commercially.

**COMPREHENSION 6****Answers**

- 1.(a) The effects can be mild to very serious, even causing death for the drugs impair the ability of the liver to perform properly.(b) Cirrhosis is the scarring of the liver due to the formation of fibrous tissue causing the destruction of the liver.
- 2.(i) Helps in digestion of food.(ii) Helps in metabolizing drugs and making proteins.
- 3.(a) Consuming excessive alcohol.(b) In a country with a greater number of alcohol drinkers.
- 4.(i) Lack of energy.(ii) Loss of appetite.
- 5.Since it cannot be cured, the only and the best approach now is to reduce the complications of the disease.

**COMPREHENSION 7****Answers**

- 1.(a) It has become a huge industry that goes beyond informing to persuading and influencing consumers' minds.
- (b) To make people aware of the goods available in the market.
- 2.(i) Excess consumption in most of us.  
(ii) A craving for harmful products that we are better off without.
- 3.(a) acquisition(b) lavish
- 4.It means that we are so much influenced by the advertisements of the products that we keep on buying them in excess, thus losing control of our actions.
- 5.They through their advertisements influence us as to what to buy, when to buy, how much and the reasons to buy.

**COMPREHENSION 8****Answers**

- 1.(i) Household waste.(ii) Industrial waste.
- 2.(i) Oil spills.(ii) Dumping of factory waste.
- 3.They travel farthest when they are in solution in a river that is fast flowing.
- 4.(a) separated(b) dangerous
- 5.This is because there is no end to discharging if so much waste is discharged. The situation is more difficult to manage. But if there is less waste, the situation is easier to manage and there is less to dispose.

## **COMPREHENSION 9**

### **Answers**

- 1.(a) Due to liberalization where women have the rights to vote and say.(b) Trying to be more successful than other people or trying very hard to be better than others.
- 2.(a) It refers to how a country is being administered by a group of people elected by its nation. (b) Women are able to shoulder more responsibilities and heavy matters concerning the world issues.
- 3.(i) Making handicrafts.(ii) Making cookies
- 4.(i) The influence of the mass media.(ii) The influence of Western values.
- 5.Education enables women to become knowledgeable. With the knowledge gained, women are ready to face the challenges in life and become good role models towards the future generation.

## **COMPREHENSION 10**

### **Answers**

- 1.It is accorded this title because of its strength, majesty and fierceness.
- 2.It is commonly thought of as an African animal because it is most commonly found in Africa today.
- 3.The lion's heavy mane of hair and its larger size makes it look more majestic than the lioness.
- 4.Animals n the cat family have soft-padded feet.
- 5.It may be useful in muffling noises as the lion stalks its prey.
- 6.It is so strong it can drag an animal as large as a horse.
- 7.Yes, I agree. An old lion that is too slow to catch wild creatures may attack human beings who are much slower.
- 8.They believe lions were once forest animals and had spots to camouflage themselves.
- 9.Man and his activities has caused the lion to become extinct in Europe and the East.
- 10.Man has set up game parks and reserves to protect the lion.

## **COMPREHENSION 11**

### **Answers**

- 1.There was an urgent and intensified search because they escaped with some bombs.
- 2.The Ricop commander divided the searchers into smaller groups to form more patrols.
- 3.They chose to be found as part of their plan.
- 4.They were supposed to destroy the aliens.
- 5.The aliens were so cunning they managed to plan and destroy the Ricops.
- 6.The giant boulder was chosen for the narrow path that led to it and for the icy pool that was near it.
- 7.The patrol leader called for help.
- 8.Zip hoped to delay the second Ricop in its bid to help the patrol leader.
- 9.Parot pushed the patrol leader into the icy pool.
- 10.Ricops are robots.

## **COMPREHENSION 12**

### **Answers**

- 1.Early man thought a thunderstorm was the anger of gods.
- 2.Thunderclouds end out a flash of lightning when they was sufficiently charged.
- 3.They are the highest point in the neighborhood and under a tall tree standing by itself.

4. This is actually heat lightning which is only the reflection in the clouds of flashes far away.
5. Thunder is caused by the sudden expansion of air that results from the large rise in temperature after a lightning.
6. One can install a lightning conductor.
7. He invented the lightning conductor, a device that protects houses from lightning.
8. It directs a stream of neutralizing charges at thunderclouds.
9. We hear that because lightning flashes cause interference to radio waves.
10. Lightning helps to make nitrates which are a valuable natural fertilizer.

## COMPREHENSION 13

### Answers

1. It seemed natural because her parents were excellent police dogs.
2. She looked healthy and strong, had sturdy legs and a proud, firm head.
3. It established that Mitzi will never become a police dog.
4. Mitzi's handler was Chips' neighbor.
5. Chips thinks that Mitzi's handler did not understand her.
6. He did it so that he would not be dragged along by her.
7. Mitzi usually returns in a dirty and smelly state.
8. She had probably been shopping before that.
9. Mitzi likes to chase them.
10. I think she did that because she was angry.

## COMPREHENSION 14

### Answers

1. Vitamins are metabolic catalysts and they regulate the biochemical reactions within our bodies.
2. The best way of meeting our nutritional needs is to eat regularly and adequately.
3. He can go on like that for up to six weeks.
4. Vitamin K is fat-soluble while Vitamin C is water-soluble.
5. It was originally developed as guidelines for the nutritional needs of American soldiers.
6. It is necessary to revise the RDA because it is inaccurate due to its large margin of safety.
7. Those with a limited food intake may need a multi-vitamin supplement.
8. This is so because vitamins do not provide other components of food that the body requires.
9. They claim that vitamins increase strength, prevent injuries or illness and provide energy or build muscle.
10. Vitamin B-complex is water-soluble and any excess can be excreted in urine.

## COMPREHENSION 15

### Answers

1. A dog teaches children responsibility and care for other creatures.
2. It suggests that they first decide if they should keep a dog.
3. They should consider the happiness of their dog as more important than their own.
4. They have failed to create suitable surroundings in which the dog can be happy.
5. He must consider if he has enough time to give the dog the attention it needs.
6. It is spent cooking for it, cleaning it and taking it out for walks.

- 7.if that happens, friction between family members may arise.
- 8.The mistress of the house usually ends up doing that.
- 9.They can keep them with friends or with boarding kennels.
- 10.They spend money on pet food, dog licenses, vet's bills and boarding expenses.

## **COMPREHENSION 16**

### **Answers**

- 1.It has been difficult to do so because it is naturally protected by a rocky coast.
- 2.England is an island and this made it necessary for its people to be good sailors.
- 3.Its naval strength made it possible to build that empire.
- 4.England traded with the empire countries and became rich.
- 5.The American colonies began this trend.
- 6.Former empire countries are eligible for membership to the Commonwealth of Nations.
- 7.It isn't that anymore because most of the empire countries have become free and independent.
- 8.It built the world's first large-scale nuclear power station.
- 9.They are considered reserved because they do not tell much about themselves.
- 10.The author tells us that the English people walk even in the rain.

## **COMPREHENSION 17**

### **Answers**

- 1.Yes, I do. He refused to share his fire with those who didn't have any.
- 2.The fox knew the location of the hollow stone which was where the fire was kept.
- 3.They need not sleep and they could run faster than any Indian or any animal.
- 4.He was trying to convince the Indian boy to let him out of the pit.
- 5.The frog was left out because he could not run at all.
- 6.The wolf was the fifth runner.
- 7.The rabbit failed to reach the waiting Indians.
- 8.The frog then had a tail which today's frogs haven't.
- 9.The frog did it by swimming across a pond which was something the women couldn't do well.
10. I think it teaches us not to under-estimate the abilities of others.

## **COMPREHENSION 18**

### **Answers**

- 1.The bridegroom had not been chosen yet.
- 2.He invited many guests to witness the contest.
- 3.It came from the music of the drums, bugles, pipes and trumpets.
- 4.They all rushed in together to try to be the first to complete the task.
- 5.He thought it had failed because nobody succeeded in yoking the wild bulls.
- 6.They tried to make the king choose one of them to marry his daughter.
- 7.He did it slowly, and he tackled them one by one.
- 8.Everyone was very happy for Krishna.
- 9.I think the king's happiness matched that of Krishna's.
- 10.Yes, I think it is. It makes sure that her husband is a brave and strong man who will be able to lead the country.

**COMPREHENSION 19****Answers**

- 1.Bertha was full of happiness that afternoon.
- 2.She thought it was not proper for someone her age to do something like that.
- 3.She thought it would be all right if they were drunk.
- 4.She forgot her door keys.
- 5.I think Mary is the maid.
- 6.She asked because she wanted to arrange the fruit.
- 7.She did that because the clasp on her coat was too tight making it uncomfortable.
- 8.She bought it to match the color of her carpet.
- 9.The happy mood she was in helped her think the fruit arrangement was incredibly beautiful.
- 10.I think she was going there to see Sharon.

**COMPREHENSION 20****Answers**

- 1.He believed everything that his brother told him.
- 2.It refers to Tim.
- 3.It refers to the funny feeling in Tim's mouth.
- 4.He laughed at the comical sight of Tim who no longer had his front tooth.
- 5.He wanted to find his tooth so that he could put it under his pillow and be rewarded by the tooth fairy.
- 6.Tim was upset because Ronnie had said that the tooth fairy was not going to reward him since he could not find his tooth.
- 7.The word is 'admonished'.
- 8.The phrase is 'felt bad'.
- 9.He made up another story for Tim, saying that even though he did not have a tooth to place under his pillow, he simply had to write a letter to the tooth fairy to explain the situation and apologize to her.
- 10.He was glad that what his brother had told him to do worked since he found a coin under his pillow.

**COMPREHENSION 21****Answers**

- 1.She whistled a tune and she skipped to the shopping center.
- 2.The phrase is 'cheered in agreement'.
- 3.The word is 'unanimous'.
- 4.Michelle was actually full from her lunch so she probably would not be able to finish the popcorn by herself.
- 5.It refers to the funny scenes in the movie Michelle and her friends had watched.
- 6.She poured out the contents of her bag onto the ground in an attempt to find her keys but to no avail.
- 7.She wanted to go over to her neighbor's house to wait for her parents' return but her neighbors were not at home as well.
- 8.It refers to Michelle being locked out of her house as she had forgotten to bring her keys.

9. She could spend the time reading while waiting for her mother to return home.  
 10. She attached the keys to a lanyard which Michelle could wear around her neck.

## COMPREHENSION 22

### Answers

1. The phrase is ‘due to deliver the baby in a month’s time’.
2. Shelly’s parents were celebrating their twentieth wedding anniversary.
3. The word is ‘unexpected’.
4. Shelly and her parents had to leave the restaurant immediately and could not stay to complete their meal as they had to rush to the hospital.
5. She felt thrilled and eager to see her new baby cousin.
6. It refers to Shelly’s uncle smiling widely.
7. They went up to him to congratulate him on the birth of his daughter.
8. She was feeling exhausted but was in good health.
9. Her new baby cousin was very small.
10. They had just seen their niece who had just been born.

## COMPREHENSION 23

### Answers

1. The word is ‘normally’.
2. She was in a good mood.
3. The phrase is ‘her mind drew a blank’.
4. It refers to Donna staring at the lady.
5. The lady had noticed Donna staring at her.
6. She called out to the lady in a loud voice.
7. The lady looked at Donna questioningly and adjusted her glasses to have a closer look at her.
8. It refers to the two of them encountering each other after such a long time.
9. They wanted to catch up on their time in school.
10. She was supposed to go to the public library but instead she went to a nearby coffee shop to chat with Mrs Lee.

## COMPREHENSION 24

### Answers

1. He was being influenced by bad company.
2. They called to inform them about his change in behavior and his falling grades.
3. He was disobedient and did not show respect to his parents.
4. The phrase is ‘at a loss’.
5. He spent time loitering with his friends at the shopping center.
6. The word is ‘undesirable’.
7. It refers to Suarez stealing the comic book from the store.
8. It refers to Suarez smoking in the cubicle of the toilet.
9. He had already been caught for smoking in the public toilet when it was discovered that he had stolen a comic book.

10. Suarez realized that his actions had serious repercussions and promised to change for the better.

## COMPREHENSION 25

### Answers

1. He did not know what six-year-old children liked and he did not have much money too.
2. The school holidays were approaching soon and he wanted to borrow some books to occupy his free time.
3. The phrase is ‘chanced upon’.
4. It caught his attention and he was curious about its content.
5. Blair’s idea of sculpting involved using a chisel to mould a giant piece of rock into a statue.
6. It refers to balloon sculpting at his cousin’s birthday party.
7. The word is ‘excited’.
8. She took him out to buy some balloons to practice and offered to pay for them.
9. He was not disheartened but persevered.
10. The children at the birthday party loved his work and his cousin liked his idea.

## COMPREHENSION 26

### Answers

1. It refers to Eddie’s father being promoted to become regional manager of Asia.
2. The phrase is ‘the only drawback’.
3. He tried to convince his boss to let him continue working in Thailand.
4. He discussed the news about his promotion with his wife.
5. They were concerned as Eddie would have to change school as well as make new friends.
6. It refers to Eddie and his family relocating to Hong Kong due to his father’s work commitments.
7. The word is ‘cushion’.
8. He was initially alarmed but understood that relocating was for the good of his father’s career.
9. She had to source for a house in Hong Kong, a school for Eddie, as well as to arrange for workers to move their furniture.
10. He could decide which school he wanted to study in.

## COMPREHENSION 27

### Answers

1. It refers to the standard airline regulations that all luggage had to be checked in two hours before a flight was scheduled to depart.
2. Deborah’s parents were worried that they might get caught in peak-hour traffic along the way and decided to leave the house early.
3. The word is ‘professional’.
4. She had to travel all over the United States to perform.
5. They met through mutual acquaintances at one of her performances.
6. They were going to New York to attend the wedding of Deborah’s sister.
7. Deborah and her parents had to go for the final fittings for their dresses and suits and they also had to attend the wedding rehearsal.
8. The phrase is ‘nervous wreck’.
9. She was worried that she might forget something or that something might go wrong.

10. She was feeling very happy that her daughter was getting married.

## COMPREHENSION 28

### Answers

1. The word is ‘exorbitant’.
2. He kept them in a special locked cabinet and would take them out once in a while to dust and clean them.
3. The phrase is ‘would not have access’.
4. He had a bad stomach ache and had to rush to the toilet.
5. He was supposed to call Leon down for his lunch.
6. It refers to the opportunity that Ned had to actually hold one of Leon’s model airplanes.
7. He realized that his brother was returning to his room.
8. He had damaged his brother’s airplane and did not want his brother to discover that he was the culprit.
9. It refers to Ned damaging his brother’s model airplane.
10. He was initially very angry but forgave him when he saw how remorseful his brother was.

## COMPREHENSION 29

### Answers

1. The abandoned mine on Pilot Knob Mountain is referred to as ‘Devil’s Icebox’.
2. The word is ‘forbidding-looking’.
3. He means that Dwayne was not as lucky as Eric, who had escaped with slight injuries, as he was pinned by a boulder.
4. He was feeling numbness in his lower body.
5. He knew he could not help Dwayne himself and needed to get help from others quickly as Dwayne was in grave danger.
6. There was very little bleeding. His pulse rate and skin color were also more or less normal.
7. Firstly, any pressure around the boulder could cause it to fall on the rescuers and secondly, the rescuers could be buried under if the mine collapsed.
8. Parts of the boulder were resting on rubble and the boulder was also resting precariously on the ledge.
9. The boulder was lifted slightly which gave the rescuers hope but when it suddenly teetered dangerously on the ledge, the rescuers became terrified.
10. They were not very optimistic. / They were not hopeful. / They did not think it was going to be successful.

## COMPREHENSION 30

### Answers

1. It means something was no right, as if something bad might have happened.
2. Her return was delayed by a series of meetings with clients.
3. The pilot had detected problems on the plane and had to return to the airport.
4. The phrase ‘watery graves’ tells us that the plane had crashed into the sea.
5. A considerable amount of the plane’s wreckage, some body parts and two black boxes were found.
6. The word is ‘retrieved’.

- 7.They flew the families to and from Singapore and Palembang during the search and rescue operation.
- 8.There was no survivor in the crash.
- 9.The phrase is ‘national grieving’.
- 10.A religious leader conducts a last rite for the dead to rest in peace.

### **COMPREHENSION 31**

#### **Answers**

- 1.he probably felt guilty for lying to his mother./ He did not want his mother to look at his face in case she figured out he was lying.
- 2.He thought she would not believe him or she would think he was just imagining them.
- 3.he was having nightmares every night and walking about in a daze during the day.
- 4.It means no one knows who wrote the book as he has not revealed his name.
- 5.It was the strange feeling he had of something invisible following him all the time.
- 6.Old Man Li was a witch doctor who would have encountered strange experiences.
- 7.He sprinkled some magical dust on the writer’s book.
- 8.he believed that the magical dust would get rid of the evil spirit that lived in the pages of the book.
- 9.He was successful because the writer’s nightmares stopped and he did not feel like h was being followed any more.
- 10.He meant that he would never be able to forget the frightening experience with the book.

### **COMPREHENSION 32**

#### **Answers**

- 1.It takes a few months.
- 2.He may have an interesting story to tell or he wishes to address recent issues that he may feel strongly about.
- 3.Different directors have different ways of presenting the same play.
- 4.If the theater company is large, then the company will probably be able to hire different people for the two jobs.
- 5.The line is ‘Stage managers sit in during rehearsals and take note of the directors’ wants.’
- 6.It helps to create the various moods in the play and convey the story behind it.
- 7.They do not have their own company of actors and actresses.
- 8.They end on the day before the performance.
- 9.They are the playwright, director, designers and crew.
- 10.They do not appear on stage, but are involved in work before and after the play is staged (or before and after the performance).

### **COMPREHENSION 33**

#### **Answers**

- 1.It pulled away from the writer while struggling with the trap.
- 2.It had teats full of milk.
- 3.The writer had followed the paw marks of the pups and they led to the cave.
- 5.It was probably trying to threaten the writer in case he wanted to hurt the pups. / It was angry with the writer as it probably thought he was going to hurt the pups.

6. It urinated around it to tell others not to enter that space.
7. It still did not trust the writer and was worried for the safety of the pups./ The mother wolf felt helpless to save the pups from the writer whom it still did not trust.
8. It wagged its tail when the writer looked at it. / It did not attack or pull away when the writer put his hand on its injured leg. / It went up to the writer and licked his fingers.
9. He used a fork to free the wolf from the trap.
10. It was unnatural for wolves to be in such close contact with humans (or people).

## **COMPREHENSION 34**

### **Answers**

1. Many encyclopaedias and history text books did not mention his name.
2. The emperor was pleased with his invention of the paper, so he promoted and bestowed on him an aristocratic title.
3. Some books were made of bamboo while others were made of silk. / The books were made of bamboo or silk.
4. The Chinese kept the technique of papermaking a secret for a long time.
5. Books made of paper were not as heavy or clumsy as books made of bamboo and were cheaper than those made of silk. / Books made of paper were not as heavy (or clumsy) or expensive as books made from other materials.
6. The Europeans learnt it from the Arabs who had begun manufacturing paper after capturing some Chinese papermakers in 751 AD. / The Arabs learnt how to make paper from the Chinese paper makers they had captured in 751 AD and the Europeans learnt it from the Arabs.
7. They stopped using these when paper became popular in the West (or after Gutenberg invented modern printing).
8. Books were not printed fast enough. / They were not printed in large numbers. / There were mistakes in the printing.
9. Gutenberg's name did not appear on the books he had printed, including the Bible. / Gutenberg's name did not appear on the Bible and the other books he had printed.
10. He was not a good businessman and so he did not make much money from his invention.

## **COMPREHENSION 35**

### **Answers**

1. The skills that were once needed for survival have become skills that are part of sports today. / Sports evolved from essential survival skills man had used in the past.
2. It refers to the animals that have been hunted and killed by man for food to feed his family.
3. He must have an indomitable spirit of determination and discipline to pursue excellence in any sport.
4. They ha achieved feats in their own sporting events that ordinary men were unable to do. / They had gained glory through the amazing feats in their own sports events.
5. It means to encourage people to take care of their health. / It means to encourage people to be healthy.
6. It refers to the ability to focus and the discipline to complete any exercise.
7. A person is physically healthy when his body is able to fight off infections and illnesses easily.
8. The phrase is 'fight off'.

9. It is trying to promote sports as part of a healthy lifestyle.
10. Healthy people are able to work better. / It helps the country to progress.

## COMPREHENSION 36

### Answers

1. They staked their lives to appease the spirits.
2. They believed divine and powerful spirits lived in them.
3. The Shilluk believed that their leader possessed divine powers of the rain-giver.
4. The tribes believed that they would lead a prosperous life if their kings were strong, bold and wise.
5. He had to be replaced immediately when he refused to follow the guidelines written by the ancestors.
6. If he remained as the leader, the nature god he represented would seek revenge on the tribe.
7. They perform rituals known as sword dancing and Morris dancing.
8. The rituals are conducted to make sure that the seasons — spring, summer, autumn and winter — continue as usual.
9. They wear white pleated shirts, white trousers or skirts with bells at the knee and flowers on their hats.
10. It is referring to the fertility of the land. / It is referring to the fertility of the soil.

## COMPREHENSION 37

### Answers

1. It is about how the Navajos helped America to win the second World War.
2. They are the original people of America.
3. They have a unique language.
4. They wanted to defend their country when they heard that America had joined the war after the Japanese's attack on Pearl Harbor.
5. It was ironical because the Navajos were fighting against the American settlers years ago.
6. It is a language that is passed down from generation to generation verbally, and not through any form of writing.
7. It was a language that could not be understood by the Japanese or anyone else except the Navajos.
8. It means 'doubtful'.
9. They used the Navajo speakers to send out messages against their normal military equipment. They also tried to decode the language but they could not.
10. Since the Navajos looked like the Japanese, the American soldiers might mistake their identity and kill them.

## COMPREHENSION 38

### Answers

1. We know that K2 is a dangerous mountain to climb from the fact that 33 climbers had lost their lives, 13 of them in 1986 alone.
2. 'K' represents the Karakoram Range while '2' represents the second highest mountain in the world.
3. The fact that he could not reach the peak of Mount Everest twice increased his determination to climb K2.
4. Climbing up K2 is as difficult as climbing down the mountain.

- 5.He fell into a deep crack.
- 6.A doctor gave him a painkiller and then pulled his right wrist for the arm to pop back into its socket.
- 7.He heard that the leader of the expedition and a Russian had succeeded in reaching the peak of K2.
- 8.They were almost hit by an avalanche and they had to brave a fierce storm.
- 9.They would find it a problem to get back to the base camp as the footprints they made on the way up were supposed to guide them on their way down. / They were supposed to follow the footprints they made on the way up to return back to base camp without getting lost. / Without the footprints, they would find it difficult to find their way back to base camp.
- 10.He had persevered to reach the peak in spite of all the problems he faced during the climb up. / He did not give up to reach the peak although he went through a lot of physical pain and encountered problems along the way. / He persevered ( did not give up ) although the odds were against him as he made his way up to the peak.

### **COMPREHENSION 39**

#### **Answers**

- 1.They are very short. 2
- .They only move around the forest during certain times of the year in search of food and not the whole year round. / They move around only certain times of the year and not all the time. / A nomadic tribe moves from one place to another all the time, but this tribe only moves during certain times of the year.
- 3.They probably live so deep in the forest that they are far from any modern development (or the city).
- 4.They can surround the animal and shoot it from different directions so that it cannot escape.
- 5.They have played a more important role of capturing the animal like the hunter who first shot it and the one who shot it last that brought it down (finally killed it).
- 6.It probably has ears so sharp (good sense of hearing) that it can hear a hunter approaching and escape quickly.
- 7.They monkey can escape easily since it takes as long as fifteen minutes for the poison from the arrow to take effect.
- 8.It means the Efe enjoy (like) eating honey very much (tremendously/a lot).
- 9.The bees would sting them while they take the honey.
- 10.Although the men would have actually found honey and filled their stomachs with it, they tell their wives they were not successful (or found none).

### **COMPREHENSION 40**

#### **Answers**

- 1.It refers to the call for the first man to be sent to the moon.
- 2.It is flying to the moon and coming home safely.
- 3.It is ‘something not to be taken lightly’.
- 4.It is to check and see if there is any problem with the spacecraft before the actual take-off.
- 5.A short circuit started a fire that spread to the cabin they were in which was filled with oxygen.
- 6.It was a competition between the Americans and the Soviets to see who could outdo each other in space.
- 7.It worked like a nuclear bomb, so it could blow up the whole spacecraft if anything went wrong.
- 8.They would float around in the spacecraft as everything is weightless in space

9.The aim was to ensure that the spacecraft was evenly heated and cooled. / The aim was to ensure that the sunlit side of the spacecraft did not burn up and the dark side did not freeze.

10.It was to show that the Americans had become the first to land on the moon. / It was to show that America had won the race to be the first to land on the moon.

## COMPREHENSION 41

### Answers

1.He was a daring pilot who broke a number of aviation records and he built the largest airplane in the world in 1942. / He also produced movies which became quite successful.

2.He proved himself by beating the record in 1938 for flying around the world in the shortest time.

3.A ‘recluse’ is a person who lives alone away from the rest of the world / a person who lives away from other people / a person who lives in a place where there is hardly any contact with other people.

4.While he was staying at the top floor of his nine-storey penthouse, he made some changes to the buttons on the elevators to show only eight floors.

5.He would repeatedly send it back to the kitchen to be reheated many times while having it.

6.He wanted it with every meal at times.

7.He gave his servants a detailed nine-step process on how to open a can of fruits without contaminating the contents. He also put paper towels on the bed and floor.

8.He was not because his bedrooms were never cleaned. / His bedsheets were not frequently changed.

9.Since he hardly went out and frequently slept all day, he just needed more home wear like his pyjamas and shorts. / He did not need outdoor clothes (or clothes for other functions) as he hardly went out and frequently slept all day.

10.He would have looked very skinny with long hair, long toenails and fingernails. / He would have looked skinny with long and messy hair. His toenails and fingernails would have been long and dirty.

## COMPREHENSION 42

### Answers

1.Houdini had managed to get out of the handcuffs so fast that he could join the Superintendent before he had even left the room.

2.Houdini had managed to free himself very fast from the locks that the locksmiths considered foolproof.

3.He opened the locks made by master mechanics and he escaped from jails in all these cities.

4.They could not accept that a human being can be gifted to do all these feats/stunts easily without some mysterious force.

5.He probably used his strong fingers as pliers to open the locks and his strength to bend the iron bars of the jail cell to escape from it.

6.His body was so flexible that he was able to wriggle out of the straitjacket.

7.It suggests that the airplane was still not safe enough to travel in.

8.The stunt revealed that Houdini was a very fearless/brave/daring/bold man.

9.He emerged out of the water within two minutes.

10.It was not possible for anyone to survive in a coffin under water without oxygen (air) for one and a half hours. / Any human would faint or suffocate if left in a coffin underwater for one and a half hours. / Any human being can easily die without air if he is left in a coffin underwater for one and a half hours.

## COMPREHENSION 43

### Answers

1. It is 'like the back of his hand'.
2. It was a rattlesnake.
3. Robin tore at the snake's head until it released its grip.
4. It means 'vaguely'.
5. A victim should keep calm so that the venom would not rush to the head at a much faster speed.
6. His house was too far away and he had a swollen leg that had become numb.
7. As they live close to the jungle area, rattlesnakes are common and they had bitten their farm animals.
8. He felt that the time taken for the ambulance to arrive and take Robin to the hospital would be too long and Robin might not survive.
9. The venom can prevent the victim's blood from clotting and the victim can bleed to death.
10. Since Robin was able to talk to his parents after few hours of regaining consciousness, the doctors believed he was free from brain damage.

## COMPREHENSION 44

### Answers

1. He does not have to be physically around as there are modern gadgets and technology that can help him with his business.
2. Claustrophobia is an anxiety disorder where a person has an intense and unexplainable fear of enclosed spaces.
3. He will look for emergency exits or stay near doors hoping to quickly escape.
4. One gets affected by claustrophobia through a traumatic childhood experience or from other unpleasant experiences that are related to confined space.
5. They are behavior therapy, exposure therapy, and drugs.
6. A sufferer will be exposed to a trigger situation in the hope that sooner or later he would eventually be immune to it.
7. It means to be exposed continuously.
8. They relax the pounding heart and make the claustrophobics calmer.
9. They must be convinced and believe that they can free themselves.
10. A learnt condition can always be unlearnt.

## COMPREHENSION 45

### Answers

1. He wanted to get sugar apples for his pregnant wife to eat.
2. The Komodo Dragons could have attacked.
3. There had not been any attacks lately.
4. It is 'deft'.
5. It was not very often that he could eat to his heart's content.
6. Yes, he knew as he had heard loud grunts and told himself to keep calm as his fears might just come true, even before he looked down.
7. It was the smell of the fruits that led the Komodo Dragons to his location.

8. He fell right on one of the Komodo Dragon's back and this protected him.
9. The saliva of the Komodo Dragon contains bacteria that can bring about infections.
10. It moves in blinding speed.

**COMPREHENSION 46****Answers**

1. It was probably the leopard's blood that was poured into his wound.
2. It means 'pure'.
3. The whole village respected the healer and was awed by him.
4. He blamed the unnatural forces that overrode his magic.
5. He wanted to escape from being blamed for the man's death.
6. It is 'periodically he would disappear'.
7. They felt that it was a harmless thing to do.
8. He became a western doctor.
9. He was very confident that the writer would fail to help the baby.
10. He was probably too embarrassed to return as the villagers no longer needed him.

**COMPREHENSION 47****Answers**

1. The anaconda's body was well hidden in the water.
2. It saw it and had smelt it.
3. It is 'blinding speed'.
4. This was to prevent the snake from recoiling around Mathew again.
5. It was when he managed to pull off the coil around Mathew's waist.
6. The snake began to tighten around Mathew more firmly.
7. It was probably one of Mathew's cousins who went running home.
8. He was bracing himself for the event that the snake might coil even tighter around Mathew.
9. It is 'The snake had been mortally wounded'.
10. He was carried by his grandfather to the hospital.

**COMPREHENSION 48****Answers**

1. She keeps sampling it.
2. One needs to melt sugar in a heated pan until it bubbles and becomes brown.
3. She is eating the chopped nuts.
4. It is the chopped nuts. She eats all of it.
5. She starts calling up her friends and invites them over for tea.
6. Yes, her friend describes the cake as 'yummy'.
7. She cuts big slices of cakes for her friends and also prepares a huge pot of tea.
8. She is feeling full.
9. She keeps eating when she is baking.
10. She is too full to eat and is envious of her friends who are enjoying the cake.

**COMPREHENSION 49**

**Answers**

- 1.The Titanic was headed for America.
- 2.The Titanic was specially built to prevent the spread of water through the ship by sealing off flooded compartments easily and quickly.
- 3.They were confident that there would be enough time to rescue all the passengers.
- 4.The word is ‘impeded’.
- 5.They had to watch for any signs of danger facing the Titanic.
- 6.Icebergs are huge mountains of ice that can cause terrible damage to any ship that knocks into them.
- 7.It was already very dark as it was close to midnight and without the help of the moonlight, the lookouts were hardly able to see anything outside to warn of any danger quickly.
- 8.The Titanic did not hit the iceberg but glided past it instead.
- 9.It refers to the sea water that had got into the first six compartments of the Titanic.
- 10.Although the Titanic was considered impossible to sink, it actually did sink within just three hours.

**COMPREHENSION 50****Answers**

- 1.These places are dry and plants cannot grow there. / These places are dry and not fertile. / These places are dry and empty with only very few plants.
- 2.In North American deserts, there are plants because of the red-brown soil but in the Sahara Desert, there is only pure white sand and no soil.
- 3.It is surprising that many animals can survive in a place with little water, no plants and covered with only white sand.
- 4.They were not quick enough to adjust to the changes in their environment.
- 5.A sand stink moves through the sand just like how a fish swims in the water, using its legs as fins and hard scales on its skin to protect its body.
- 6.There is a layer of transparent skin over its eyes to protect the eyes.
7. It is the puddles of water from desert rainstorms.
- 8.They are big, so they are strong enough to carry heavy loads. They have large feet like snowshoes that help them move in the desert without sinking.
- 9.It can drink up to one hundred and eighteen liters of water in a day which it then stores in its body for use over several days.
- 10.It has stored fats in its humps that will provide the energy for it to travel for days in the desert without eating.

**COMPREHENSION 51****Answers**

- 1.He saw them as he was dozing off. / He saw them before he dozed off.
- 2.The word is ‘frolicking’.
- 3.He had probably / must have seen the boat, Sniper, smash into his sisters.
- 4.They were Richard, Richard’s wife, some passers-by and a crew member from the Sniper.
- 5.She noticed that Rebecca’s right arm was missing from her elbow down and Kelly’s left foot had been cut off above the ankle.
- 6.Yes, she was. The sentence is ‘Rebecca was white with shock, making short gasps.’
- 7.It refers to looking for the body parts of Rebecca and Kelly.
- 8.They wanted to make sure they covered the whole accident area while searching for the body parts.

9.The surgery was successful for Rebecca as she managed to regain normal use of her arm, but for Kelly, it was not successful as part of her leg had to be amputated and she had to be fitted with an artificial limb.

10.The girls could have died in the accident but they are still alive and are able to enjoy the same active lifestyle like before.

## COMPREHENSION 52

### Answers

1.It is someone who wants to protect and save the environment. Cousteau was called one because he wanted to protect the sea.

2.The heavy/cumbersome/bulky equipment he had to wear and the hose that connected him to a ship made it difficult for him to explore the sea freely.

3.Humans need air to breathe and since divers cannot breathe underwater where they have to spend a long period of time, air must be supplied.

4.The sentence is ‘Through a joint effort with a French engineer, Emile Gagnan, the Aqua-Lung was eventually designed.’

5.The diver is already carrying a cylinder of compressed air with a hose that allows him to breathe in and out.

6.It will cause a diver’s body to be crushed. / It will crush his body.

7.It means ‘at the same time’.

8.Man can now explore parts of the sea that could not be reached before and study those sea creatures that are found in deep waters.

9.It can explore areas that are too deep and dangerous for divers by collecting specimens and taking photographs.

10.Overfishing and pollution had damaged ocean life and the damage is ongoing. / The oceans are still being destroyed by pollution and overfishing.

## COMPREHENSION 53

### Answers

1.He went hunting in the early morning or just after dawn.

2.He wanted to hunt alone as he had not done so for some time.

3.The arrow that Sashe used had a tip that contained a deadly substance that would kill the antelope instantly.

4.It showed that his hunting skills had not been affected despite his recent illness.

5.The killing was a great achievement and Sashe wanted his family to know about it.

6.It means to not show any emotion as if nothing unusual or interesting had happened. / It means to behave uninterestedly.

7.They were impressed that Sashe had managed to kill such a huge animal.

8.He expected it and he knew Gumi had done it out of tradition.

9.The sentence is ‘His forefathers were all fine hunters who had received similar insults.’

10. The tradition made sure the successful hunter did not feel superior to the other hunters and become too proud of himself. / The successful hunter was not supposed to be too proud of what he had done and feel superior to the other hunters. / The hunter was supposed to be modest about his success and not feel superior to others.

Mihan looked towards the fast disappearing speck. Her heart felt heavier every minute. Her younger brother was on his motorcycle and riding at a very high speed away from the house without looking back once. It was the usual scene. A quarrel had broken out a moment ago. Both father and son never saw eye to eye. Mihan wondered how long he would be gone this time. There was a strange look in his eyes that she could not explain for sure.

### **COMPREHENSION 54**

#### **Answers**

1. It was Josa on his motorcycle riding at a high speed away from their home.
2. It means that both of them never agreed with each other.
3. She knew that he took little money with him and there were no relatives staying nearby for him to turn to for help.
4. Firstly, he wanted to be independent. Secondly, he did not want to stay at home and put up with his father's scolding.
5. Her parents closed down their shop as they were too old and weak to run it, so Mihan had to look for a job to provide for herself and her parents.
6. She was diligent / conscientious / courteous / caring / considerate.
7. She was the poorest of all the maidservants and she was always in need of money to provide for her family (to run the household / to support her parents).
8. The word is 'adamant'.
9. He had a birthmark on his right cheek and he walked with a limp.
10. Although she was put in prison for a crime she had not committed, she was reunited with her brother whom she had not seen for many years there.

### **COMPREHENSION 55**

#### **Answers**

1. These people enjoy having control over the animals and their pleasure is increased when the animals cannot defend themselves.
2. People are not reporting all cases of animal abuse.
3. They ill-treated the kitten for fun.
4. It was a group of children who had caught the kitten, so it must have been outnumbered and cornered and unable to defend itself.
5. The words are 'endure' and 'tolerate'.
6. Its aims are to prevent cruelty to animals and to care for unwanted animals which have been abused.
7. It refers to a safe home.
8. They treat it as a place where they can discard their unwanted pets after getting tired of them.
9. These animals make a lot of noise and they loiter at void decks or outside houses.
10. The SPCA feels that educating the public is the best way to prevent animal abuse.

### **COMPREHENSION 56**

#### **Answers**

1. It was night. The bus stop was empty and the tea stall had closed for the day.
2. She went through an opening in the tin door the owner used as a shutter.
3. She could not see inside the shop clearly as the lighting was dim.

4. She was searching for any leftover food that she could eat.
5. Dao was referring to the soft brown buns.
6. She heard men chatting and laughing and they were approaching the shop.
7. The truth was that she had run away from her home (or village).
8. She was afraid because she was not sure if the puppy would start barking which would alert the men outside the shop.
9. She was no longer afraid because the men outside the shop had left.
10. She could not be a teenager or someone older. Since she played with marbles, she could be much younger.

## COMPREHENSION 57

### Answers

1. It means 'disappeared without being ever found'.
2. She wanted to learn to control an airplane by herself since she loved flying.
3. She was the first woman to do so.
4. She did not pilot the plane the first time she crossed the Atlantic Ocean flight and so she wanted to fly alone the second time.
5. The phrase is 'fraught with obstacles'.
6. The bad weather had damaged her navigation instruments that would have showed her the location of the plane.
7. She did so by continuing to make and break records in flying and by flying solo over the Atlantic.
8. She had planned to fly around the widest point of the Earth, the Equator, something that had never been done before.
9. It indicates that it was this part of the journey, from New Guinea to Howland Island, that Amelia disappeared.
10. Amelia was a woman who was very bold and full of determination.

## COMPREHENSION 58

### Answers

1. Baako was not happy about her mother having another child and also there were a lot of people inside and outside her house.
2. He was referring to the birth of Baako's sibling. / He was referring to the baby Baako's mother was about to give birth to.
3. Baako stopped her bicycle a few trees away from Abayomi's shop when she had initially refused to acknowledge his call.
4. She was afraid that her mother would transfer all her love and attention to the baby and leave only a little for her.
5. A midwife is someone (or a nurse) who helps a woman give birth. / She is someone who helps an expectant mother with her delivery.
6. Baako needed something to occupy her time/ something to do/something to keep her busy so that she would not think much about what was bothering her.
7. She did not want to give the impression that she wanted to help Abayomi. / She did not want Abayomi to think that she had given in to his request so easily. / She did not want Abayomi to think she was interested to help him.

8. She was probably thinking that Abayomi was trying to tell her how nice it was to have a sibling.
9. Baako was always cheery and neat in her dressing.
10. Baako had started to doubt that she really hated the baby and that the baby might be a good companion.

## COMPREHENSION 59

### Answers

1. They were once known as mercenary soldiers who fought for any army that paid them.
2. They are soldiers who are always ready to fight.
3. Since the Cossacks fought for their land and protected the people in it, they felt that the land was theirs.
4. They are very patriotic and willing to protect Russia from enemies. / They love Russia very much and are willing to fight to protect Russia.
5. They gather information that the army uses.
6. As there are more roads and vehicles today, horses are hardly used for traveling. thus, there is hardly any need for expert horsemen.
7. It is a tradition for the Cossacks to be strongly devoted to the church, so just like before, they still protect the churches from thieves and vandals.
8. The phrase is ‘take things into their own hands’.
9. They learn to shoot a rifle and march smartly.
10. He may be killed or seriously injured while on dangerous duty and his family would be left without someone to support them.

## COMPREHENSION 60

### Answers

1. It means people were very sad by her death.
2. They are inspired by her.
3. She showed Mother Teresa how to be charitable through her actions by welcoming the poor or sick into their home and going out to help them.
4. She went to church, joined the choir and learnt how to play the mandolin.
5. She was too young to know what she wanted in life then.
6. She had to learn English before going to India.
7. Her kindness and her patience made her well-loved.
8. She felt that to help the poor better, she had to experience their life.
9. Since society had cast these people aside and did not bother to help them, she decided to help them herself.
10. The writer meant that people with Mother Teresa’s qualities cannot be easily found in this world. / People with Mother Teresa’s qualities are rare in this world.

## COMPREHENSION 61

### Answers

1. His breakfast was tea and Indian pancakes with chicken curry.
2. She wanted to tell Lakshana to burry because the boys could already be in the stable.

3. Eating the mud pies had made Laranya put on more weight/had made her become bigger in size.
4. She wanted to drink a cup of hot cocoa instead of water.
5. They were planning on throwing them at the boys.
6. The boys and girls had agreed on not to bring along any weapon that was sharp or dangerous, but Laranya found the scissors, which was dangerous.
7. Laranya believed everyone would be like her and follow rules.
8. She was concentrating too much on checking for footprints that she ignored the tyre marks which were most probably made by the bicycles the boys rode.
9. It is ‘dawned upon’.
10. Ram threw an egg at Lakshana but it missed her head.  
from one house to another.

## COMPREHENSION 62

### Answers

1. The fire would eventually burn itself out. They only try to control the fire from spreading too far.
2. The word is ‘mishap’.
3. They are more common during hot summers when the dry vegetations are more prone to catch fire.
4. They clear land and make room for new plants and trees to grow.
5. Smoke kills people when they are unable to run to safety in time as they cannot see amidst the flames.
6. Houses made of bricks (or a hardy material) would be safer and they should not be built close to one another.
7. They use portable weather stations in the forest to monitor temperature and humidity.
8. They must be taken when the fire becomes out of control and poses a danger to the lives of people living close to the fire.
9. They must be well-equipped with cotton or wool clothing, gloves, goggles and a helmet. They can use water or wet blankets to beat out small flames.
10. Fire can spread very fast (or get out of hand) and cause a lot of damage to properties and lives.

## COMPREHENSION 63

### Answers

1. There was a wide selection and each one was attractively wrapped in a rainbow-colored wrapper.
2. He wanted to buy chocolate mints but he realized that he did not have any money; all he had was a useless bus ticket from yesterday.
3. Krish was the notorious school bully, so vandalism seemed like something a bully would do.
4. The sentence is ‘Renyi turned left at the aisle and moved into the toiletries lane, not wanting to be spotted.’
5. It means that some of the items in the shop were on sale, but the prices listed on the items were still too high for Renyi.
6. It was January.
7. Since the cashier was busy counting and stacking the magazines, he thought she would not notice him.
8. He thought that he had gotten away with stealing the chocolate. / He thought he had successfully stolen the chocolate without anyone noticing him.

9. The sentence is ‘He reveled in the thrill, a new experience.’

10.Krish could have seen him shoplifting and shouted out. It had to be Krish as Renyi and recognized the voice. / Since it was a husky voice, it had to be a male voice and the only other male who was near the store was Krish.

## COMPREHENSION 64

### Answers

1.Fraser was the leader of a weather station on Campbell Island.

2.a) 40 yards offshore

b)(i) He relished the feeling of oneness with nature. (ii) To familiarize himself with the depth of the bay

3.a) A huge shark

b) flung

4.a) His arm was gone.

b) If he swam fast, his heart would pump more blood into the sea.

5.Fraser realized that he had to do something to save his life. He had to fight for his life or he would soon be dead.

## COMPREHENSION 65

### Answers

1. He was candid, friendly and outspoken.

2.a) ‘I really believe in this.’b) He felt that there was a huge untapped market in Asia where millions of people want to fly but could not afford it.

3. a) If one is afraid of failure, one will never start out on anything.b) He pushed on with his work and his dreams.

4. a) It could not compete with the buses which ply from Kuala Lumpur to Penang.

b) He said he is sorry. / He apologized for his mistakes.

5. We must always be realistic in pursuing our dreams. In wanting to achieve our dreams, it does not give us the power to go overboard with our wishes. Then we will fail to realize what we want.

**There has long been an almost mystical connection between people and whales. This is only natural because of all the creatures in the sea, none are closer relatives to us than these warm-blooded mammals.**

## COMPREHENSION 66

### Answers

1.a) It was believed that long ago, whales were four-legged, wolf-sized animals.

b) There was an abundance of fish and shrimp.

2.Superb streamlining and its skin which is loose and lubricated help the whale to swim swiftly.

3.i) When they are in trouble, they do not abandon one another.

ii) They support each other on their backs.

4.i) When a calf is born underwater, the mother brings it to the surface for air.

ii) The mother squirts the milk directly into the baby’s mouth.

5.The belugas refused to leave as they were frightened by the engines. then, the ship used loudspeakers. The whales finally swam through the channel when they heard Beethoven’s music.

**COMPREHENSION 67****Answers**

- 1.a) No. This is because it may not be able to maintain an oral hygiene level that controls the formation of bacterial plaque on teeth.
- b) It is a generic term to describe a sticky film of bacteria that collects on teeth above and below the gingival margin or gumline.
- 2.a) Brushing cleans a quarter of the mouth.
- b) Brushing alone is insufficient to control plaque formation due to insufficient time or lack of the appropriate technique.
- 3.a) This is due to the fluoridation of water supplies.
- b) Dental caries and periodontal disease
4. a) By controlling the accumulation of plaque by adhering to a daily oral hygiene regimen.
- b) regimens
5. It was when research proved that there was a relationship between plaque accumulation and the development of gum disease in the 1960's.

**COMPREHENSION 68****Answers**

- 1.a) At a traffic light at 58th Street, just opposite New York Hospital
- b) He was going to La Guardia Airport.
2. He thought it was possible that the man really loved his job or he was in a good mood that made him give such a reply.
- 3.a) The passenger kept silent.
- b) He was to call Dr. Plums secretary for an interview.
4. a) It gave him confidence and made him feel more important than he really was.
- b) The word is 'prestigious'.
5. They did not believe that anyone who was capable of giving Robbie a summer job could have written his particulars on a scrap of paper.

**COMPREHENSION 69****Answers**

- 1.a) He was supposed to meet his client in a cabin.b) He taught him how to cast.
- 2.a) His client's enthusiastic response made him feel excited again.b) The word is 'engrossed'.
- 3.a) He had been very sick.b) They were celebrating that he was still alive.
4. He was going to meet another client.
5. He learnt not to stereotype people and that he should never judge a book by its cover.

**COMPREHENSION 70****Answers**

1. They are typed messages, not handwritten messages.
- 2.a) They were blue sheets of paper for letters to be sent overseas and that were self-sealing and prepaid.

- b) The two reasons are: (i) most people do not write letters now (ii) they write emails and forward jokes or they leave comments on blogs.
- 3.a) The three aspects are — writing beautifully, cursive writing and following a prescribed way to form and join letters of the alphabet into words.
- b) Individualistic tendencies creep in and one develops one's own unique handwriting style.
- 4.a) with a computer, a person types instead of writing and may become too lazy to write.
- b) It will deteriorate as she hardly writes by hand.
- 5.a) She got to know about the foreign lands her friend stayed in and more importantly, how she was doing.
- b) (i) I would like the greetings to be sent by SMS and email because they can be received within seconds. (ii) I would like the greetings to be sent by letter because they are a more personal way of connecting people.

## **COMPREHENSION 71**

### **Answers**

1. They are afraid that the swine flu virus will change so greatly that it causes a pandemic.
- 2.a) Hippocrates b) Swept across
- 3.a) 1 million. b) Killerc) No, it did not.
- 4.a) Hong Kong. b) The antiviral Tamiflu.
- 5.a) Many people are affected by it.
- b) People all over the region or the world are affected.

## **COMPREHENSION 72**

### **Answers**

- 1.a) He did it for the sake of his fellow men.
  - b) People had to walk for hours on dangerous ground to reach their destination.
  2. She could not be taken to the hospital on time.
  - 3.a) They ridiculed him and called him mad.
  - b) He felt that God was on his side.
  - 4.a) He worked twenty-two years to complete the road.
  - b) Positive c) It represented strong will and determination.
5. Quality: Dasrath was a caring, considerate person.  
 Reason: He built a road so that others can reach their destinations easily.
6. Dasrath decided to build a proper road through this hill as his wife met with an accident on that hill and could not get treatment in time. The tragic loss made him more focused on his task and he worked fearlessly so that the villagers could cross the hill easily. He believed that God was with him. Dasrath taught us that patience is the greatest virtue that leads to success as he took twenty-two years for his project. Besides, he proved that one can make the impossible come true and that it is really one's attitude that decides how one wants to live. He didn't let his personal tragedy or his poverty stop him. He kept positive despite everyone's criticism and was not discouraged even when he was mocked.  
 (130 words)

## **COMPREHENSION 73**

- Answers** 1. They needed to pay their university fees.

- 2.a) He would help to attract the crowd.  
 b) He did so because he wanted to help the boys pay their fees.  
 3.a) Paderewski did not expect anything in return.  
 b) He appealed to the US Food and Relief Administration for help.  
 4.a) Relieved  
 b) He wanted to personally thank the man who helped his countrymen.

c) Paderewski found out that Hoover was the man he had helped in his university days.

5.Quality: Hoover was a hard-working man who did not forget those who helped him.

Reason: He worked hard to make sure he got his education and never forgot that Paderewski helped him pay his fees.

6.The big day of the concert arrived but unfortunately, the two boys had not sold enough tickets. Disappointed, they went to Paderewski and explained their plight. They gave him the entire collection but he returned the money and told them to deduct their expenses and keep the money for their fees. He took only the remainder. The boys thanked him profusely. Paderewski later became the Prime Minister of Poland. However, the country was in ruins. The people were starving and there was no money to feed them. Paderewski did not know what to do. So, he asked the US Food and Relief Administration for help. The head, a man called Herbert Hoover agreed to help and quickly shipped food grains to feed the Polish people. Thus, a disaster was averted. (130 words)

## **COMPREHENSION 74**

### **Answers**

- 1.different2.  
 a) planned.  
 b) (i) He was Michael's best friend.  
 (ii) He knew how to use a barbecue set.  
 3.a) a stray dog  
 b) none the worse  
 4.a) mishap  
 b) They were afraid she would get into trouble by keeping company with Michael and the author.  
 5.She had gone to Singapore and he had gone to sea.  
 6.Although he was outspoken and popular among the guys, he was tongue-tied around girls. So he hung around the buffet envying his friend, Roger. Suddenly the girl came over and introduced herself and soon they were talking all night. That night he sent her home on his motorcycle. Along the way, a stray ran across the road. He crashed his motorcycle and Janet suffered some injuries. They went back to the party venue and the girl's parents took her home. After that, he never saw her again as she was forbidden to see him. He soon finished school and joined a shipping line. He also heard that she had gone to Singapore. One day, years later, he sailed into Singapore and met her. They became friends and soon were married. (130 words)

## **COMPREHENSION 75**

### **Answers**

- 1.There were things lying all over the house.  
 2.a) He didn't care about either/indifferent  
 b) (i) Dysfunctional (ii) No one at home cared where they were.

- 3.a) Daniel wanted to be a pilot while Karin wanted to be a doctor.  
 b) With all the problems, the children felt that their dreams may not come true.  
 4.a) His parents and other people loved him.  
 b) unique

5.I agree with Mr Pattinson as Daniel had to realise that he had a certain duty to himself and his parents and that is to make the best of life and go on with life. If he messes it up, he and his family will suffer.

6.Finally, Daniel feeling tired and miserable about the conditions at home talked to Mr Pattinson. Mr Pattinson told Daniel that his parents loved him. Others loved him too and he was obliged to help himself. He was unique just like Rob and must make a good life so as to help others. Something will come out of mistakes and one learns from mistakes. Troubles make us strong and resilient and we must not be frightened by them. Bad times will pass. Make the best of a bad situation rather than make it worse. Everyone has problems. Don't rely on friends as not all are good. Stay away from bad influences. Be supportive and help his sister to achieve her ambition. Don't use a broken home as an excuse to fail. (130 words)

## **COMPREHENSION 76**

### **Answers**

- 1.The damage was unbelievable./The wreckage was devastating.  
 2.a) George Burns  
 b) (i) It was badly damaged. (ii) He thought that George was killed or seriously injured.  
 3.a) It could be severed/cut.b) unfortunate  
 4.a) They were running out of time/ They had to save George quickly./ George could freeze to death because of the cold weather.b) To raise his body temperature/To prevent hypothermia/To keep him warm  
 5. Brave/strong-willed/Tough/Resilient/Courageous  
 6.After escaping the crash, Anthony raced to the wreckage and found the crushed cab. He found George trapped in the cab of the crane, badly injured and steel fragments pressing on his neck. Still, George remained strong and indomitable. Firemen quickly cut away at the cab and punched a hole using oxyacetylene torches and power saws. However, they couldn't pull him out as his legs were trapped. A his family gave him moral support, rescuers fed him warm saline through a drip to stabilise his body temperature due to freezing temperatures. After two hours, firefighters pulled George Burns out. Doctors treated him for severe hypothermia and had to amputate his left foot. However, George returned to work a a crane driver, with a prosthesis, one year later. (127 words)

## **COMPREHENSION 77**

### **Answers**

- 1.They were not many mountaineers at the chalet because it was the start of the rainy season.  
 2.a) A loud thunder woke him up.  
 b) He realised the chalet had collapsed when his head bashed the ceiling as he tried to sit up.  
 3.a) Instinctively  
 b) (i) a piece of cotton cover (ii) a jacket  
 4.a) They did that because they wanted any survivors trapped to know that rescue workers were there to help them.  
 b) It was Daniel

**5.Characteristic:** Strong-minded. **Reason:** Even though he nearly lost his life in pursuit of his passion, he was still determined and enthusiastic to pursue mountain-climbing and wanted to go on another expedition.

6.Rescue workers and volunteers started by clearing the rubble and looking for survivors. First, they heard sounds of birds and water gurgling. then, they heard a faint call for help. The rescuers worked to save Daniel. An hour later, they heard his voice clearly. Realising Daniel was just beneath them, they cleared more rubble to discover another slab. They dug for three hours until a rescuer's light lit up a crack revealing Daniel's hand emerging. They started digging there despite feeling exhausted. After removing two boulders, they heard a voce. They cut a hole through the slab above Daniel so a paramedic could enter. He carefully place a harness around Daniel's waist and pulled him so his head was just beneath the hole. Then, he was hoisted to the surface. (130 words)

## COMPREHENSION 78

### Answers

- 1.a) Amir was not good enough.
- b) The coach did not want to disappoint Amir.
- 2.Amir felt thrilled when he was selected as a reserve player.
- 3.a) The message conveyed the news that his grandpa died that morning.
- b) They were surprised to see Amir because they did not expect him to be back so soon after his grandpa's death.
- 4.a) Amir was the worst player, hence the coach had no confidence in him.
- b) The word 'thunderous' in paragraph 10 has the same meaning as 'deafening'.
- c) Amir was probably thinking about his grandpa.

**5.Quality:** Supportive. **Reason:** Although he was blind, he made it a point to be at all Amir's games and practices to lend him moral support.

6.After Amir had been chosen as a reserve player, he would watch videos of outstanding football matches to improve his skills. He asked for additional tips from his coach and used them in his regular practices. In college, he remained a substitute but put his heart and soul into every practice and never missed any practice. His dedication inspired everyone. One the day of the important match, he surprised his coach and his teammates when he appeared so soon after his grandpa's death. he pleaded with his coach to let him play. Finally, the coach agreed and Amir surprised everyone as he played. He did everything right and his opponents could not stop him. He took control of the ball, raced past the defenders and scored a triumphant, winning goal. (130 words)

## COMPREHENSION 79

### Answers

- 1.The writer began growing the hummingbirds' favorite plants.
2. a) She thought all the birds would have migrated together.
- b) The writer put some liquid nectar in the feeder for the bird.
- 3.a) The word 'hesitated'.
- b) The writer chose to keep the bird warm in her conservatory during winter.
4. a) The evidence is that Squeak is said to treat bath time as a game and would rather slide around on the wet leaves and get his entire body soaked..

b) *Evidence 1:* He watched and waited for the writer eagerly by the door handle for his treat. *Evidence 2:* He allowed the writer to stroke him.

*5.Reason 1:* The writer was sad to release Squeak because she has developed affections for him and a bond with him. *Reason 2:* She personal loves hummingbirds a lot and this experience was a thrill and joy to her.

6. To show her love and care for the hummingbird, she hung out a feeder containing liquid nectar for the hummingbird to feed on. As the hummingbird was confused, she place a trail of plants that led him to her conservatory. The hummingbird began to feed there. After receiving an ornithologist's advice, she decided to keep the hummingbird all winter before letting it go. She tenderly named it 'Squeak' because of its squeaky chirping. She made sure he had a balanced diet and even catered to his love for bath time. She bought a small plastic bird bath for him that he thoroughly enjoyed and treated his bath time as a game. When he got sick, she nursed him lovingly. She also fed him a sweet solution that he loved. (130 words)

## COMPREHENSION 80

### Answers

1.a) The movie's name is 'Pa It Forward'.

b) Trevor decided to do a kind deed for three different people.

2.a) Random Acts of Kindness Foundation encourages people to carry out good deeds.

b) The word 'reciprocate'.

3.a) A comic strip can put a smile on the reader's face.

b) The word '**them**' refers to patients in hospitals.

*4.Reason 1:* They think it will cost a lot of money. *Reason 2:* They are afraid that it will take up too much of their time.

5.The first way I can be kind to others is by writing cards or making bookmarks for people. Many people appreciate the written word that shows your thoughtfulness. Another way I can be kind to others is to cook a simple meal for someone.

6.One of the ways to show kindness is to donate to people who need it. Being a good listener in a friend's time of need is equally great. some other ways are paying for someone's meal, buying newspapers for strangers, and cutting out humorous comic strips or inspiring articles and passing them to people who are interested. One can create writing kits and distribute it to patients in hospitals who can use it to keep in touch with friends. Another way is to give raincoats to students who will appreciate them on a rainy day to keep their textbooks and uniform dry and also to avoid a cold ! The benefits of showing kindness to others would be the great feeling about what one does and a greater sense of well-being. (130 words)

## COMPREHENSION 81

### Answers

1.(a) Her team raked in the highest profit / she had won numerous awards.(b) Her accomplishments / her career

2.He thought she needed a holiday. She was still coughing and had night sweats.

3.\*She could hardly breathe \* Her weight had dropped drastically \* She could infect them. ( *Choose any one answer* )

4.(a) They were afraid of being infected.(b) She had experienced a relapse before.(c) The sickness had affected her physically.

5.(a) She learnt to appreciate her family and her life.(b) She learnt to relax and let others win.

6.The writer had a serious discussion with her boss and handed over her team to her assistant. she felt bad and wanted to take no-pay leave. His kindness in keeping her job made her cry. During her illness, she thought about her job, her achievement and her bleak future. she felt like dying due to her hopelessness. then, she started writing. She resolved to get well when she happened to see her husband crying. She started painting again and her will to live returned. Although she felt better, she dared not believe the first negative test results of her disease. Finally, she was declared free from tuberculosis after 36 months. However, she had to continue taking her medicine. She was overjoyed when she finally returned to work.

## **COMPREHENSION 82**

### **Answers**

1.He was supposed to go to Switzerland.

2.(a) The organisation he set up was the Akshaya Trust.(b) He served 425 meals thrice a day, totalling 1,275 meals a day.3.(a) The Top CNN Hero of 2012 was Pushpa Basnet from Kathmandu.

(b)(i) Pushpa Basnet ran a day care centre fro the children of imprisoned women.(ii) She set up a residential home for the older children.

4.(a) She succeeded in bringing to light the plight of a silent unpublicized population of young caregivers who looked after inform and elderly family members.(b) The stresses of caregiving at home led to problems in handling school, a social life of friends and the care given at home to the needy. Often it led to absenteeism, truancy and poor academic performance.

5.Characteristic: The characteristic that stands out is the courage to take on the problem that they saw individually, with dedication and sincerity.

Reason : All the heroes took on the problem without reference to other authorities or asking the authorities to step in. It is only later, as their endeavours grew in size that the authorities, if any, were involved. In their pioneering spirit, they were indeed trailblazers. This culminated in their recognition as global heroes.

6.The defining moment for Narayanan Krishnan happened rather casually indeed. It was one that woke him up to the fact that thee was greater humane satisfaction to be had in feeding the helpless than serving up classy dishes for the affluent. Pushpa Basnet took convicts' children her wing, lightening the burden of the authorities who were happy to pass on their responsibility for the children to somebody else. Connie Siskowski did society an invaluable favour by raising the legitimate concerns of the caregivers, thus not only lightening their burden, but also providing proper training so that caregivers did not have to learn by trial and error on how best to look after their elderly wards. All three of them addressed problems that only needed highlighting for people to take cognisance and respond to. It took true heroes to take on the challenge and lead the way.

## **COMPREHENSION 83**

### **Answers**

1.It cost USD 37 billion.

2.(a) It is 400 miles long.(b) The Three Gorges Dam produces 11 times as much electricity as the Hoover Dam.

3.(a) They lose access to their natural spawning grounds.(b)(i) Alteration in the river's flow.(ii) Transportation of sediment downriver.

4.(a) The term non-native species refers to species that do not belong to the community of plants or animals that naturally live in the river.(b) There is a significant increase in the emission of greenhouse gases.

5.Characteristic: The environmental impact of dams far outweighs the benefit of electric power.Reason: Dams permanently change not just the ecosystem within the river dammed, but also adversely affects the areas adjoining the rivers that have been sustained by the presence of the river and the river's flow.

6.Dams for electricity should be a choice only when all other options have been exhausted. There are ample scientific results and studies to show that dams permanently alter the river and its adjoining areas to the detriment of the flora and fauna that naturally exist there. Man has to co-exist with all the flora and fauna of this world. More importantly, biodiversity has to be maintained. Man's knowledge of plants and animals is still young. There could be many plants and animals that will become the source of medicines and other useful products that await discovery. The negative effects of dams are chemical, physical and biological. The price that nature has to pay for hydro-electric power for mankind is totally unjustifiable.

### **COMPREHENSION 84**

#### **Answers**

1.It is pollution with a bewildering array of pollutants that we intentionally or by accident release into the environment.

2.(a) Pollution can be defined as the negative alteration in the chemical or physical characteristics of the environment due to human activities.

(b) The melting of ice-caps and the release of greenhouse gases into the atmosphere.

3.(a) He discovered the insecticidal properties of DDT.

(b)(i) The peak production was 90 million kilograms.(ii) It produced disastrous side-effects in man, wildlife and the food chain.

4.(a) It is because half of all petroleum extracted is used in Europe and the US.

(b) Spills occur at the point of extraction, in transit or after delivery to refineries.

5.(i) Plastic bags that are discarded randomly and are carried to the oceans through drains, streams and rivers are an example of pollution. (*Any suitable answer*)

(ii) Waste that is not separated and ends up in landfills. (*Any suitable answer*)

6.The size of the human population produces inevitable changes in nature and the environment. The negative effects cannot be totally eradicated. It can at best be reduced. Manufacturing and technologies are necessary for human survival. Man extracts natural resources and produces many synthetic things that do not exist in nature. In the process, he also produces many toxic things that adversely affect the health and balance of the environment. Creatures that survive in different environments suffer due to the physical and chemical alterations that result from human activity. Many have also become extinct. The crisis in nature can be directly related to man's need to produce things on a massive scale. There is no easy way to stop pollution.

### **COMPREHENSION 85**

#### **Answers**

1.They need to look after their own grocery, food and medicinal needs.

- 2.(a) Those with a pension may find it easy to meet their monthly costs without much difficulty.(b) Those without a pension may have to rely on government assistance or otherwise they have to look towards charitable organisation for their basic needs.
- 3.(a) The elderly who live in their own homes may have the comfort of familiarity of their surroundings and also familiar neighbours.
- (b)(i) Neighbours will not be strangers and can be of help in an emergency.(ii) Familiar surroundings mean familiarity with the local transportation systems and available resources in an emergency.
- 4.(a) The greatest need of the elderly is the availability of good health care and health services.(b) As a person ages, his digestive system becomes weaker as a direct consequence of aging.
5. Characteristic : Care homes exist for the sole purpose of giving the elderly a comfortable existence in their twilight years.  
Reason : This fact is borne out in the fact that care homes give serious consideration not just to the physical comforts of the elderly, they also systematically address the medical, dietary and social needs of them.
- 6.Care homes present a lovely aspect of the human nature. The elderly are people who have lived beyond their productive years in society. Jungle law is survival of the fittest. In human society, care homes have come into existence in recognition of the right for the less than fit to lead lives of dignity and comfort. The elderly have stepped away from working lives and are in retirement. Care homes are designed to especially address the medical, social, dietary and physical needs of those who need help to take care of themselves. Care homes have gone beyond just housing the elderly and ensuring that food and medicines are taken on time. Today, care homes have become focused on fulfilling every need that the elderly may have.

## **COMPREHENSION 86**

### **Answers**

- 1.It describes what the product is and how it will appeal to the consumer.
- 2.(a) Mass marketing refers to the selling of a product on a large scale.
- (b) Mass marketing ignores the minor difference in localized markets.
- 3.(a) The radio, television and newspapers are the usual vehicles used in mass marketing.
- (b)(i) Exposure of a product is maximised by reaching the largest audience possible.
- (ii) This directly translates as an increased number of sales.
- 4.(a) Planned obsolescence is ensuring that a product does not last too long. This ensures future sales opportunities.
- (b) The target audience is broad. This translates into a higher number of successful sales.
- 5.(a) Advertising costs may be big. ( Any suitable answer )
- (b) High innovation costs and market research costs needed for the advertisements keep the costs high.
- 6.Mass production today makes mass marketing an absolutely necessary strategy. Mass production reduces production costs when compared to small scale production. For the scale of production, mass marketing becomes absolutely necessary due to the importance of reaching the largest number of consumers in the shortest span of time. Unsold goods tie down capital without being productive. It also ties up the capital which will be better utilised producing the next batch of goods. Mass marketing increases consumer awareness of the product. It also directly increases sales. Besides, strategies are devised to influence the consumer into believing in the necessity of the product. Modern society is a

global village. Mass marketing today is on a global scale where people from different countries all buy the same goods at the same time.

## COMPREHENSION 87

### Answers

1. It is at the age when we can vote in national elections.
- 2.(a) He died of lung cancer.(b) Handling tobacco leaves every day would have led to the harmful chemicals in tobacco entering their system.
- 3.(a) The secondary smoke from her husband and his breath must have caused her affliction.(b)(i) His sexual ability declined.(ii) He developed bad emphysema.
- 4.(a) Addiction to nicotine was removed because the nicotine was still made available from another source. Besides, the writer failed to continue with the counselling sessions.(b) Smoking is strictly prohibited in all hospitals and their grounds. Besides, he must have been pretty weak after the attack. By the time he was discharged, he was already not smoking for a whole month. Thus, he would already be used to being without cigarettes Of course, there was also the fear of dying.
- 5.Characteristic: Cigarettes create an addiction which drains both health and finances.  
Reason: On an average a pack of cigarette is about RM15. Smokers usually smoke a pack a day. That works out to more than RM5,000 a year. Twenty years of smoking at that rate would be RM100,000, the cost of a small house. Hence it is definitely a drain on one's finances. Besides the addiction to the chemicals in tobacco, the health of lungs, heart and other parts of the body is also adversely affected. This is the drain on health, increasing medical expenditures in tandem.
- 6.The source of the writer's smoking habit was peer pressure. It was a time when there was social pressure to do similar things to identify with groups. His friends were smokers. So, to become their friend he too had to become one. It was a time without awareness of the hazards of smoking. Besides, smoking was advertised as a socially fashionable and manly thing to do. Happily, today the advertisement of cigarettes and other tobacco products are totally banned. There are two ways that the smoking habit affects families. First, the health of the smoker and his is adversely affected. Secondly, being an expensive habit that raises medical expenses in the long run creates a strain on family finances.

## COMPREHENSION 88

### Answers

1. It is physical fitness.
- 2.(a) Rest and recreation were viewed in this way.(b) The discovery of stress as a malady led to the validity of rest and recreation.
- 3.(a) They were those who indulged in physical activity that resulted in bodily tiredness.(b)(i) In olden days, mentally imbalanced meant start raving mad.(ii) Today, mentally imbalanced simply means that the person needs some form of counselling to give him back mental serenity (*Any suitable answer*)
- 4.(a) Previously, there weren't many guidelines on what was good behaviour. Today, there are accepted norms for the appreciation of behaviour according to one's age or age group. (*Any suitable answer* )(b) They are the institutions that cater to the needs of the elderly.
5. Characteristic: I think it is the sense of satisfaction that one may draw from one's life.Reason: There can be no true satisfaction in the absence of either physical or mental balance. When the two are

well-balanced as a result of good physical as well as mental discipline, there can be true satisfaction. We would have done most of what we could and what we could have wanted. (*Any suitable answer*)

6. Physical and mental discipline is very important in our life. Science today recognises that we can have a happy and fulfilling life only when we have both physical and mental discipline. Physical discipline involves following an appropriate diet and doing the necessary amount of physical exertion in the form of games, sports or other outdoor activities. It could also be done within indoor gyms. Mental discipline has more to do with our value systems. Mental discipline also involves making decisions that do not result in physical damage such as smoking and drinking. Even when we have physical problems such as being diseased we can still live in fruitful and satisfying. Proof of this is in the world's greatest scientists Stephen Hawking who is physically handicapped.

## **COMPREHENSION 89**

### **ANSWERS**

- 1.No, dyslexics can be very intelligent people.
- 2.(a) Twenty percent of Americans have dyslexia.(b) No, it will not.
- 3.(a) It is the age of 5.(b)(i) Educational psychologists(ii) Specialised dyslexia teachers
- 4.(a) They will be very different.(b) It looks like the reading brain scan of a non-dyslexic.
- 5.Characteristic: There are no medications or medicinal formulations that can cure dyslexia. Reason: It is not that no medicines have been discovered to treat dyslexia. Dyslexia is an inability that affects spelling, reading and writing. Being a disability, special training successfully removes it. There is no need for any medicines.
- 6.Dyslexia is a condition that affects one fifth of Americans. The same average is valid for the whole world. Dyslexics have difficulty in reading, spelling and writing. Otherwise, their mental faculties are just the same as normal people. The disability can be discovered as early as when one is five years old. The disability is one that can be overcome with training. Then dyslexics are helped with defeating their condition, they sometimes excel in life better than the average person. When the inability is detected, the dyslexics can be given specialised training to overcome their disability. Just as with any other form of disability, once the disability is successfully addressed and overcome, the individuals can become productive citizens. Dyslexics are not a liability to the nation.

## **COMPREHENSION 90**

### **Answers**

- 1.Agriculture refers to the growing of vegetables and grains for food. Farming, besides including agriculture, refers to the rearing of animals and fish for food. (*Any suitable answer*)
- 2.(a) He received advice on crop management, the different maize varieties available, the right fertilizer to use and other such relevant data.(b) It helped him to improve his production and profits.
- 3.(a) It was started in 2011(b)(i) They were advised on the right type and quantity of fertilizer to use.(ii) They were advised on the right timing to apply the fertilizer.
- 4.(a) They receive accurate data on the weather, irrigation scheduling, market prices and many other management tools.(b) Two strange methods of deciding when to plant was studying patterns on the intestines of goats and studying the striations in clouds.
- 5.Characteristic: The foremost characteristic that benefits farmers is accurate advice related to farming.

Reason: The examples cited in the passage prove that the advice given to the farmers helped to increase yield and profits. The futuristic scenario tells of a situation where pest control can be done before the pests proliferate to a scale that is detrimental to yield and profits.

6. Mobile phones are proving invaluable to farmers the world over. The weather is an important factor in farming. Planting and harvest must be planned to be when the weather is ideal. Meteorology departments in all countries monitor daily weather and periodical trends. This information, which is vital for farmers, can easily be conveyed to the farmers in precise timing. Advice on plant species, fertilizing programs and other field management methods may be sent simultaneously to a large number of farmers at the same time. In the future, with the benefit of online marketing, farmers may be able to sell their goods directly to wholesalers without the interference of mid-way agents. This will not only reduce the overall price for consumers, the farmers too can rake in better profits.

## **COMPREHENSION 91**

### **Answers**

1. Cave paintings from that period consistently show an absence of scenes of man attacking man.

2.(a) They were the Mesolithic period, Neolithic period, Bronze Age and Iron Age(b) It was a time when man learned how to use iron to make weapons and utensils. (*Any suitable answer*)

3.(a) Fifty years ago, news was slow to reach people. Today, news is disseminated around the world as events unfold.(b)(i) Social media helps people share their concerns, values and interests.(ii) With social media, the conditions and values in each country are freely available to today's generations.

4.(a) It may be a necessary evil. It is imperative that drugs are tested on animals before humans are allowed to use them. It is the use of lab animals to test cosmetic products that is reprehensible. (*Any suitable answer* )(b) Terrorists organisations infiltrate societies all over the world and wreak havoc on nations. Hence, for the sake of peace and the country, it is important that we are alert to spot these misguided who do not worry about killing innocent citizens. (*Any suitable answer*)

5. Characteristic: The characteristic of Malaysia that is worth emulating is the inter-racial and inter-religious tolerance and acceptance.

Reason: Malaysian have worked together so well to make the country one of the most progressive and peaceful countries in the world. Malaysia has become a preferred destination for migrants from many Asian countries because of our peace and prosperity.

6. Malaysia is a prime example of peaceful and harmonious co-existence. Different races live together in peace and harmony despite the differences of religion and culture. The nation's history since attaining independence 58 years ago shows tremendous improvement in all sectors. Since independence, there has been hardly any reason for the people to agitate and demonstrate the government. Peace and harmony consciously promoted by both the government and the people has meant that the country has become one of the most progressive of nations. The curse of war and civil strife in their home nations has meant that for many Asians, Malaysia is a preferred destination to find a peaceful, harmonious and profitable existence. During war millions risk their lives fleeing to look for other places to build a life.

## **COMPREHENSION 92**

### **Answers**

- 1.The soldiers on board the Dorchester were not told about where they were going as it was kept a secret by the army.
- 2.It was a ship meant for the rich (wealthy) to travel as only they could afford it.
- 3.The Allied forces were losing many military ships as the Germans were sinking them very fast. / The Germans were sinking many of the ships belonging to the Allied forces and so they did not have enough ships.
- 4.The Dorchester and a group of other ships set sail together escorted by armed ships from the Navy.
- 5.The heat and stuffiness inside the small ship made the men seasick.
- 6.It was where many ships were torpedoed and sunk by the Germans.
- 7.All these kept them entertained and helped them not to think of the danger they were in. / Getting involved in them made the soldiers happy and kept their spirits high.
- 8.It means hard to find (mysterious/difficult to spot).
- 9.A torpedo fired by an enemy (German) submarine had hit the Dorchester.
- 10.They gave up their lives by giving their life jackets to four of the crew who had forgotten to take theirs. / They gave their life jackets to four of the crew to save themselves before they drowned.

**END**

--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--

1. My friend has gone to the music, dance and drama concert. (Rewrite the sentence beginning: A friend .....)
- .....  
.....
2. My neighbour borrowed a book from me. (Rewrite the sentence ending.....to my neighbour.)
- .....  
.....
3. The vehicles stopped when the traffic lights turned red. (Rewrite the sentence using.....as soon as.....)
- .....  
.....
4. I have seen a bird. It is beautiful. It is black. It is small. (Join as one sentence without using: and, which or that)
- .....  
.....
5. Asha is too short to touch that ceiling. (Write two separate sentences)
- .....  
.....
6. Most Africans speak English. (Rewrite the sentence beginning: English.....)
- .....  
.....
7. All that glitters.....(complete the proverb correctly)
- .....
8. "I have three books in my box," said the boy. (Rewrite the sentence beginning: The boy said that.....)
- .....  
.....
9. His father will not come here tomorrow, will he? (Rewrite the sentence ending.....won't he?)
- .....  
.....

10. The driver caused the accident. He ran away for his dear life. (Rewrite the sentence beginning: Having.....)

.....  
.....

11. Read the advertisement below and in full sentences answer the questions that follow

### **SALE OF DICTIONARIES**

**Mukono Bookshop located on Kampala Road has dictionaries being sold at cheaper prices as listed below**

- ❖ Oxford Student's Dictionary——used by pupils in P5-P7
- ❖ Active Study Dictionary —— used by pupils in P3-P4
- ❖ Longman Dictionary——used by university students
- ❖ Macmillan Dictionary ——used by teachers

**ALL DICTIONARIES COST 10.000/=**

**Management**

**Tuesday, 4<sup>th</sup> February, 2019**

1. What is the advertisement about?

.....  
.....

2. Where is this bookshop found?

.....  
.....  
.....  
.....

3. Which dictionary is used by teachers?

.....  
.....

4. If you are in Primary six, which dictionary would you buy?

.....  
.....

5. Which pupils are supposed to use the Active Study Dictionary?

.....  
.....

6. Who is supposed to use the Longman Dictionary?

.....  
.....

**7. How much is each dictionary?**

.....  
.....

**8. What is the name of the bookshop?**

.....  
.....

**9. Are dictionaries for P.1 in the advertisement?**

.....

**12. The notice below was written in The Rising Sun of Greenhill Priamry, Buwaate. It was given to the parents at the end of term two on Thursday, 19<sup>th</sup> August, 2015. Study it carefully and in full sentences answer the questions that follow.**

**1. ROLES OF BIOLOGICAL PARENTS**

- ❖ Attending school meetings
- ❖ Monitoring the quality of homework
- ❖ Attending parenting sessions at school
- ❖ Providing the necessary scholastic materials

**2. ASSEMBLIES**

We thank the parents for attending our assemblies every Friday. Thank you so much and please continue. Below is a table that shows the number of parents who attended in every class.

CLASS	Pre-primary	1	P2	P3	P4	P5	P6
No of Parents	100	121	133	150	110	95	20

**Questions**

**1. For which school is the Rising Sun?**

.....  
.....

**2. When was the Rising Sun given to the parents?**

.....  
.....

**3. Write down one role of parents according to the notice.**

.....  
.....

**4. How many classes participated in assemblies?**

.....  
.....

## **ENGLISH , P.5, P.6 & P.7 REVISION WORKBOOK**

5. Which class had the biggest number of parents?

.....  
.....

6. What does the table show?

.....  
.....

7. How many parents attended the P.6 assembly?

.....  
.....

8. What type parents are mentioned in the notice?

.....  
.....

9. What was the total number of parents for P.6 and P.5 altogether?

.....  
.....

10. When are assemblies held in this school?

.....  
.....

13. Study the story below and complete it correctly using the given words  
**arrangements, beginning, pupils, thanks, excited, school, lunch, pay, post office, importance**

At the ..... of term two, Ms. Joy organized a class trip to the ..... in Mityana Town. She told the pupils of Primary Five Red the ..... of the trip.

She said that they would see and touch physically the things they learn about in class during their composition lessons.

She told them that they would .....ten thousand shillings each for the trip. She said that the money would be used to pay for buses and for their ..... while at the post office. The deadline for paying this money was 2<sup>nd</sup> June, 2015. By 30<sup>th</sup> May, all the ..... had paid the money. This .....their teacher and she started making all the necessary .....for the trip. On 10<sup>th</sup> June, 2015, the class went to the post office to learn what the teacher had told them. On arrival at the post office, there were received by the Post office Clerk. He taught them a number of things they had never learnt while at school. At the end, the pupils asked a lot of questions. Finally one of pupils stood up and passed a vote

# **ENGLISH , P.5, P.6 & P.7 REVISION WORKBOOK**

of..... At exactly 4.00 o'clock, the pupils started their journey back to.....

1. Write an advert about a new phone on sale, say that it is a Pure Gold Smart phone. It can be adjustable into different shapes including being a drone. Set the price for the customer, the place where one can find it, the time that place is open and closed, Tell them that one who buys two gets a free modern sprts bicycle, put your name and title as the Managing Director of the Company. Put a frame using a pencil.

PAPER TWO

**In questions 1 to 5, fill in the blank space with the most suitable word**

1. We shall break.....for holidays in February.
  2. Mr. Muzuruwa took his vehicle to the .....for repair.
  3. Our driver will succeed.....taking over all vehicles safely on the road.
  4. ....the candidates nor the teachers have gone for a tour during these holidays.
  5. The primary four girls took.....hour directing the tourist at Igongo Cultural centre.

## **ENGLISH , P.5, P.6 & P.7 REVISION WORKBOOK**

**In questions 6 to 15, use the correct form of the words given in brackets to complete the sentences**

6. A pair of pliers was.....than a spanner in turning nuts loose. (reliable)
7. The motorist had worn the helmet so.....that the traffic officers appreciated. (good)
8. The friendly letters you saw there were....., don't touch them. (they)
9. The young boy had.....his clothes on the wire badly. (hang)
10. We receive a lot of.....at our school everyday.(newspaper)
11. The pre-current speaker failed the.....of the word Duke. (pronounce)
12. In the examination room, Lolita sat on the.....desk. (nine)
13. Mutwale has.....five hundred shillings to Edgar to buy a queen cake.(lend)
14. We are .....our letters at the post office now. (register)
15. I am the first born in our family,.....? (supply a suitable question tag to this question)
16. .....the television badly, the lazy boy broke it into pieces.(carry)

**In questions 17 to 18, re write the sentences giving the opposite form of the underlined word.**

17. The pedestrians have not disturbed any traffic officer.

- .....
18. The man who battered a twelve year old girl was found guilty.

**In questions 19 to 20, write the following abbreviations in their full forms.**

19. Vet.

- .....
20. www

**In questions 21 to 22, rewrite the sentences giving the plural forms of the underlined words**

21. The president uses different medium of communication.

- .....
22. Shatra took a loaf of bread alone yesterday.

**In questions 23 to 24, rewrite the sentences giving one word for the underlined group of words**

23. My friend will stand to be elected as the head prefect in the forthcoming elections.

.....

24. We are using the book that shows similar words in meaning to get another word to mean refuse.

.....

**In questions 25 to 26, rearrange the given words alphabetically**

25. emailing emails emailed email

.....

26. fiancée fiancé couples couple

.....

**In questions 27 to 28, construct a meaningful sentence to show the difference in their meaning**

27. their

.....

28. there

.....

**In questions 29 to 30, rearrange the following words to make a correct sentence.**

29. a your wonderful What uncle accountant is!

.....

30. cloth seamstress will Which sew your?

.....

### **Sub-section II**

**Rewrite the following sentences as instructed in the brackets**

31. Ssegujja uses his old diary to record important information. His diary is old.  
(Rewrite as one sentence beginning; In spite.....)

.....

32. Our class teacher has managed to load airtime on his smart phone.

(Rewrite as one sentence using; .....succeed.....)

.....

33. Kauma borrowed a dining table from the nearest carpenter.

(Rewrite as one sentence using; .....lend.....)

.....

34. It was not necessary for the children to beat the cows.

(Rewrite as one sentence using; .....needn't .....)

.....

## **ENGLISH , P.5, P.6 & P.7 REVISION WORKBOOK**

35. "The herdsman will graze these cows from here tomorrow," said Allan.  
(Rewrite as one sentence beginning; Allan said that .....)

.....  
.....

36. That was a very good calendar.  
(Rewrite as one sentence using; What..... !)

.....  
.....

37. You need to know how to use the internet, don't you?  
(Rewrite as one sentence ending; ..... do you?)

.....  
.....

38. Annet's grandmother reached the show late at night.  
(Rewrite as one sentence using; .....arrive .....)

.....  
.....

39. They are planting more trees. They want to protect the environment.  
(Rewrite as one sentence using; .....in order .....)

.....  
.....

40. that striker you see there said angella has scored a nice goal  
(Rewrite and punctuate the sentence correctly)

.....  
.....

41. The Ghanaian will not take long dancing our cultural dance.  
(Rewrite as one sentence using; .....a long time .....)

.....  
.....

42. The seamstress used a sewing machine. It was white. It was like a rectangle. It was from China. It was made of metal. (Rewrite as one sentence without using; which, and or)

.....  
.....

43. The pupils carried Kamoga when he won the elections.  
(Rewrite as one sentence No sooner .....)

.....  
.....

44. The army keeps security. The police keeps security.  
(Rewrite as one sentence using; .....as well as .....)

.....  
.....

45. Whenever farmers burn the bush, they pollute the environment.  
(Rewrite as one sentence using; .....every time .....)

.....

46. The baker has a roller. The carpenter has a roller.

(Rewrite as one sentence using; Both.....)

---

47. Betty is very young. Sam cannot marry her.

(Rewrite as one sentence using; .....enough .....

---

48. Our teacher enjoyed a circular cake. He liked a rectangular one much more.

(Rewrite as one sentence using; .....prefer .....

---

49. The head teacher will bank the money. The bursar will bank the money.

(Rewrite as one sentence beginning; Either .....or .....

---

50. If you don't use your dictionary, you will not win the spelling bee.

(Rewrite as one sentence using; .....unless .....

---

**Read the passage below and in full sentences, answer the questions that follow in full sentences**

Last year, on 8th February, 2017, there was a burial ceremony of Mr Ssemukene Joseph. He had fallen off a jackfruit tree in the neighborhood. The jackfruit tree belonged to Mr Lugya Kerere.

Late that night, there was a vigil; a lot of things were discussed by the mourners, some said that there was need to cut the fruit tree, the owner of the fruit rejected the idea saying that the late was a thief and the tree paid him back. They also suggested that his younger brother Makula Robert would take the widow to as the heir and take care of the rest of the property. The widow yelled and turned down the idea saying that she was strong enough to keep the family happy without any one's support. She also talked about the existence of HIV/AIDS which has claimed most people's lives in Uganda.

In the morning, more mourners arrived; the relatives suggested that Rev. Sinamakosa Benon could lead the requiem mass but the church leaders refused the idea basing on the fact that the deceased was a thief.

The Reverend disagreed with them and referred them to the Book of Romans 2:1 to 16 which warns people against judging others, it says; "*Let God be the judge.*" When they heard that, they became silent and the mass continued.

## ENGLISH , P.5, P.6 & P.7 REVISION WORKBOOK

Most people went to pay their last respects, the orphans together with the widow laid a wreath on his coffin and said bye wailing and weeping amidst the sympathizers. At 3:30p.m. the deceased was laid to rest in his permanent home. The Chairperson LC I Mr Mpisa Januario warned the natives against theft, he said that if the late had his own fuit trees with jackfruits he wouldn't have met his death. He then sent his condolence message to the bereaved family and encouraged them to work hard since that was not the end of life. He further told them to plant such trees in order to avoid such problems in future.

The Reverend then prayed for the bereaved and all mourners to gain courage and comfort, at 5:00p.m. the mourners started departing one by one.

1. What is the passage about?

.....  
.....

2. According to the passage, who was the deceased?

.....  
.....

3. From what did the man fall off to meet his death

.....  
.....

4. What reason did the owner of the tree say?

.....  
.....

5. What did the widow say to reject the heir?

.....  
.....

6. Who led the requiem mass according to the passage?

.....  
.....

7. What does the book of Romans 2:1 - 16 say?

.....  
.....

8. Give another word with the same meaning as the word silent as used in the passage.

.....  
.....

9. What is the opposite of widow?

.....  
.....

10. Suggest a suitable title for the passage.

.....  
.....

**52. A) Read advertisement below and then, in full sentences answer the questions about it.**

**COME AND VISIT WILLINGTON HOTEL**

**Location:** Along Kaliro Road in Iganga town opposite Coca-Cola Company

**We offer;** Accommodation, restaurant and bar services

**We have;** Smart, strong, jolly and knowledgeable waiters and waitresses

In case you need laundry, it is negotiable. Free omelet to every 1<sup>st</sup> two customers

Tel; 0752932899

Email; [willingtohotel@gmail.com](mailto:willingtohotel@gmail.com)

**Questions**

1. What is the information above about?

.....  
.....

2. Where is this hotel found?

.....  
.....

3. How can someone reach the management?

.....  
.....

4. Write email in its full form.

.....  
.....

5. What is offered to every first two customers?

.....  
.....

**52 B) Read the information that appeared in a Saturday Monitor of 26<sup>th</sup> March, 2018, and in full sentences, answer the questions that follow.**

THE MODERN MOBILE PHONE FROM SAWASAWA COMPANY

THIS IS THE SMART PHONE YOU NEED

NAME; GALAXY 125, CLEAR

HAS TOUCH SCREEN, CLEAR CAMERA, TELEVISION SYSTEM-YOU CAN WATCH NTV, NBS, BUKKEDDE TV AND OTHERS

ONE @ 200,000/=

BUY TWO AND GET A FREE MEMORY CARD, MODERN EARPHONES AND A WARTCH

A MODERN PHONE FOR A MODERN MAN, WALK THE TALK TODAY- NOW

*MR SSEMUNENE JOE, THE MARKETING DIRECTOR (7<sup>TH</sup> April, 2018)*

## **ENGLISH , P.5, P.6 & P.7 REVISION WORKBOOK**

**1. Where did this information appear?**

---

---

**2. From which company is the mobile phone?**

---

---

**3. What will be given to one who buys two phones?**

---

---

**4. Who wrote the above information?**

---

---

**5. Why would you buy one of the phones above?**

---

---

**53. Read the jumbled sentences below and rearrange them to make a good story.**

- d) I immediately paid the money and he thanked me.
- e) After paying, he got a plunk of wood, a saw and he started the job and told me to go back after two days.
- i) It was the most wonderful dining table in my village.
- c) He accepted and asked me for one hundred thousand shillings only.
- h) Reaching home, all children, neighbours and the passers by came to see.
- f) After the two days, I went back and found my table ready.
- b) I wanted him to make for me a dining table.
- g) He then handed it to me and I left for my home.
- a) Last week, I visited Mr Kabaale Josia the carpenter.
- j) Since then, all my visitors normally get surprised when they are dining

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

**54. The dialogue below is between Monica and Juliet who discussed their holidays, fill in the words missing.**

Monica: .....

Juliet: Good afternoon, Monica.

Juliet: .....

Monica: How do you do, Juliet?

Monica: .....

Juliet: My holiday was very fine.

Monica: .....

Juliet: I spent it from Kenya at my Aunt Joan's home.

Monica: In Kenya, at your Aunt Joan's home! Which places did tour?

Juliet: .....

Monica: You toured Mountain Kenya, and travelled to Zanzibar! Which activity did you enjoy most?

Juliet: .....

Monica: Boat riding! For how long did you stay there?

Juliet: .....

Monica: Three weeks! That was good. Did you remember to do your holiday package?

Juliet: .....

Monica: It was the first thing you did before you left to Kenya! Which subject looked harder?

Juliet: .....

Monica: It was Science! My friend, welcome back to school.

Juliet: .....

**Study the guided composition below carefully. Use the given words in the box to fill in the gaps.**

**opposed, discussants, goals, Debating, pupils, school, match, error jotters, goals, chairperson**

Last term we had a .....competition between our school and the pupils of St Agnes Primary School, Nagongera. They had come to visit our .....especially to check on the p7 pupils.

When they arrived, we started with the quiz, it went on well, then time for debate came, our school .....the motion while the other school proposed it. The .....who controlled the debate was from our school but the secretaries, judges, and .....were from both schools.

The other school had hot .....who almost won us but we realized that we had some .....like Namulindwa S and Nandutu Kevin, they really rescued us from the fire. We also had the netball .....which was still hot on our side, Amelu from our school tried to score some .....but things were not easy. At the end, we gathered and the best participants were rewarded. It was a ..... day. We enjoyed it.

## **PAPER THREE**

**Fill in the blank spaces with the most suitable word.**

1. My uncle is smarter ..... our class monitor.
2. Both Paul .....Sarah borrowed a pen each.
3. Kalema has been given.....eggs now.
4. We shall buy a lot .....snacks for my birthday party.
5. Five comes .....four.

**Use the words in the brackets to complete the sentences**

6. We learnt about good .....at the beginning of the term.(behave)
7. Musoke has.....a cup of milk now. (drink)
8. I came.....than you today. (early)
9. Danson will eat three ripe.....in the afternoon.(mango)
10. They .....very little juice yesterday. (Sell)

**Make correct sentences to show that you understand the difference in meaning of these words**

11. sit .....
12. Seat.....

**Rearrange these words to make correct sentences**

13. five I cakes yesterday bought.

.....

14. be is it to lazy good?

.....

15. bad What a Kadogo boy is!

.....

Rewrite the sentences giving the opposite of the underlined words

16. The cloudy weather delayed the departure of the plane.

.....

17. How many fat girls are in that classroom?

.....

18. That boy has bad manners.

.....

Rewrite the sentences below giving a single word for the underlined group of words

19. My father found the spoons, forks and knives on the floor.

.....

20. We should keep away from people who disturb teachers at school.

.....

**A) Rearrange the following sentences to make a good story.**

1. That is why I was late for school on that day.

2. My mother thanked the mechanic and gave him fifty thousand shillings.

3. He then fixed the spare tyre.

4. Last Wednesday, I woke up very early and prepared myself for school.

5. The mechanic asked for some money after fastening the spare tyre,

6. I called my mother so that she could drive me to school after preparing,

7. When the mechanic came, he used a carjack and a spanner to remove the flat tyre.

8. My mother couldn't remove the flat tyre so she called the mechanic.

9. But when we opened the garage, our car had a flat tyre.

10. The tyre had been damaged by a nail.

.....

.....

**Carefully read the poem below and attempt its questions in full sentences.**

What a wonderful time!  
Holiday time it is.  
To some people  
Among others are;  
The teachers, the learners,  
Also the workers and parents  
Who drop their children to school.

What a wonderful time!  
Any way, for it to be fruitful,  
It must be well planned  
And planned in advance  
Not hurriedly  
Because you will make errors.

What a wonderful time!  
What to do  
List down all intended activities  
To avoid leaving out some  
Allocate them per day  
Without repeating any  
And leaving out any.

What a wonderful time!

It is for fun  
Because of camping  
Visiting friends and relatives  
Touring places mustn't be forgotten  
We should all respect this time.

What a wonderful time!  
But the most enjoyable  
Third term's holiday  
Because of its length  
And with lots of interesting activities  
With ample time  
To accomplish them  
Without any hurry.

Great thanks to the Ministry of Education and Sports  
For planning and designing  
The academic terms and their holidays  
But monitor them  
Whether schools respect them  
For the good for us learners and our teachers  
Arrest law breakers.

*R. Doniah (P7M, Ruhinda Primary School, Ruhunda West)*

### **Questions**

1. Which time is wonderful?3

.....  
2. Apart from learners, who else needs holidays?

.....  
3. Why must holidays be well planned?

4. ....  
5. Why should all the intended activities be listed?

.....  
6. Which people are visited during holidays?

.....  
7. Which holiday is the most enjoyable of all?

.....  
8. How many activities are mentioned in stanza 4?

.....  
9. How many stanzas are in the poem?

10. By whom was this poem written?
11. Write one word or group of words with the same meaning as the underlined words in the poem.
- (a) errors .....
- (b) ample.....
- (c) leaving out.....
- (d) fun.....
12. Suggest a suitable title to the poem.....

Below is a notice which appeared in Orumuri Newspaper of 9<sup>th</sup> February, 2019. Study it very carefully, then answer questions about it in full sentences.

**MADEERA DAY AND BOARDING SCHOOL, MOROTO DISTRICT.**

The above stated school wishes to remind all primary seven parents that there shall be a class workshop. The workshop is intended to guide you on how to make senior one choices for your children. It is scheduled to take place in the main hall from Saturday, 25<sup>th</sup> March, 2019 to 31<sup>st</sup> March, 2019, from 10:00 a.m. to 5:00p.m daily. Remember that any parent with fees balances should first clear with the bursar before coming to attend the meeting, keep time.

Thank you for choosing the right school, Madeera

MANAGEMENT

7<sup>th</sup> February, 2019

**Questions:-**

1. Where did the above notice appear?
- .....
2. Who are being reminded?
- .....
3. How long did the event take?
- .....
4. What are some parents advised to do before coming to attend the workshop?
- .....
5. When did this notice appear in the paper?
- .....

6. When was the notice written?

.....  
7. By whom was the notice written?

.....  
8. Why do you think this workshop was called?

.....  
9. Where did the workshop take place?

.....  
10. When did the workshop start?

.....  
11. How long did the workshop last daily?

## **PAPER FIVE**

Fill in the blank spaces with a suitable word

14. That doctor is ..... sick to treat other patients today.

15. ..... is the twelfth month of the year?

16. Three ..... are kept in that kennel.

17. I am a Ugandan, .....?

18. The teacher asked me ..... I was going.

Use the correct form of the word in brackets to complete each sentence below

19. All the names in the register are arranged ..... (alphabet)

20. A relative of ..... has just passed on. (we)

21. The old man crossed the road ..... and he was knocked down by a speeding car.

22. What is your ..... dish these days? (favour)

23. None of us may give the correct ..... of that word.  
(pronounce)

24. Our home is ..... than yours. (near)

25. Tom was ..... for not completing work. (punish)

26. Joan always ..... to her parents. (listen)

For questions 14 and 15, arrange the given words in alphabetical order.

27. Sheep, cats, cows, donkeys

.....  
28. Winder, wind, windiest, rainy

## **ENGLISH , P.5, P.6 & P.7 REVISION WORKBOOK**

Rewrite the sentences giving the opposite of the underlined words

29. The cloudy weather delayed the departure of the plane.

.....

30. How many fat girls are in that classroom?

.....

31. That boy has bad manners.

.....

Rewrite the sentences below giving a single word for the underlined group of words

32. My father found the spoons, forks and knives on the floor.

.....

33. We should keep away from people who disturb teachers at school.

.....

34. She got the message in a period of two weeks

.....

Write the full form of the following abbreviations

35. a.m. .....

36. Ltd. .....

Give the plural of the underlined words

37. The chief attended the burial ceremony in Rukungiri district.

.....

38. That handbag is very expensive.

.....

39. Has the chimney been repaired?

.....

Arrange the following words to form meaningful sentences

40. order law police keeps man and a.

.....

41. the soil is loam growing crops best for.

.....

42. today our headteacher present is?

.....

Complete correctly

43. The higher you go.....

In questions 31 to 50, rewrite as instructed in brackets

## **ENGLISH , P.5, P.6 & P.7 REVISION WORKBOOK**

44. We have been playing football. We started at 8.00 o'clock in the morning. (Join as one sentence using.....since.....)

.....  
.....

45. I fixed new headlamps on my car. I wanted to avoid causing accidents. (Join as one sentence using.....in order to.....)

.....  
.....

46. Annete wrote an article. She is in the Rector's office. (Join as one sentence using.....who.....)

.....  
.....

47. You shouldn't make any calls at night. (Rewrite the sentence using....needn't...)

.....  
.....

48. If we stay in Kakira for some time, we shall learn Swahili. (Rewrite the sentence using.....would.....)

.....  
.....

49. His BMW is very spacious. It can carry six people. (Join as one sentence using.....enough.....)

.....  
.....

50. The proposers were very few but they won the debate. (Rewrite the sentence beginning: Although.....)

.....  
.....

51. Mudondo does not have a bank account. Madaya does not have a bank account. (Join as one sentence beginning: Neither.....)

.....  
.....

52. School dropout like looking after animals more than tailoring. (Rewrite the sentence using.....prefer.....)

.....  
.....

53. Philip grew stronger as he ate more proteins. (Rewrite the sentence beginning: The more proteins.....)

.....  
.....

## **SECTION B**

### **41. Read the passage below and full in sentences answer the questions that follow**

Kamoga, the village chairman of Katabi, had a wife called Namyalo. Kamoga and Namyalo had three children, two boys and one girl. Katalo was the first born followed by Menya and then Babirye the last in the family.

One morning, Kamoga woke up and decided to visit a witch doctor because he wanted to get riches like his friend in the village. On reaching the witch doctor's home, he presented his problem of acquiring riches. The witch doctor just laughed and told him that it would be very possible if he fulfilled only one condition. The only one condition was to sacrifice his first born in the family. Kamoga accepted to fulfill the condition and went back home immediately.

When he reached home, he tricked his wife and took their first born to the witch doctor. The boy was beheaded and sacrificed. When Kamoga went back home, he did not have the boy and this worried the mother. When he was asked about the boy, he simply kept quiet and this confused the mother more.

After thirty minutes without any response from Kamoga, the mother decided to report the matter to police. By the time the police came to arrest him, he had committed suicide in the nearby bush. Kamoga died without getting the riches for which he had sacrificed his son.

### **Questions**

1. How many people have been mentioned in the story?

.....  
.....

2. Who was the last born in Kamoga's family?

.....  
.....

3. To whom did Kamoga go to get the riches?

.....  
.....

4. Who was sacrificed according to the passage?

.....  
.....

5. What did Kamoga do when his wife asked him about the boy?

6. Who was Kamoga's wife?

---

---

7. What was Kamoga told to do in order to get the riches?

---

---

8. Who went to police to report the matter?

---

---

9. Did Kamoga get the riches?

---

10. Suggest a suitable title to the story.

---

42. Write a composition about the sports day you attended at one of the schools.

Show the school, the teams that participated, the chief guest, three activities you enjoyed most, the house that won and how you felt at the end.

## **PAPER SIX**

**Fill in the gaps with a suitable word**

1. ....you feed that animal, you will not take it.
2. Either Rolan.....Paula is the goalkeeper.
3. She can't use.....one-way-street at his age.
4. I don't know.....Lolita put her diary yesterday.
5. I am the chairperson of today's debate,.....?

**Use the words in the brackets to complete the following sentences**

6. Most .....drivers make a lot of mistakes. (care)
  7. Please, I.....you to revise your work hard. (courage)
  8. The pupils had a lot of .....amongst themselves. (accuse)
  9. You should.....that tube if it is to be used. (large)
  10. Why are those pupils .....dresses today? (shabby)
11. The Ghanaian will not take long dancing our cultural dance.  
(Rewrite as one sentence using; .....a long time .....)
- .....  
.....
12. The seamstress used a sewing machine. It was white. It was like a rectangle. It was from China. It was made of metal. (Rewrite as one sentence without using; which, and or)
- .....  
.....
13. The pupils carried Kamoga when he won the elections.  
(Rewrite as one sentence No sooner .....)
- .....  
.....
4. The army keeps security. The police keeps security.  
(Rewrite as one sentence using; .....as well as .....)
- .....  
.....
15. Whenever farmers burn the bush, they pollute the environment.  
(Rewrite as one sentence using; .....every time .....)
- .....  
.....

16. The baker has a roller. The carpenter has a roller.  
(Rewrite as one sentence using; Both.....)
- .....  
.....

# **ENGLISH , P.5, P.6 & P.7 REVISION WORKBOOK**

17. Betty is very young. Sam cannot marry her.

(Rewrite as one sentence using; .....enough .....)

18. Our teacher enjoyed a circular cake. He liked a rectangular one much more.

(Rewrite as one sentence using; .....prefer .....)

19. The head teacher will bank the money.      The bursar will bank the money.

(Rewrite as one sentence beginning; Either ..... or .....)

20. If you don't use your dictionary, you will not win the spelling bee.

(Rewrite as one sentence using; .....unless .....)

**21. Read the jumbled sentences below and rearrange them to make a good story.**

- a) I immediately paid the money and he thanked me.
  - b) After paying, he got a plunk of wood, a saw and he started the job and told me to go back after two days.
  - c) It was the most wonderful dining table in my village.
  - d) He accepted and asked me for one hundred thousand shillings only.
  - e) Reaching home, all children, neighbours and the passers by came to see.
  - f) After the two days, I went back and found my table ready.
  - g) I wanted him to make for me a dining table.
  - h) He then handed it to me and I left for my home.
  - i) Last week, I visited Mr Kaketo Jonnah the carpenter.
  - j) Since then, all my visitors normally get surprised when they are dining

**22. The dialogue below is between Monica and Juliet who discussed their holidays, fill in the words missing.**

Monica: .....

Juliet: Good afternoon, Monica.

Juliet: .....

Monica: How do you do, Juliet?

Monica: .....

Juliet: My holiday was very fine.

Monica: .....

Juliet: I spent it from Kenya at my Aunt Joan's home.

Monica: In Kenya, at your Aunt Joan's home! Which places did tour?

Juliet: .....

Monica: You toured Mountain Kenya, and travelled to Zanzibar! Which activity did you enjoy most?

Juliet: .....

Monica: Boat riding! For how long did you stay there?

Juliet: .....

Monica: Three weeks! That was good. Did you remember to do your holiday package?

Juliet: .....

Monica: It was the first thing you did before you left to Kenya! Which subject looked harder?

Juliet: .....

Monica: It was Science! My friend, welcome back to school.

Juliet: .....

**23. Study the guided composition below carefully. Use the given words in the box to fill in the gaps.**

opposed, discussants, goals, Debating, pupils, school, match, error jotters, goals, chairperson

Last term we had a .....competition between our school and the pupils of St Agnes Primary School, Nagongera. They had come to visit our .....especially to check on the p7 pupils.

When they arrived, we started with the quiz, it went on well, then time for debate came, our school .....the motion while the other school proposed it. The .....who controlled the debate was from our school but the secretaries, judges, and .....were from both schools.

The other school had hot .....who almost won us but we realized that we had some .....like Namulindwa S and Nandutu Kevin, they really rescued us from the fire. We also had the netball .....which was still hot on our side, Amelu from our school tried to score some .....but things were not easy. At the end, we gathered and the best participants were rewarded. It was a ..... day. We enjoyed it.

## **PAPER SEVEN**

**Fill in the blank spaces with a suitable word.**

1. All the carpenters.....tools are not working will be arrested.
2. None.....us missed the debate.
3. The spelling Bee competitions were so good.....most pupils enjoyed them.
4. You should pronounce that word well.....you will miss a mark.
5. One must care for.....property well oneself

**Arrange the following words alphabetically.**

6. Berry, berries, bun, ban.....
7. Bee, lion, Cat, dog, .....

**Make correct sentences using these words**

8. Seat.....
9. sit.....

**Write the full form of the following.**

10. e.g.....
11. The Ghanaian will not take long dancing our cultural dance.  
(Rewrite as one sentence using; .....a long time .....)  
.....
12. The seamstress used a sewing machine. It was white. It was like a rectangle. It was from China. It was made of metal. (Rewrite as one sentence without using; which, and or)  
.....

13. The pupils carried Kamoga when he won the elections.  
(Rewrite as one sentence No sooner .....)

14. The army keeps security. The police keeps security.  
(Rewrite as one sentence using; .....as well as .....)

15. Whenever farmers burn the bush, they pollute the environment.  
(Rewrite as one sentence using; .....every time .....)

## ENGLISH , P.5, P.6 & P.7 REVISION WORKBOOK

16. The baker has a roller. The carpenter has a roller.

(Rewrite as one sentence using; Both.....)

.....

17. Betty is very young. Sam cannot marry her.

(Rewrite as one sentence using; .....enough .....

.....

18. Our teacher enjoyed a circular cake. He liked a rectangular one much more.

(Rewrite as one sentence using; .....prefer .....

.....

.....

19. The head teacher will bank the money. The bursar will bank the money.

(Rewrite as one sentence beginning; Either .....or .....

.....

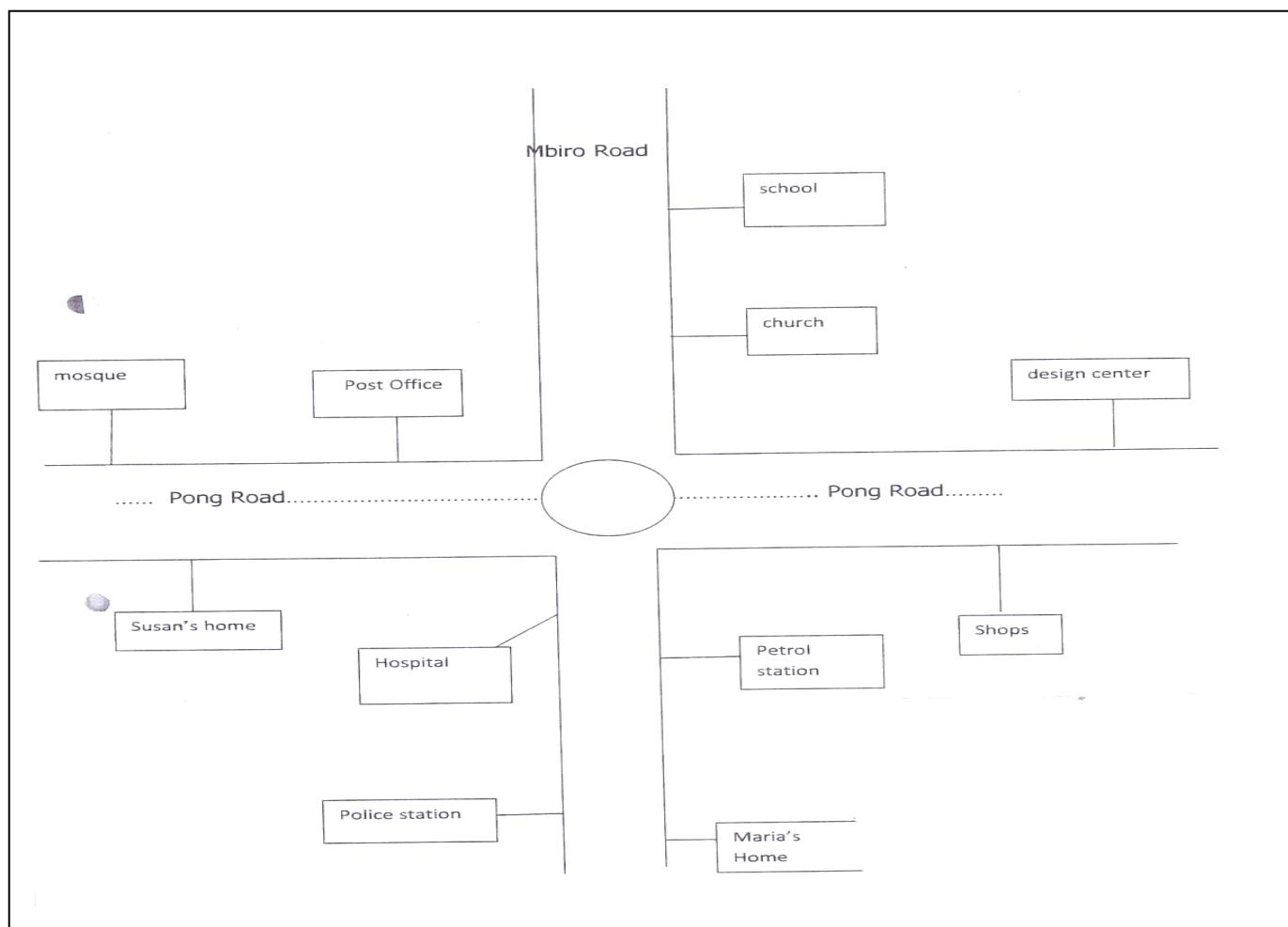
20. If you don't use your dictionary, you will not win the spelling bee.

(Rewrite as one sentence using; .....unless .....

.....

.....

**Study the map below and answer the questions about it in full sentences:**



## **ENGLISH , P.5, P.6 & P.7 REVISION WORKBOOK**

**1.What is opposite Susan's home?**

.....

**2.On which road are the shops?**

.....

**3. What is near the mosque?**

.....

**4.On which road is the church?**

.....

**5. What is next to the petrol station on the map?**

.....

**6. What is between Susan's home and the police station?**

.....

**7. What is opposite Mary's home?**

.....

**8. Which road leads to Mary's home?**

.....

**9. Write in full**

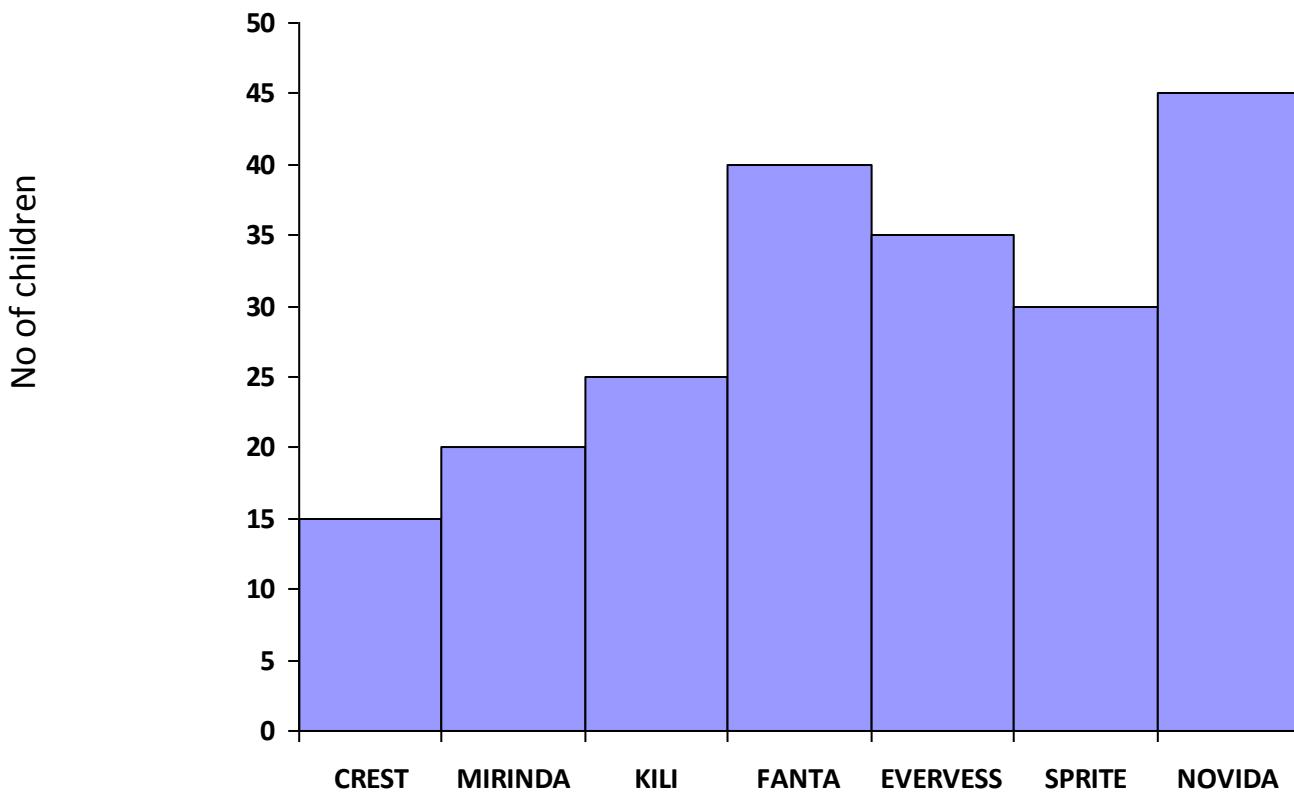
(a) km.....

(b) Sch.....

(c) Rd.....

**10. What direction is the school from the church?**

The graph shows types of soda enjoyed by P.4 children at Mwebe's 10<sup>th</sup> birthday.  
Study it and answer the questions in full



sentences.

**Types of soda**

1. What is the graph about?

.....

2. Whose birthday was it?

.....

3. How many types of soda are shown?

.....

4. How old was Mwebe at the time of the party?

.....

5. Which soda was enjoyed by fifteen children?

.....

6. How many children enjoyed Kiri soda?

.....

7. Which soda was enjoyed by most children?

.....

8. Why do you think very few children drank crest?

.....

9. How many children drank Sprite and Evervess altogether?

.....

10. Write 12<sup>th</sup> in words.

# **ENGLISH , P.5, P.6 & P.7 REVISION WORKBOOK**

**Write a poem about the carpenter you visited one time. In the first stanza, tell the work of the carpenter, mention three things you the carpenter makes and what they are used for.**

**In the second stanza, say three good things he has got from his job. In the third stanza, say what you will do to get good money using your hands. End with your name, age and class.**

*(Remember; a title, space to separate stanzas, spellings, handwriting and put a margin)*

**PAPER EIGHT****Index No.****Section A****Use a suitable form of the word in brackets.**

1. The \_\_\_\_\_ was welcome unlike the cashier. (receive)
2. The cashier gave a \_\_\_\_\_ to one of the customers who had cleared his bill. (receive)
3. My niece has just \_\_\_\_\_ her school fees to that teller. (pay)
4. The guest-of-honour is sitting at a neatly \_\_\_\_\_ dining table. (lay)
5. Some fruits are \_\_\_\_\_ (poison)
6. Chefs do \_\_\_\_\_ work at hotels and restaurants. (excel)

**Fill in the suitable words to complete the sentences.**

7. Cow beef is to cow as \_\_\_\_\_ is deer.
8. We constructed four new \_\_\_\_\_ for the rabbits.
9. My sister is \_\_\_\_\_ a pretty girl that everyone admires her.
10. There was a lot of anxiety when our \_\_\_\_\_ disappeared from the kraal.
11. She applied \_\_\_\_\_ on to the furniture to make it shine.
12. Don't forget to turn \_\_\_\_\_ the oven when baking is done.
13. Musoke is \_\_\_\_\_ singing than in dancing.
14. \_\_\_\_\_ you work very hard, you will not be promoted to primary seven next year.
15. Our father buys for us KFC \_\_\_\_\_ he gets his salary.

**Give the opposite of the underlined words.**

16. The proposers won the debate competition last Friday.

---

17. His mother-in-law was chosen to represent the prime minister at the UNAA convention in the USA.

---


**Construct meaningful sentences using the words below to show that you understand their meanings.**

18. sew \_\_\_\_\_
  19. saw \_\_\_\_\_
  20. sow \_\_\_\_\_
-

**Write the following abbreviations in full.**

21. Hon. \_\_\_\_\_

22. tel. \_\_\_\_\_

23. P.T.O \_\_\_\_\_

**Arrange the following words in alphabetical order.**

24. brant, branch, brander, broad, browse

25. trance, tranny, transit, tranquil, transcript

**Arrange the words to make meaningful sentences.**

26. my father each have a and car both my brother.

27. golden opportunity what a got Sheila!

28. look does James' how bag?

**Give the plural of the given words.**

29. chimney \_\_\_\_\_

30. baby \_\_\_\_\_

**Rewrite the sentences as instructed in brackets.**

31. The bakery was very small. It couldn't produce enough bread. (Join using.....too.....to....)

The carpenter made a cupboard. He also made a dining table. (Use....besides....)

32. The moment the teacher entered the classroom, she started the lesson. (Begin: No sooner.....)

33. The seamstress is making my sister's wedding gown. (Rewrite and end.....by the seamstress.)

34. The choir sang three songs and then left the stage. (Begin: Having.....)

**ENGLISH , P.5, P.6 & P.7 REVISION WORKBOOK**

35. That is the boy. His father is a cattle keeper. (Join using .....whose....)

---

36. You shouldn't be rude to our classmates. (Use .....needn't....)

---

37. My brother is a journalist. My uncle is a journalist. (Begin: Both.....)

---

38. Namono is not clever but she passed her examination. (Begin: In spite.....)

---

39. Mafabi likes reading newspapers more than listening to the news. (Use.....would rather.....)

---

40. Every time I borrow a library book, I come across new words. (Use....whenever....)

---

41. If kamya had seen a thief, he would have made an alarm. (Begin: Had.....)

---

42. Tendo may feed the digs. Tindi may feed the dogs. (Begin: Either.....)

---

43. Maribu closed his cow inside the milk shade so that he could milk it comfortably.  
(Write two separate sentences.)

---

44. We went for break after the bell had rung. (Use.....before....)

---

45. The judge was not in court. The suspect was not in court. (Begin: Neither.....)

---

46. What the investigator asked the security guard were you doing when the bank caught fire (punctuate the sentences correctly)

---

47. "I will oppose the motion," Madhu said. (Begin: Madhu said that.....)

---

48. We need wisdom. We need understanding. (Join beginning with: Not only.....)

---

49. Procrastination \_\_\_\_\_. (complete this saying)

## **SECTION B**

50. Read the passage and answer the questions that follow in full sentences.

### **MR. KANAKULYA AND FAMILY**

During the second holiday, Mr. Kanakulya and his family organised a trip to eastern Uganda. Kanakulya and his wife Mebra went shopping one Friday afternoon. They drove from Mukono town to Kampala City Center. Mrs. Kanakulya Mebra decided to begin with the boys' stuff. The night dresses, jackets, open shoes, umbrellas, bed sheets and t-shirts.

All the three boys got the marched things of the same type but of different colours. Emmanuel, Fred and Abbey as they follow each other.

Then for the girls, mother said that because of their high demands and choice, she had to keep on her phone asking for the four girls what they preferred.

Martha, Olive, Rose and Alice were all in agreement of having the same stuff by colour and make.

All the girls wanted the Timberland Boots and black jeans and red t-shirts together with the jean jackets. They wanted to be like cowboys.

Mummy still bought for them some body prays of different scents, sun screen oil and other girlish items.

Mwebaze Stella was also staying with the Kanakulya's and she too got what other girls got because she was to travel too.

Stella was a daughter of Mebra's eldest sister Joylene. She was at the university in her third year studying medicine.

She was left with only two years to become a full surgeon.

This is a very lively and happy family.

This family set off on a Tuesday morning, did stop over at Mabira Forest the best stop over was at the source of the River Nile in Jinja.

They proceeded to Iganga and drove to Nyero rock paintings at Ngira Trading Center in Kumi District. They had snacks as lunch on the way. They also went to Lake Bisna in the same District.

They spent their night in Soroti Green Valley Motel.

In their second day, they took the Mbale Route. In Mbale, they saw a winding river, River Manafwa. We saw the Mountain Elgon Ridge near Nabumali town. This was very beautiful scenery where the clouds are almost on the ground. We went to Bududda district to climb the mountain. However, it was very stiff that we could not even go any further.

We spent four days in Mbale and then we drive back to Mukono on that fourth day. It was really amazing touring the eastern Uganda.

**Emma Kanakulya**

**Questions**

1. What is the story about?

---

2. How many people travelled to eastern Uganda?

---

3. How does Emma Kanakulya call Mwebaze Stella?

---

4. How many districts are mentioned in the story?

---

5. When did the Kanakulya's travel to eastern Uganda?

---

6. According to the story, how many children do Mr. and Mrs. Kanakulya have?

---

7. What made the Kanakulya girls look like cowboys?

---

8. On which day did this family return to Mukono?

---

9. What is the relationship between Mr. Kanakulya and Joylene?

---

---

10. What feature did the Kanakulya's see in Kumi District?

---

---

11. Who wrote the story?

---

---

12. Suggest a suitable title for the passage.

---

---

51. Complete the composition with the words in the box below.

person	Tallest	decorated	beautiful	meals
rooms	Customers	proper	Hotel	waiters

Hotel Triangle Complex is one of the \_\_\_\_\_ building in Dubai. It is situated in the center of the town near the Indian Ocean. The \_\_\_\_\_ gardens around this hotel have attracted many \_\_\_\_\_ from near and far. The \_\_\_\_\_ prepared are very delicious. Every meal a customer buys is the delicious. Every meal a customer buys in the \_\_\_\_\_ forces him to come back the following day. The \_\_\_\_\_ and waitresses are very receptive.

The chef is the politest \_\_\_\_\_ in this hotel. There is \_\_\_\_\_ arrangement of tables and chairs. Cold drinks are available all the time. The conference \_\_\_\_\_ are gorgeous and quite big. Each room has twenty well \_\_\_\_\_ tables.

52. Read the jumble story below carefully and rewrite and arrange it in a correct order.

- a) As the phone rang, he remembered the traffic rules and ignored the call.
- b) While going home, his mobile rang.
- c) After the long journey, he reached the market.
- d) The helmet would protect his head in case of danger.
- e) After he had bought, he tied the items well on the motorcycle band went home.
- f) In the market, he bought; meat, fruits and vegetables.

- g) Thirdly, he started the motorcycle and started the journey.
  - h) First, he got a motorcycle out of the garage.
  - i) One day, peter wanted to go to the market.
  - j) Secondly, he picked a helmet.
- 
- 
- 
- 
- 
- 
- 
- 
- 
- 
- 
- 
- 
- 
- 
- 
- 
- 
- 
- 
- 
- 
- 
- 

**53. Study the poem below carefully and in full sentences, answer the questions that follow.**

**The good baker in our village**

That baker bakes cakes in his bakery.

His cookies, very sweet.

Sweet as honey.

The good baker, has no mercy.

No mercy for the dough.

He kneads the dough, mercilessly.

The dough quickly, makes a fine paste

He looks at the paste, smiles gently.

His smile, my friend, oh!

Like the prince of England.

## **ENGLISH , P.5, P.6 & P.7 REVISION WORKBOOK**

Quickly he switches on the oven.

In a short time, his bread, cakes and cookies get ready.

The customers line up.

Like people voting their dear one.

**P. Dickson, P.6 Orange**

### **Questions**

What is the poem about?

---

---

How many stanzas are in the poem?

---

---

Who wrote the poem?

---

---

From where does the baker bake his cakes?

---

---

How sweet are the baker's sweets?

---

---

Does the baker have any mercy for the dough?

---

---

What does the baker do to the oven?

---

---

In which class is the writer?

---

---

Write the suitable title for this poem?

---

---

**54. Study the advertisement below and in full sentences, answer the questions that follow in full sentences.**

**THE MODERN BOUTIQUE**

Has brought modern clothes with modern fashions on display.

**When:** 15th September, 2018

**Where:** Markson Park, plot 534, Aber Rd.

- Items:**
- (a) African wear at 150,000/= each
  - (b) Nigerian special at 200,000/=
  - (C) Western check suits for men at 250,000/= each
  - (d) Wedding gowns, Canadian at 500,000 each
  - (e) Corporate shirts at 30,000/= each

**By Edmond Olu**

**Questions**

1. What is the advertisement about?

2. What has the above company brought?

3. What can you pay to get a Nigerian special?

4. Which item is at (250,000/=) thousand shillings?

5. Who wrote the above advertisement?

6. When was the advertisement written?

7. Where will the display take place?

8. What is the most expensive item on sale?

9. What shows that this company deals with corporate organisations?

---

---

10. If you visited that display and you bought an item from each stall, how much did you pay altogether?

---

---

## **PAPER NINE**

**Index No.**

--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--

### **SECTION A**

**Use the correct form of the word in brackets to complete the sentences.**

1. Mr. Medard is the \_\_\_\_\_ person in his family. (thin)
2. The baby \_\_\_\_\_ onto the bedroom and spoilt my vaseline. (crawl)
3. I was the \_\_\_\_\_ person to arrive at school yesterday. (twenty)
4. Most \_\_\_\_\_ these days hold night prayers. (church)
5. The traffic policewoman stopped the \_\_\_\_\_ because he was speeding. (cycle)
6. Arinya prefers \_\_\_\_\_ to swimming. (skip)
7. Which song will take the \_\_\_\_\_ amount of time? (little)

**Fill in the blank spaces with a suitable word or group of words.**

8. Our night watchman aimed his gun \_\_\_\_\_ the thief and killed him there and then.
9. When I expressed my problem to the school counselor, she promised to look \_\_\_\_\_ it.
10. \_\_\_\_\_ splits logs into pieces, the lumberjack makes timber smooth.
11. Children didn't hand in the books for marking \_\_\_\_\_ they hadn't completed the exercise.
12. If you came early, you \_\_\_\_\_ attend the Morning Prayer.
13. Madad is as mischievous as \_\_\_\_\_.

**Rearrange the following words to make meaningful sentences.**

14. praises are our hardworking that head teacher children.

---

15. barracks the behind is bank the?

---

16. stubborn are what you a child!

---

## **ENGLISH , P.5, P.6 & P.7 REVISION WORKBOOK**

**Rewrite the sentences giving the opposite of the underlined words.**

17. My father has gone to the bank to withdraw some money.

---

18. Your luggage is heavier than mine.

---

**Rewrite the sentences giving a single word or the underlined groups of words.**

19. My sister spent a period of fourteen days in the hospital.

---

20. A policeman has arrested a person whose job is to collect and write new stories for newspapers because he was taking pictures.

---

**Arrange these words according to the dictionary order.**

21. tomatoes, yams, potatoes, mangoes

---

22. river, rain, roof, roads

---

**Use each of the words in a sentence to show that you know the difference in their meaning.**

23. hat \_\_\_\_\_

24. hut \_\_\_\_\_

**Give the plural form of the given words.**

25. brother-in-law \_\_\_\_\_

26. a lady's shoes \_\_\_\_\_

27. that child \_\_\_\_\_

**Write the full form of these abbreviations.**

28. Gmail \_\_\_\_\_

29. C.O.D \_\_\_\_\_

30. © \_\_\_\_\_

**Rewrite the sentences as instructed in brackets.**

31. Jones is very short. He cannot touch the ceiling. (Use...too...to.....)

---

32. That room is very small. The seven men cannot fit in it. (Use.....too.....to.....)

---

33. The teacher is teaching the children. He wants them to pass in division one. (Use.....so that.....)

---

34. The orphans made bricks. They wanted to sell them and get school fees. (Use....so that.....)

---

35. Joana is a very clever girl but she failed the examinations. (Begin: In spite of the.....)

---

36. Kawalya had a visa to the United States of America but the plane left him at the airport. (Use.....although.....)

---

37. The siren started making sound at 8:00 p.m. It is midnight the siren is still making the sound. (Use.....since.....)

---

38. It is now seven years since Mr. Ssozzi left Uganda to America. (Use...for....)

---

39. Mwesigwa is a very clever boy. All the teachers in his school like him. (Use....such a....that.....)

---

40. The German Shepard is very fierce dog. Everyone at home fears it.  
(Use.....so....that.....)

---

41. All primary six learners are eager to join primary seven next year.  
(Use.....forward.....)

---

42. Mr. Kato managed to start the engine of the old Tata lorry.  
(Use.....succeeded.....)

---

43. "We must complete our work before noon tomorrow." said the boys. (Begin: The boys said that.....)

---

44. mr. kalyango said the president is the managing director of simba investments  
(punctuate correctly)

---

---

## ENGLISH , P.5, P.6 & P.7 REVISION WORKBOOK

45. Mrs. Katono is a teacher. Mrs. Katono is a baker. (Begin: Not only.....)

46. James is a veterinary doctor. James is a farmer. (Use.....besides.....)

47. If she gets time, she will go and visit the patients in Mulago Hospital.  
(Use.....would.....)

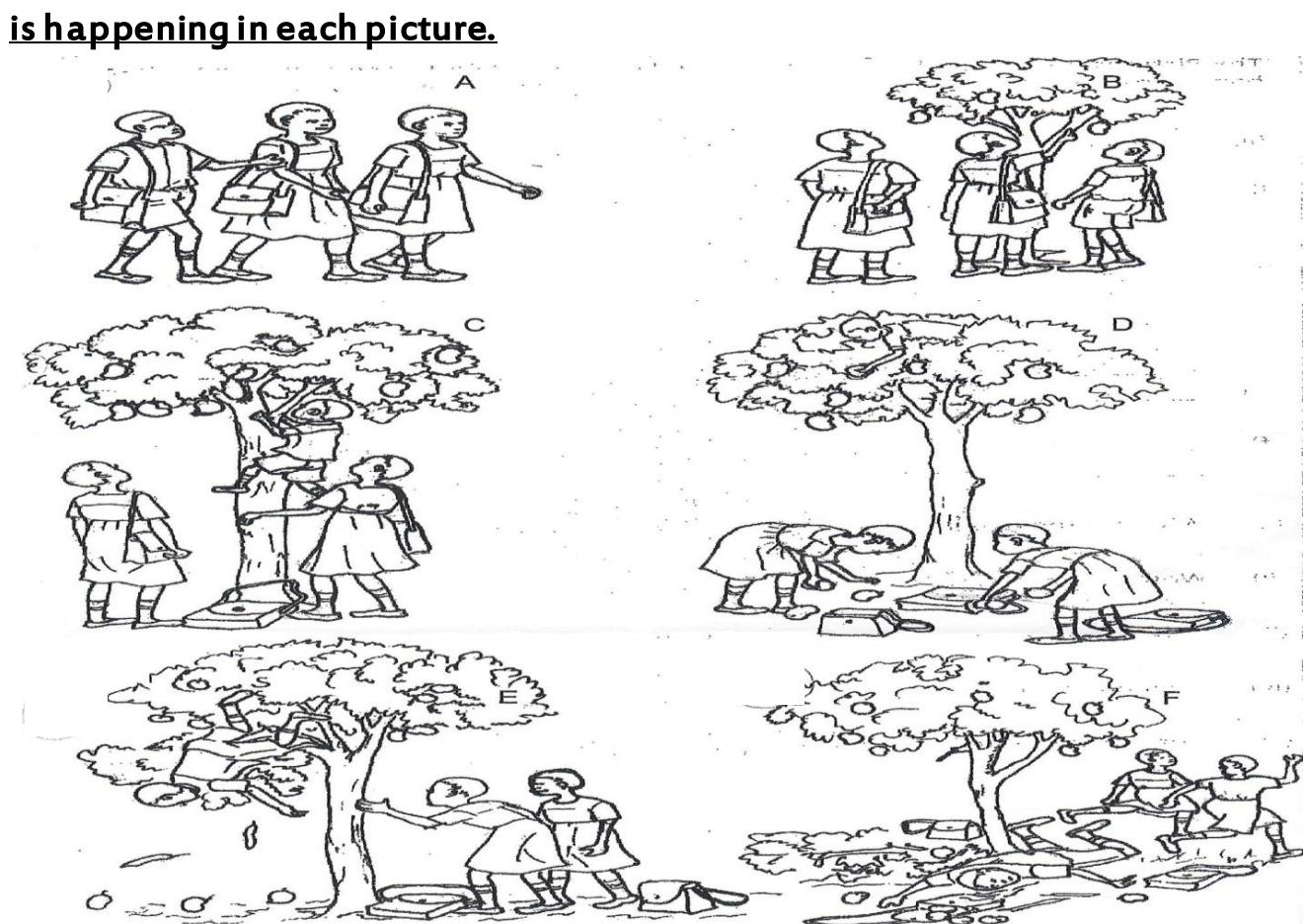
48. If I see my uncle today, I will tell him to buy for me ice cream.(Begin; Having.)

49. Peter walked deep into the mine and felt a lot of heat. (Begin: The..... the...)

50. The higher you go \_\_\_\_\_ . (complete the saying)

### SECTION B

51. The pictures A-F tell a story. Study them and write one sentence to describe what



1. \_\_\_\_\_
2. \_\_\_\_\_
3. \_\_\_\_\_
4. \_\_\_\_\_
5. \_\_\_\_\_
6. \_\_\_\_\_
7. What did the girls in picture D do before picking the mangoes?  
\_\_\_\_\_

8. Write one word to describe what happened in pictures E.  
\_\_\_\_\_

9. Why weren't the girls useful to the boy?  
\_\_\_\_\_

10. What do you learn from the story?  
\_\_\_\_\_

**52. Read the poem below and in full sentences, answer the questions that follow.**

The policeman  
At the police station  
Keeps law and order  
Keeps telling people to obey law

He explains further  
That the ignorance of the law  
Has no defense  
Never say you are ignorant, my brother

The policeman, my friend  
Waves a stick at the criminals  
Drags the criminals while handcuffed

Mercilessly, he throws them into the prison.

The criminals scream and yell.

He produces them next into the courts-of-law.

The judge sentences them

To life imprisonment, if one is a murderer

Into the prison again, criminals repent their sins

**K. Galiwango (Officer in Charge, Upper Prison, Kiira)**

**Questions**

1. What can be the title to this poem?

---

2. Who do you think sits in the courts-of-law to judge criminals?

---

3. Who keeps law and order?

---

4. Why do you think criminals scream and yell?

---

5. What is the writer talking about the ignorance of the law?

---

6. What does the policeman wave?

---

7. What do criminals do to their sins while in prison?

---

8. How are criminals thrown into prison?

---

9. How many stanzas are in the poem?

---

10. Who wrote the poem?

---

**53. This announcement appeared in the New Vision newspaper of Sunday, 10th July,**

**2018. Study it carefully and answer the questions in full sentences.**

**LOST CHILD**

The family of Mr. and Mrs. Oluka of Kamusungu Town Council wishes to announce the disappearance of their son Otete Michael.

He disappeared on Saturday afternoon from Mandela stadium during the match between Uganda Cranes and Kipolepole. He speaks Ateso and English.

Age: 10 years

Look - light skinned

Clothes- yellow Uganda Cranes t-shirt and black shirts.

Contact: 07749874556

Reward: 700,000/=

Dedson Olima (brother to Otete Michael)

1. What is the notice about?

---

2. Where can Trevor, a P.6 pupil from the notice above?

---

3. What is the title of the notice?

---

4. What is the name of the lost child?

---

5. From where did the child get lost?

---

6. How old is the lost child?

---

7. What reward will someone get for getting the child?

---

8. How can one reach the responsible people?

---

---

9. Who wrote the notice?

---

10. Where does the lost child come from?

---

**54. Read the passage below and answer the questions that follow in full sentences.**

One day, Mukasa, a p.5 pupil at St. Andrew Primary School got a paper and a pen. He wanted to write a letter to his parents who stayed in Namasagali Town.

He wanted to inform them about the sports day that was to take place on Friday, 7<sup>th</sup> June, 2018. In his letter, he told them about the date, time, venue, the expected chief guest and said that he was to participate in the walk race, one hundred metres race and the short relays.

He further informed the parents to go to school dressed in clothes of his house colour. He also told them to carry for him some presents because he expected to win all his races. He then had to envelop it in an envelope and posted it through the post office, Katwe Branch.

**Questions**

1. Who is being talked about in the passage?

---

2. In which class was Mukasa?

---

3. In which activity would you participate if you were present?

---

4. How were the parents to be dressed?

---

5. Where does the writer study from?

---

6. What did the writer want to do?

---

7. Which branch of the post office did the writer use?

---

8. Write a suitable title for the passage.

---

9. Why do you think the writer wanted the parents to come with presents?

---

## 10. When was the sports day?

**55. The sentences below are not in correct order. Rearrange them into a correct order to make a good story.**

1. Then the devotion leader announces a closing song to end the devotion time.
  2. Reverend Gerald Ayebare, a youth pastor from St. Stephen's Church of Uganda, Kisugu preaches the word of God.
  3. Every Wednesday morning, Greenhill Academy Primary Kibuli holds a devotion service in the school main hall.
  4. All the children and teachers listen very attentively.
  5. This pastor preaches the word of God with clarity and passion.
  6. The devotion service takes place from 7:00 a.m. to 7:30 a.m.
  7. After the sermon, he prays for the school and gives a final blessing from God.
  8. He makes sure that during his preaching, every one is involved by reading the Bible together.
  9. And whenever he tells such scriptures,
  10. He also tells children interesting stories related to the memory verse.



Use the correct form of words in brackets to complete the sentences.

1. Mr.Kapeere has four \_\_\_\_\_ in his family. (child)
2. The baby \_\_\_\_\_ whenever mummy goes away. (cry)
3. Of the twins, Nakato is the \_\_\_\_\_.(kind)
4. There are a lot of committed \_\_\_\_\_ in our school.(teach)
5. The stubborn girl has been \_\_\_\_\_ by a bee.(sting)

Use a suitable word to complete the sentences.

6. Omondi drove so \_\_\_\_\_ that he caused an accident.
7. She was involved in a car accident and became blind \_\_\_\_\_ one eye.
8. The village chief died \_\_\_\_\_ malaria.
9. James went to the \_\_\_\_\_ to have his hair cut.
10. Bitch is to puppy as ewe is to \_\_\_\_\_ .

Arrange these words in alphabetical order.

11. cook, chauffeur, chef, cobbler

---

12. stationery, fuel, sand, flower

---

13. defilement, defiler, defiled, defile

---

Use each of these words in a sentence to show that you know their meaning.

14. floor \_\_\_\_\_

15. flour \_\_\_\_\_

In questions 16 – 18, give one word for the underlined group of words.

16. Musa will clean the dog's house tomorrow.

---

17. The people watching a football match cheered their team as they were playing.

---

18. I attended my father's sister wedding party last month.

---

In questions 19 – 21, re-write the sentences using the opposite of the underlined words.

19. The minority of the pupils came early despite the bad weather.

---

20. There was war in some parts of the country.

---

21. Their school is located in the western region.

---

**Write these abbreviations in full.**

22. Can't \_\_\_\_\_  
23. Dr. \_\_\_\_\_  
24. Feb. \_\_\_\_\_

**In questions 25 – 27, give the plural form of the underlined words.**

25. A passer-by helped to give first aid to the boy who had been bitten by a snake.  
\_\_\_\_\_
26. The farmer has taken the sheep to graze.  
\_\_\_\_\_
27. We saw a monkey when we went to Kavumba Recreation Centre.  
\_\_\_\_\_

**In questions 28 – 30, write these figures in words.**

28. 12<sup>th</sup> \_\_\_\_\_  
29. 42 \_\_\_\_\_  
30. 90 \_\_\_\_\_

## SUB-SECTION II

**In questions 31 – 50, re-write the sentences as instructed in the brackets.**

31. Jane is tall. She can play basketball very well. (Join using \_\_\_\_\_ enough \_\_\_\_\_)  
\_\_\_\_\_
32. We should iron our clothes because we should be smart. (Begin: In order to \_\_\_\_\_)  
\_\_\_\_\_
33. Kiberu is a glazier. Kiberu is a plumber. (Join using \_\_\_\_\_ not only \_\_\_\_\_)  
\_\_\_\_\_
34. None of the children in my class writes badly. (Begin: All \_\_\_\_\_)  
\_\_\_\_\_
35. These boys are digging. They started digging at 7:00a.m. (Use \_\_\_\_\_ since \_\_\_\_\_)  
\_\_\_\_\_
36. It was raining heavily. We did not go to the market. (Use: \_\_\_\_\_ because \_\_\_\_\_)  
\_\_\_\_\_
37. Francis needn't have drunk the unboiled water. (Use: \_\_\_\_\_ necessary \_\_\_\_\_)  
\_\_\_\_\_
38. What responsible people our parents are! (Begin: Our \_\_\_\_\_)  
\_\_\_\_\_
39. As soon the siren was pressed, we walked out of the building. (Use \_\_\_\_\_ immediately \_\_\_\_\_)  
\_\_\_\_\_

## ENGLISH , P.5, P.6 & P.7 REVISION WORKBOOK

40. There goes the girl. I borrowed a ruler from her. (Join using \_\_\_\_\_ whom  
\_\_\_\_\_)
- 
41. His cow died because he didn't feed it well. (Begin: Their \_\_\_\_\_)
- 
42. It is a long way from my home to the church. (Use : \_\_\_\_\_ far \_\_\_\_\_)
- 
43. There is very little paraffin in the lamp. (Use: \_\_\_\_\_ any \_\_\_\_\_)
- 
44. Our intention is to plant more trees to conserve the environment. (begin: We  
\_\_\_\_\_)
- 
45. As the woman was crossing the road carelessly, she was knocked down by a  
speeding car. (Begin: Crossing \_\_\_\_\_)
- 
46. We should be responsible for our property. (Begin: One \_\_\_\_\_)
- 
47. Ben liked washing dishes more than fetching water. (Use:  
prefer \_\_\_\_\_)
- 
48. If Nantume invites me, I will attend her music competition. (Begin:  
Unless \_\_\_\_\_)
- 
49. Joshua didn't cast the vote. Mafabi didn't cast the vote. (Use: \_\_\_\_\_ and  
neither \_\_\_\_\_)
- 
50. You say your prayers before going to bed. (Use: \_\_\_\_\_ after \_\_\_\_\_)
- 

51. **Read the passage below carefully and answer the questions that follow.**

Animals are living things which are useful to people. They are grouped into two namely; domestic and wild animals. Examples of domestic animals include cows, goats, sheep, cats, rabbits, dogs and pigs. They are domestic due to the fact that they are kept at home.

These animals are kept for different reasons; for example, dogs provide security whereas cows, goats are kept for their milk and meat. The cats help to chase away mice which are destructive. These animals also have to be cared for properly in order to get the best out of them by providing them with shelter,

feeding them properly and even treating them in case of diseases. The vet ensures that they are in good health. Much as they are animals, they should be looked after well.

Wild animals are also useful. Some of these wild animals are lions, zebras, snakes, monkeys, kobs to mention but a few. They attract tourists who bring foreign exchange to the country. We should protect them to avoid extinction. Some of the areas where these animals are protected include zoos, game parks and sanctuaries. However, sometimes, they are killed illegally by hunters and poachers.

I therefore advise the government to put strict laws in place to curb this poaching such that even the future generation will be able to see these animals.

**Questions:-**

1. What is the passage about?

---

2. Which animals are kept for both milk and meat?

---

3. How important are dogs in our homes?

---

4. Why should wild animals be protected according to the passage?

---

5. Name the doctor that treats animals.

---

6. Which people carry out poaching?

---

7. Where can wild animals be protected according to the passage?

---

8. What are the two groups of animals talked about in the passage?

---

9. Give one activity done to care for animals according to the passage.

---

10. Suggest a suitable title for the passage.

---

**52. Re-arrange these sentences below to form a meaningful story about environmental protection.**

- a. Keeping the environment is done by individuals, non-government organisations and the government.
  - b. Secondly the government ensures that laws are in place to protect the environment.
  - c. Environmental protection is the practice of conserving the environment.
  - d. However, each of these plays a particular role in protecting the environment.
  - e. First, individuals conserve the environment near and around them.
  - f. They do this by planting two trees for every single tree cut down.
  - g. Lastly, non-government organizations help the government by promoting programmes that protect the environment.
  - h. It does this by arresting people who destroy it.
  - i. Through setting up projects such as planting trees.
  - j. It also does the work of sensitizing the public.
- 
- 
- 
- 
- 
- 
- 
- 
- 
- 
- 
- 
- 
- 
- 
- 
- 
- 
- 
- 
- 
- 
- 
- 

**53. (a) Make five meaningful sentences from the table below.**

There is There are	any hardly some	stones milk food water mango trees charcoal	in the orchard. in the granary. in the compound. in the sack. in the tank.
-----------------------	-----------------------	--	--

(i)

---

- (ii) \_\_\_\_\_  
(iii) \_\_\_\_\_  
(iv) \_\_\_\_\_  
(v) \_\_\_\_\_

**(b) Complete the sentences using correct reflexive pronouns.**

- (i) Elizabeth can dress \_\_\_\_\_.  
(ii) One must respect \_\_\_\_\_ in order to be respected.  
(iii) The children hid \_\_\_\_\_ in the bush.  
(iv) The man had an accident and hurt \_\_\_\_\_.  
(v) The tree fell down \_\_\_\_\_.

**54. Read the poem below carefully and answer the questions about it in full sentences.**

**Birds Birds Birds.**

Colourful creatures of God.  
Singing in their nests early in the morning.  
Their sweet voices wake me up  
How wonderful creatures they are!

**Birds Birds Birds.**

Colourful creatures of God.  
Flapping their wings as they fly.  
Though some like the kiwi and ostrich  
Are flightless

**Birds birds birds**

Colourful creatures of God  
Watchful for enemies  
As they search for what to eat  
Very agile in case of danger  
How wonderful they are!

**Birds Birds Birds**

Nice creatures to look at  
Attract tourists from all over the world  
To admire and learn more about them  
How wonderful they are !

**Mashab Abdul, P.7 Y.**

## **ENGLISH , P.5, P.6 & P.7 REVISION WORKBOOK**

1. How many stanzas does the poem have?

2. In which class is the writer of the poem?

3. How do birds fly according to the poem?

4. When do the birds sing?

5. Why are birds important in the country?

6. By whom was this poem written?

7. Which stanza talks about the flightless birds?

8. Who created birds according to the poem?

9. When are birds seen to be agile?

10. Birds of a feather \_\_\_\_\_.(complete correctly)

55. **Read the notice below carefully and answer the questions that follow in full sentences.**

ELECTION TIME HAS COME  
ALL ADULTS ARE INFORMED  
ARE YOU 18 YEARS OLD?  
ARE YOU A CITIZEN OF UGANDA?  
THIS IS FOR YOU!  
ELECTION DAYS ARE 28<sup>TH</sup> AND 29<sup>TH</sup>  
NOVEMBER, 2016.  
COME AND ELECT MEMBERS OF PARLIAMENT  
AS WELL AS A PRESIDENT  
GET YOUR NATIONAL IDENTITY CARD  
BEFORE SAT 26<sup>TH</sup> NOVEMBER, 2016.  
CHAIRMAN  
ELECTORAL COMMISSION, UGANDA  
MR. SAM ODHOLA

**Questions:-**

1. Who wrote this notice?

2. What is the notice about?

## **ENGLISH , P.5, P.6 & P.7 REVISION WORKBOOK**

3. Why do you think a 15-year old is not supposed to vote?

---

4. When did the voting end?

---

5. In which month were the elections held?

---

6. According to the notice, did Mrs. Kamau from Kenya participate in the elections?

---

7. In which country were the elections?

---

8. What did the voters have to get before the elections?

---

9. What did the voters do before Saturday, 26<sup>th</sup> November, 2016?

---

10. Which organization is responsible for conducting these elections?

---

### **PAPER TWELVE**

Index No.

--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--

**Use the correct form of word to complete the sentences.**

1. The cyclist knocked my father's car and broke the \_\_\_\_\_.(reflect)
2. The school van had \_\_\_\_\_ fault in the engine.(mechanic)
3. A lot of \_\_\_\_\_ is needed before their cars can be used. (maintain)
4. Matthew has \_\_\_\_\_ a cartoon of a herdsman in a kraal. (draw)
5. The \_\_\_\_\_ side won the debate because they had fluent main speakers. (oppose)
6. All the \_\_\_\_\_ were smartly dressed. (waitress)
7. The teacher arranged our names \_\_\_\_\_ before he gave us serial numbers.(alphabet)
8. We arrived \_\_\_\_\_ to our destination. (safe)

**In questions (9 – 15) fill in the most correct word to complete the sentences.**

9. Florence wrote \_\_\_\_\_ article which appeared in the New vision newspaper on Saturday.

## **ENGLISH , P.5, P.6 & P.7 REVISION WORKBOOK**

10. I need a \_\_\_\_\_ to remove my car tyre.
11. Host is to hostess as heir is to \_\_\_\_\_ .
12. Your letter will not be \_\_\_\_\_ unless you fix a postage stamp.
13. She was given a \_\_\_\_\_ to look for people's names and their telephone numbers.
14. Alice should \_\_\_\_\_ enough airtime if she wants to make many calls.
15. He went to the \_\_\_\_\_ to buy meat but he was not there.

**Write the following words in their short forms.**

16. Senior \_\_\_\_\_
17. telephone number \_\_\_\_\_
18. post meridiem \_\_\_\_\_

**Rewrite the sentences giving a single word for the underlined group of words.**

19. The chairman read out the list of items to be discussed in the meeting.  
\_\_\_\_\_
20. We met at a place where roads meet.  
\_\_\_\_\_

**Arrange the words in dictionary order.**

21. withdraw, deposit, account, savings  
\_\_\_\_\_
22. safety, safe, save, safely  
\_\_\_\_\_

**Use the words in sentences to show that you understand their meaning.**

23. need \_\_\_\_\_
  24. knead \_\_\_\_\_
- In questions 25 – 26, give one word for the underlined group of words.**
25. The hungry child ate the food with greed.  
\_\_\_\_\_
  26. Our third term will commence on 24<sup>th</sup> August, 2018.  
\_\_\_\_\_

**Re-write the sentences giving the opposite of the underlined words.**

27. The waiter could not read the customer's order.  
\_\_\_\_\_
28. The opposers were angry with the chairman's decision.  
\_\_\_\_\_
29. Most of the travellers started their journey at dusk.  
\_\_\_\_\_
30. You need to pay the bill before you leave the hotel, \_\_\_\_\_? (complete sensibly)  
\_\_\_\_\_

**SUB-SECTION II**

**Rewrite as instructed.**

31. Mugisha went to the bank. He wanted to pay the water bill. (Use; \_\_\_\_\_ so that \_\_\_\_\_)

---

---

32. The internet café was congested. We couldn't surf the internet. (Use: \_\_\_\_\_ too \_\_\_\_\_ to \_\_\_\_\_)

---

---

33. I read about an interesting article. It was written by Rev. Ocholo. (Rewrite using: \_\_\_\_\_ which \_\_\_\_\_)

---

---

34. If Allen learns about letter writing, she will reply to my letter. (Begin: If Allen learnt \_\_\_\_\_)

---

---

35. John intends to build a carpentry workshop after his studies. (Begin: John's \_\_\_\_\_)

---

---

36. The main speaker greeted the audience. He gave out his points. (Begin: After \_\_\_\_\_)

---

---

37. The bus reached Konge station at 2:00p.m. (Rewrite and use: \_\_\_\_\_ arrive \_\_\_\_\_)

---

---

38. The manager was not in the bank. The cashier was not in the bank. (Rewrite and use \_\_\_\_\_ and neither \_\_\_\_\_)

---

---

39. I wanted to get accommodation at Serena Hotel. I had to book earlier. (Use: \_\_\_\_\_ in order \_\_\_\_\_)

---

---

40. There is a possibility that Mirembe will receive her parcel today. (Rewrite using: \_\_\_\_\_ might \_\_\_\_\_)

---

---

41. Immediately the waiter gave me food, I asked for the bill. (Rewrite using: hardly)  
\_\_\_\_\_
42. "Shall we have a debate this Friday?" asked the candidates. (Begin: The candidates wanted \_\_\_\_\_)  
\_\_\_\_\_
43. The passenger did not tighten the seat-belt. He sustained serious injuries. (Begin: Had\_\_\_\_\_)  
\_\_\_\_\_
44. Our teacher is tall. He is intelligent. He is young. He has gone to Jinja. (Rewrite as one sentence without using "who" or "that")  
\_\_\_\_\_
45. The dough is being kneaded by the baker. (Rewrite ending: \_\_\_\_\_ the dough.)  
\_\_\_\_\_
46. Birungi's driving permit got lost. He has reported the matter to police. (Join using: \_\_\_\_\_ whose \_\_\_\_\_)  
\_\_\_\_\_
47. It was not necessary for Ronald to post a letter without a stamp. (Use: needn't)  
\_\_\_\_\_
48. We reached the workshop when the carpenter had finished varnishing the cupboard. (begin: By the time \_\_\_\_\_)  
\_\_\_\_\_
49. The motion had good points. The proposers failed to convince the members. (Join using: \_\_\_\_\_ despite \_\_\_\_\_)  
\_\_\_\_\_
50. My aunt bought rice. She also bought cassava. (Use: not only \_\_\_\_\_)  
\_\_\_\_\_

**SECTION B**

**51. Read the passage below carefully and answer the questions that follow.**

It was my first time to travel by train. This was in 2015 when my uncle Zaake told me to go on a trip with him to Tanzania. I could not imagine, it looked like a dream, time came we boarded the train at about 6:00 o'clock.

We sat in the economy class, good enough there was my classmate, Konde Moses with whom I was in Primary Three. Just as we had travelled for nearly 50kms, we had a stopover to add fuel in the train. I got chance to buy some items to eat and also ease myself.

We then steadily travelled through valleys and swamps. Many parts in Tanzania are dry as compared to those in Uganda. At this point of time my uncle had fallen asleep, I didn't wake him up because I was enjoying fun with my classmate.

When we were about to reach our destination, the conductor started checking the tickets. My uncle gave the conductor the ticket.

We reached our destination at around midnight. Good enough my brother, Luule Amosi had come to pick us at Gilgil station. As we went home, I could not say a word because I was extremely tired. The next day I woke up at midday and I had breakfast.

I spent five days in Tanzania and we returned home by air because travelling by train is quite tiring.

**Questions:-**

1. When did the writer first travel by train?

---

2. With whom did he travel to Tanzania?

---

3. For how long had they travelled when they had a stopover?

---

## **ENGLISH , P.5, P.6 & P.7 REVISION WORKBOOK**

4. Why do you think the writer enjoyed the stopover?

---

---

5. How would you compare many parts of Tanzania to those of Uganda?

---

---

6. Why do you think the writer could not wake up his uncle?

---

---

7. What happened when they were about to reach their destination?

---

---

8. Why did the writer return to Uganda by air instead of a train?

---

---

9. Give another word or group of words to mean the same us:

(i) immediately \_\_\_\_\_

(ii) boarded \_\_\_\_\_

52. (a) **Read the notice carefully and answer questions about it in full sentences.**

To all dog owners in Masanafu zone

You are informed that all dogs must be taken for vaccination at the district headquarters.

The exercise will begin on 20<sup>th</sup> August and run up to 31<sup>st</sup> of the same month.

This exercise is intended to control rabies which is on the rise.

Magombo Samaddo (District Veterinary Officer.)

**Questions:-**

(a) What is the information about?

---

---

(b) Who is being informed in the notice?

---

---

(c) How long will the exercise last?

---

---

## **ENGLISH , P.5, P.6 & P.7 REVISION WORKBOOK**

(d) What is the purpose of this exercise?

---

---

(e) By whom was the notice written?

---

---

(b) **Study the menu in Kamulali Restaurant- Kudumire sub-district and answer questions that follow in full sentences.**

Food item	Drink	Price
chapatti, beans (Kikomando)	munanansi	Sh.4,000
chips, Liver	mineral water	Sh. 8,000
sweet potatoes, fish	mountain Dew	Shs. 6,000
matooke ground nut stew	milinda Orange	Sh. 7,000
Katoogo	milk tea	Shs.3,000

### **Questions:-**

1. To which restaurant does the menu belong?

---

2. What is the most expensive food item on the menu?

---

3. How much do sweet potatoes and fish cost?

---

4. How much would Maria pay if she ate Kikomando and Katoogo?

---

5. Which food item and a drink cost seven thousand shillings?

---

53. **Read the poem and answer questions that follow in full sentences.**

Accidents! Accidents! Accidents!  
Who created you?  
I wish I knew all your relatives!  
I would sentence them to death!

Accidents! Accidents! Accidents!  
You claim lives of innocent citizens  
You don't discriminate either old or young  
The old leave the young orphaned.

You! You! You!  
Monster, the source of suffering  
The mother of lameness,  
The creator of death

Fellow citizens, let us resist the monster  
Let us rise up and defy his orders  
Motorists be more careful and disappoint his plans  
United we stand divided we fall.

**Malingo Akururat.**

**Questions:-**

1. What is the poem about?

---

2. What would the writer do if he knew all the relatives of accidents?

---

3. What do accidents do according in stanza two?

---

4. What happens to the young if their parents die in an accident?

---

5. What does the writer call accidents in stanza II?

---

6. What advice does the writer give to his fellow citizens?

---

7. What should the motorists do?

---

8. Who is the writer of the poem?

---

9. Give another word or group of words to mean the same as;

(i) claim \_\_\_\_\_  
(ii) defy \_\_\_\_\_

54. The sentences are in wrong order, arrange them to form a good story about debating.

1. Many schools don't do debating.
  2. Finally it trains leadership skills.
  3. First it builds confidence among the learners.
  4. This is because they think it wastes time.
  5. It also helps learners to improve on their communication skills.
  6. Therefore I encourage everybody to embrace debating.
  7. As they have to cover academic work only.
  8. Teachers are eager to complete the syllabus.
  9. According to me, this is not right.
  10. Because debating plays a big role in the learners academic career in different ways..

# **ENGLISH , P.5, P.6 & P.7 REVISION WORKBOOK**

55. Imagine you did not perform well in the end of term exams. The headmaster has told you to request your parents to bring you to school during the holidays. Write a letter to your parents and ask them to accept the headmaster's decision. Promise to them that you are going to work hard next term and improve on your performance. Use your address.

**PAPER THIRTEEN**

Index No.

--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--

**In each of the questions 1 to 5, fill in the blank space with a suitable word.**

1. When did you break \_\_\_\_\_ for this term's holiday?
2. I did not pay a visit to my aunt those holidays, \_\_\_\_\_ I?
3. Agong does not know how to write a formal letter and \_\_\_\_\_ does her brother, Bosco.
4. An heir is to man as an \_\_\_\_\_ is to woman.
5. \_\_\_\_\_ is to register as revision is to revise.

**In each of the questions 6 to 15, use the correct form of the word given in the brackets to complete the sentence.**

6. Teachers usually organize \_\_\_\_\_ lessons to help learners. (remedy)
7. Every letter written must have an \_\_\_\_\_.(introduce)
8. Kind \_\_\_\_\_ normally remind candidates of the remaining time during an examination. (invigilate)
9. NBS \_\_\_\_\_ a scary programme about rampant kidnap yesterday. (broadcast)
10. We \_\_\_\_\_ our sitting room yesterday as part of our responsibility.(tidy)
11. \_\_\_\_\_ is punishable by law. (poach)
12. \_\_\_\_\_ causes famine in an area. (dry)
13. The \_\_\_\_\_ of my parents has lasted for long. (marry)
14. Will Late Kalungi be buried in his \_\_\_\_\_ grounds?(ancestor)
15. The \_\_\_\_\_ of the chief was attended by a lot of mourners.(bury)

**In questions 16 – 17, write the full form of the given short forms.**

16. RIP \_\_\_\_\_
17. Hon. \_\_\_\_\_

**In questions 18 to 20, re-write the sentence giving one word for the underlined group of words.**

18. My neighbour was taken to prison because of abusing his children's rights.  
\_\_\_\_\_
19. The plant cover of that area has been affected due to bad weather.  
\_\_\_\_\_
20. That box in which a dead body is buried was bought expensively.  
\_\_\_\_\_

**In questions 21 to 22, give the plural form of the given words.**

21. responsibility \_\_\_\_\_

22. Master of ceremonies \_\_\_\_\_

**In questions 23 to 24, use each of the given words in a sentence to show that you know the difference in their meaning**

23. saloon \_\_\_\_\_

24. salon \_\_\_\_\_

**In questions 25 to 26, re-arrange the given words in alphabetical order.**

25. bury, bride, burial, bridal, degrade

26. planner, plan, envelope, envelop, signature

**In questions 27 to 28, re-write the sentences giving the opposite of the underlined words.**

27. Whenever you write accurate answers in an examination, you lose marks.

28. They will bury that dead body if they want to carry out a post mortem.

**For questions 29 and 30, re-arrange the given words to form a meaningful sentence.**

29. internet to it interesting very use is.

30. letter what activity enjoyable a is writing an formal!

### **SUB-SECTION II**

**In each of the questions 31 to 50, rewrite the sentence as instructed in the brackets.**

31. We shall enjoy our vacation after sitting primary Leaving Examination. (Rewrite using: \_\_\_going to\_\_\_)

32. They will travel to the village next month, won't they? (Rewrite ending: \_\_\_, will they?)

33. "Our teachers will be going on a tour to Kalangala Island tomorrow" the boys said. (Begin: The boys said that \_\_\_\_\_.)

34. John is writing an informal letter now. (Begin: An \_\_\_\_\_.)

**ENGLISH , P.5, P.6 & P.7 REVISION WORKBOOK**

35. I would pass PLE Mock Examination if I followed the instructions. (Rewrite using: would have)

---

36. My Pen Pal will send me an email next month. (Use: likely)

---

37. There is very little milk tea in the flask. (Use: hardly)

---

38. My friend bought a DVD. It was from Japan. It was big and expensive. (Join as one sentence without using: which/that/and)

---

39. When you write your work carefully, you will perform well. (Use: The the ).)

---

40. Both Edward and Dismus are my close friends. (Use: as well as)

---

41. Girl children ought to ignore gifts and lifts from sugar daddies if they are not to be infected with HIV/AIDS. (use: or else)

---

42. My parents are planning to attend the burial of their dear friend. (Use: look forward)

---

43. I prefer learning about marriage to learning about funeral. (Use: would rather)

---

44. Quite a good number of candidates passed their mock Exams despite being inattentive. (Begin: Whereas )

---

45. Jacinta attended the marriage ceremony in spite of being sick. (Use: but)

---

46. A television set is very good. A radio is also very good. (Join using: \_\_\_\_\_ and so \_\_\_\_\_.)
- 

47. You failed that paper and yet it was not necessary. (Rewrite using : \_\_\_\_\_ needn't have \_\_\_\_)
- 

48. Most girls prefer cooking to washing utensils. (Use: \_\_\_\_\_ more interested\_\_\_\_)
- 

49. Both my uncle and my brother did not attend burial of their paternal grandfather. (Begin: Neither \_\_\_\_\_ nor\_\_\_\_\_ )
- 

50. All the trees in our village were cut down so there was nothing to help in rain formation. (Rewrite beginning: Since\_\_\_\_)
- 

## **SECTION B.**

51. **Read the passage below carefully and answer in full sentences, the questions that follow.**

Children have various rights and responsibilities at home or at school. According to the children's statute of 1917, a child is any person below the age of eighteen. Children's rights among others include the right to food, clothing, medical care, shelter, guidance and education. In addition to the above, children are fully entitled to live with their biological parents or guardians. They also possess the right to play.

The same statute also states that children should be protected from all forms of violence, abuse, neglect and social discrimination. Children should, therefore, be allowed their freedom of speech, worship and association.

Besides their rights, children have a number of responsibilities at home or in society. They must help their parents or guardians to perform house chores which include fetching water, peeling and cooking food, washing crockery and

## **ENGLISH , P.5, P.6 & P.7 REVISION WORKBOOK**

mopping the house. This is therefore, the responsibility of both parents and guardians to teach their children acceptable behaviours in society, such as worshipping God, greeting elders, how one oneself can while in public, and attending social or cultural ceremonies such as weddings, graduations and funerals.

While at school all teachers should help school children learn to carry out the school daily routine such as class work, homework, sweeping the classrooms with the guidance of a rota, studying time tables. If all the above are well implemented, there is not doubt and worry about children understanding their rights and responsibilities so as to lead a joyful life.

**Questions:-**

1. What is the passage about?

---

---

2. According to the children's statute, who is a child?

---

---

3. Who should all teachers teach school related activities?

---

---

4. Mention any one right children are entitled to.

---

---

5. Suggest a suitable title to the passage.

---

---

(b) Read the notice below which appeared on the trunk of one of the trees along Kivubi Road and in full sentences, answer questions about it.

The Observer Newspaper, 7<sup>th</sup> August 2018.

The Management of the Observer Newspaper Ltd. Wishes all primary Seven candidates in Uganda success in their forth coming Primary Leaving Examination, 2018. We advise you to stay calm, focused, determined and make sure you

## **ENGLISH , P.5, P.6 & P.7 REVISION WORKBOOK**

remember all what your teachers taught and advised you on how to answer each question in the paper.

**WE WISH YOU FLYING COLOURS  
IN YOUR EXAMINATION.**

**MANAGEMENT**

**2/08/2018.**

**Questions:-**

1. Who has wished all candidates success?

---

2. Where was the notice pinned?

---

3. Who are being wished success?

---

4. When was the notice published?

---

5. Who is the writer of the notice?

---

- 52. The conversation below was between the Head teacher and the District Environment Officer. It took place at Bishop Hanning Speke Junior Academy – Jinja. Study it carefully and in full sentences, fill in what you think were the District Environment officer's responses.**

**Head teacher:** You are welcome, Sir.

**District Environment Officer:** \_\_\_\_\_

**Head teacher:** Good morning, Sir,

**District Environment officer:** \_\_\_\_\_

**Head teacher:** May I know who you are, Sir?

**District Environment Officer:** \_\_\_\_\_

**Head teacher:** Nice to meet you, Mr. Ken Lukyamuzi. Where do you work?

**District Environment officer:** \_\_\_\_\_

**Head teacher:** I am grateful to know that you work with NEMA, Lubanga District.

What position do you hold at Lubanga District?

**District Environment Officer:** \_\_\_\_\_

**Head teacher:** What exactly does a Public Relations Officer do at NEMA, Lubanga District?

**District Environment Officer:** \_\_\_\_\_

**Head teacher:** You address concerns raised by the public about how to protect the environment? Will you find time to come again and address my pupils and teachers on issues concerning the environment?

**District Environment Officer:** \_\_\_\_\_

**Head teacher:** On Monday, next week, that's great! I look forward to welcoming you, Sir.

**District Environment Officer:** \_\_\_\_\_

**Head teacher:** At what time do you think you will arrive at school?

**District Environment Officer:** \_\_\_\_\_

**Head teacher:** That's good if it's around 9:00a.m. It's continent time for us. Will you come along with some books about environmental protection for us?

**District Environment Officer:** \_\_\_\_\_

**Head teacher:** It's good news to hear that you will come will come with a variety of them.

**District environment Officer:** Thank you very much, Sir.

**Head teacher:** You are welcome, sir.

**53. (A) Read the poem below carefully and then answer, in FULL sentences, the questions about it.**

An oppressed child  
I do not know who can help me  
Because everything tortures me psychologically,  
Hunger, coldness, diseases and enmity  
All are my enemies.

An oppressed child  
My friends with whom I play  
Sometimes do not help me  
When I am abused.  
That I am poor.

An oppressed child  
At school, where I spend most of my hours  
I am tossed up and down by my teachers  
When I fail to give a correct answer  
That I am dull.

An oppressed child  
But great thanks to God Almighty  
All my cries and prayers have been answered  
The children's statute was introduced  
The right for all oppressed children  
Who are like me

**Bogere Naku, P.7 E**

**Questions:-**

1. What is the poem about?

---

2. What don't the friends with whom the writer plays do?

---

3. According to the poem, what happens to the writer at school?

---

4. How have the cries and prayers been answered?

---

5. How many verses are in the poem?

---

**(B) Read the following poem and in complete sentences, answer questions about it.**

What a colourful ceremony it was!  
A religious marriage for Mr. handsome  
All vehicles leading to Namirembe Cathedral  
Where the bride, Ms. Nalulungi and groom  
Were to be wedded.  
Expensive vehicles, well beautified  
Ready to transport the groom and his entourage.

What a colourful ceremony it was!  
The groom and his best man  
All dressed to kill  
In preparation for the wedding mass  
Just a few minutes away

The bride and her bridesmaid in a salon  
Where they were being beautified  
The flower girl and pageboy  
Also smartening themselves.

What a colourful ceremony it was!  
The reception at Lido Beach, Entebbe  
Well beautified by all the relatives and friends  
Ready to receive the bride and groom  
The bridesmaid and the best man  
The flower girl and the pageboy  
Together with the rest of the entourage  
The guests being seated by ushers  
With welcoming smiles on their faces  
Choirs, the troupe, band and the orchestra  
Entertaining the guest and the owners of the day  
Finally, the groom and his entourage arrived  
Being received by a very loud applause  
It was a day they shall not forget  
Throughout their lives.

**One of the family friends.**

1. Who is the bridegroom according to the poem?

# **ENGLISH , P.5, P.6 & P.7 REVISION WORKBOOK**

## **2. Where is the venue of the reception?**

---

Digitized by srujanika@gmail.com

3. Who do you think was the owner of the day?

---

Digitized by srujanika@gmail.com

4. Who will not forget this day throughout their lives?

---

Digitized by srujanika@gmail.com

## 5. Who wrote the poem?

---

Digitized by srujanika@gmail.com

**54. The sentences below are not in their correct order. Re-arrange them to form a meaningful story about Electronic Media.**

1. The most expensive of them all is a computer.
  2. Next to that is a television.
  3. It is liked by many people.
  4. Because you can even use it with the internet.
  5. There are various types of electronic media.
  6. So many people can afford to buy it.
  7. A radio is one of them.
  8. Because it is very cheap.
  9. This one is more expensive than a radio.
  10. And it can store a lot of information after typing it.

55. Adyeri Akinka is a pupil at Malaika Primary School-Tooro, P.O. Box 755, Fort Portal. On 15<sup>th</sup> August 2018, she wrote a letter of apology to her class teacher of Primary Seven North for the act of indiscipline. She was found by the prefect at lunch time beating a Primary One West pupil. The reason she gave was that the little girl had stepped on her shiny well-polished shoes. The prefect then took her and reported her to the class teacher. She told her to apologise. Below is the letter. Fill in the missing words.
- 

P.O. Box 755,

Fort Portal.

---

The \_\_\_\_\_,

Malaika Primary School,

P.O. Box 755,

Fort Portal.

Dear \_\_\_\_\_,

\_\_\_\_\_ : \_\_\_\_\_ FOR BEATING A PUPIL.

I have written this letter asking to be forgiven for \_\_\_\_\_ a

Primary One West Pupil. This happened as a result of that girl

\_\_\_\_\_ on my shiny well-polished shoes. The act took place at  
lunch time.

I beg to be forgiven for I will not misbehave again. If I repeat the act, I suggest that I should be reported by my class teacher to the head teacher's office to face an expulsion.

I will be very grateful if my apology is put under your kind consideration.

Yours truly,

\_\_\_\_\_.

**PAPER FOUTEEN**

Index No. 

--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--

**SECTION A**

**Complete the sentence with a suitable word.**

1. Having .....the National Anthem, we all sat down.
2. How many pen .....do you have?
3. It will take us .....hour to do this work.
4. They will not come to our party.....we invite them.
5. She looks .....to visiting her aunt during the forthcoming holiday.

**Complete the sentence using the correct form of the given word.**

6. .....broken the window pane, reported myself to the teacher. (has)
7. Who is the .....in this office? (receive)
8. He will get .....from his parents. (permit)
9. Who is the .....of the twins? (pretty)
10. Namuwaya was the .....in the competition.(nine)

## **ENGLISH , P.5, P.6 & P.7 REVISION WORKBOOK**

11. A helicopter .....over our school compound every morning.(fly)
12. All teachers are pleased with me because I do my work very .....(care)
13. His clothes will have been .....by the time the game ends. (tear)
14. An uncle of .....gave me this pen. (me)
15. Have you received any .....about the last child? (inform)

**Use each of the given word to form a sentence to show that you know their meanings.**

16. saloon.....
17. salon.....

**Re-arrange the given words to make a correct sentence.**

18. Nairobi is it a long here way to from.

.....

19. Crying why she is?

.....

**Write the following in full.**

20. I'll .....
21. Co.....
22. Phone .....

**Re-write each giving a single word for the underlined word or group of words.**

23. My aunt owns a large garden of fruit trees.

.....

24. We did the exercise with ease.

.....

25. Who was eaten by the female lion?

.....

**Give the opposite of the underlined.**

26. Your dress is wet.

.....

27. The geese are lost.

.....

28. What is the height of that cupboard?

.....

**Write the following in singular form.**

29. indices

.....

30. news

.....

**For questions 31 – 50, rewrite the sentences as instructed in the brackets.**

31. I met a woman from Ghana. She was tall. She was young. She was beautiful.  
(Join without using: and, from, who, whom)

.....  
.....

32. Joshua shouldn't have visited Paul at his place of work. (Join using: ....needn't...)

.....  
.....

33. We needn't join the competition at this stage. (Rewrite using: .....necessary.....)

.....

34. We haven't celebrated Easter with our parents for five years. (Rewrite ending:.....ago.)

.....

35. If Musa doesn't arrive here before noon, he will miss the exams. (Rewrite beginning: Musa will not.....)

.....  
.....

36. Immediately the storm broke, we resumed mending the boats. (Rewrite beginning: As soon as.....)

.....  
.....

37. The tailor didn't mend my uniform because he was busy. (Rewrite beginning: Had .....)

.....

38. "The mechanic must clean his garage today," said the chairman. (Rewrite beginning: The chairman said.....)

.....  
.....

## **ENGLISH , P.5, P.6 & P.7 REVISION WORKBOOK**

39. Mary's pen pal writes her a letter every month. (Rewrite beginning: A pen pal.....)  
.....
40. The school bursar gave me this receipt. (Rewrite beginning: This receipt.....)  
.....
41. Tonado didn't revise for the examination. Katono didn't revise for the examination. (Join using:.....and neither.....)  
.....  
.....
42. The brides arrived late at the church. The wedding ceremony ended in time. (Join beginning: Although.....)  
.....
43. The passengers paid the fare before entering into the bus. (Rewrite beginning: By the time.....)  
.....  
.....
44. Jinja is a long way from Lugazi. (Rewrite using:.....far.....)  
.....
45. The deceased was buried in Mangala in Bukomero. (Write a question to the above response)  
.....
46. The environmentalists may plant fruit trees here. The environmentalists may plant flowers here. (Join using:.....either.....)  
.....  
.....
47. The supervisor put out scripts in the return envelope. The supervisor sealed the return envelope. (Join the sentences beginning: Having.....)  
.....  
.....
48. The dancers didn't attend the function. The singers didn't attend the function. (Join the sentences beginning: Both.....)  
.....  
.....
49. The farmers have sold off all their cows, sheep, goats and chickens. (Rewrite and replace the underlined words with a single word.)  
.....  
.....
50. Who read the evening Luganda news? (Rewrite beginning: By .....)  
.....

**ENGLISH , P.5, P.6 & P.7 REVISION WORKBOOK**  
**SECTION B.**

51. **Below is a notice which appeared in Orumuri Newspaper of 10<sup>th</sup> April, 2019, page 11. Study it very carefully then answer questions about it in full sentences.**

**TESO DAY AND BOARDING PRIMARY SCHOOL- SOROTI MUNICIPALITY**

The above stated school wishes to remind all primary seven parents that there shall be a class meeting for them. The meeting is intended to guide you on how to select senior one choices for your children. It will take place in the main hall on 15<sup>th</sup> April 2019 from 10:00 a.m to 4:00 p.m.

Remember that any parent with school fees balance should first clear with the accounts office before coming for the meeting.

Please, keep time.

We thank you for choosing the right school for your child.

**MANAGEMENT**

**8<sup>TH</sup> APRIL 2019**

**Questions:-**

1. Where did the notice above appear?

.....

2. Who are being reminded?

.....

3. How long with the meeting last?

.....

4. What are some parents advised to do before coming for the meeting.

.....

5. When did the notice appear in the newspaper?

.....

6. When did the meeting take place?

.....

7. When was the notice written?

.....

8. Who wrote the notice?

.....

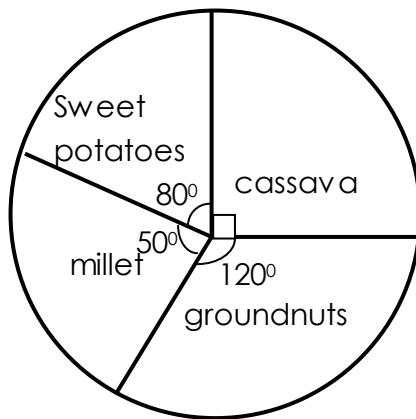
9. Where did the meeting take place?

.....

10. What is the purpose of the meeting?

.....

52. (A). Study the information below about the farmers who grow different types of crops in Kamusala village, Serere district.



**Questions:-**

1. How many crops are shown on the pie chart above?

.....

2. Which crop do you think is grown by most farmers according to the pie chart?

.....

3. What percentage of farmers grow cassava crop in this village?

.....

4. From which village are these farmers?

.....

5. What is the information above about?

.....

**(B). The advertisement below appeared on the trunk of a mango tree in Muyega Zone A village, on Saturday, 27<sup>th</sup> April 2019. Study it carefully and then answer questions about it in full sentences.**

**DELICIOUS CAKES, BREAD AND CONFECTIONERY CO. LTD UGANDA.**

We are hereby informing residents of this village that we have brought very delicious cakes, bread and confectionery for you to enjoy during Christmas

# **ENGLISH , P.5, P.6 & P.7 REVISION WORKBOOK**

festive season. For one to purchase any of our products, one can visit our shop located in Kabalaga Plot 29, Kasaga Rd. opposite Benz Garage. It is open Monday- Saturday from about 8:00a.m to almost 9:00p.m  
For details or inquiries contact us on 0414 444 666

# Sales Manager

20<sup>th</sup> April 2019

## Questions:

- ## 1. Where did the advertisement above appear?

<sup>1</sup> See, e.g., *United States v. Ladd*, 10 F.3d 1250, 1254 (11th Cir. 1993) (“[A]nyone who has ever been to a library or a bookstore can attest that it is not unusual for people to borrow books and never return them.”).

- ## 2. Who are advertising the products mentioned?

.....

- ### **3. When are the products to be consumed?**

.....

- #### **4. Where can one find this company?**

.....

5. Why do you think this company does operate on Sunday?

.....

53. Imagine you are preparing for Primary Leaving Examination Mock 2019. Write a composition about how you are preparing for it. Mention any five strategies you are putting in place to make you become the best in that examination. Mention the aggregate you wish to get in it and in Primary Leaving Examination. It must be about 200 words.

54. Imagine you joined your dream secondary school for senior one, and you have started studies. Write a letter to the class teacher of your former primary school informing him/her that you successfully got a place in that school for senior one on merit. Tell him/her that you have even started studies and that you are coping with life in a new environment. Thank him/her and other teachers for all they did for your success in joining your dream school. Promise them that you will not let them down in discipline and academics. Use your school address.

**55. Below is a dialogue between the Head teacher and the District Inspector of Schools. Study it very carefully and fill in the missing statements.**

Head teacher: You are most welcome, Sir.

D.I.S. : .....

Head teacher: Good afternoon, Sir.

D.I.S : .....

Head teacher : May I help you, please?

D.I.S : .....

Head teacher : Thank you, how can I help you?

D.I.S : .....

Head teacher : You are speaking to the Head teacher of this school.

D.I.S : .....

Head teacher : There are two thousand seven hundred ninety-nine pupils in my school.

D.I.S : .....

Head teacher : No, not all of them have paid school fees.

D.I.S : .....

Head teacher : I think they haven't due to several reasons.

D.I.S : .....

Head teacher : Yes, all my parents are civil servants.

D.I.S : .....

Head teacher : Yes , I have only qualified teachers in my school.

D.I.S : .....

Head teacher : You are very welcome, Sir.

**PAPER FIFTEEN**

INDEX NUMBER:

--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--

**SECTION A: (40 Marks)****Use the correct form of the word in brackets.**

1. \_\_\_\_\_ is one of the major activities in our sub county. (farm)

2. There has been a lot of \_\_\_\_\_ in this debate. (argue)

3. Most people in the \_\_\_\_\_ Uganda are very friendly. (north)

4. How many places have you \_\_\_\_\_ this holiday? (tour)

5. Amos crossed the road \_\_\_\_\_ but he survived the accident. (care)

**In questions 6 – 11, fill in the most suitable word to complete each sentence.**

6. Whenever we bought meat at home, eagles always flew \_\_\_\_\_ our house.

7. All the primary seven candidates look forward \_\_\_\_\_ sitting PLE in November.

8. Yoweri \_\_\_\_\_ into the swimming pool and swam very fast.

9. You need to clean that \_\_\_\_\_ or else all your dogs will die of multiple diseases.

10. You \_\_\_\_\_ I have to read and get degrees.

11. \_\_\_\_\_ has that man punished the young girl?

**In questions 12 – 13, arrange the words below in alphabetical order.**

12. prayerful , playerful , prayer , player

**Write the following abbreviations in full.**

14. St. \_\_\_\_\_

15. i.e. \_\_\_\_\_

16. shan't \_\_\_\_\_

**Rewrite the sentences below giving the plural form of the underlined words.**16. The papyrus the woman brought was not good at all.17. The show which we attended last December was very interesting.18. The house of a deer should be cleaned regularly.**In questions 19 – 21, punctuate the sentences correctly.**

19. mulwana said the president was a real business man

20. how good is that boy

21. i have a pen a ruler a mattress a basin and a tin

## **ENGLISH , P.5, P.6 & P.7 REVISION WORKBOOK**

**In questions 22 – 23, rewrite giving the opposite of the underlined words.**

22. We saw the goose in the cage at Entebbe Airport.
- 

23. Why did you celebrate that victory?
- 

24. Moses did the examination carefully.
- 

**In questions 25 – 26, use the given words to construct sentences to show that you know their meanings.**

25. still \_\_\_\_\_

26. steal \_\_\_\_\_

**Rewrite the sentences below giving the opposite of the underlined words.**

27. Most farmers always go to their gardens at dusk.
- 

28. He owns that factory.
- 

**Arrange the following words to form correct and meaningful sentences.**

29. skin mumps disease not is a.
- 

30. care children for also should animals.
- 

### **SUB SECTION II**

**In questions 31 – 50, re-write as instructed in brackets.**

31. That big farm over there belongs to the village chief. (Begin: The village chief ....)
- 

32. Daniella likes jogging but not as much as playing tennis.

(Re-write using: .....prefer.....)

---

33. Geradine went to Mubende yesterday. (Form a suitable question to the statement)
- 

34. Mr. Kabazi is repairing all the school chairs.

(Re-write the sentence using: .....being.....)

---

35. Muzahura intends to stay here for his holidays.

(Re-write the sentence using: ..... Intention.....)

---

36. UCC is likely to block our SIM cards if we don't register them in time.  
(Re-write the sentence using: ..... looking forward .....)
- 
37. In spite of the fact that we prepared for this examination, we have found it very hard. (Re- write the sentence using: .....but.....)
- 
38. Kajoba and Wakatama played loud music at night.  
(Re-write the sentence using: ..... and so .....)
- 
39. We started learning English in Primary One and we are still learning.  
(Re-write using: ..... since.....)
- 
40. Neither the pupils nor the teachers listened to the head teacher.  
(Write two separate sentences)
- 
41. Kako doesn't want to play games. He wants to revise his notes.  
(Join as one sentence using: ..... would rather ..... than.....)
- 
42. Kalema would have visited us had we invited him to the party.  
(Re-write the sentences using: ..... will.....)
- 
43. The guests will reach home when it has started raining.  
(Re-write the sentence beginning: By the .....)
- 
44. Mundu was a very good man. Everybody loved the way he did his things.  
(Join as one sentence using: ..... such ..... that .....)
- 
45. "What are you doing here, Tendo?" asked mother. (Begin: Mother wanted .....)
-

46. This is the city. Most rich people live in it. (Join as one sentence using:....which ....)

---

---

47. To get dough, you mix flour, sugar, eggs and water.  
(Rewrite using.....a mixture.....)

---

---

48. Kagona went to school very late. The teacher punished him. (Begin:  
Going.....)

---

---

49. Immediately we sensed danger, we left the main hall. (Use: .....as soon as.....)

---

---

50. We ate a lot of food, we became very strong. (Begin: The more.....)

---

---

### **SECTION B:**

51. **Read the passage below and answer questions that follow in full sentences.**

At the moment, Uganda is facing a number of challenges ranging from politics, economy, terrorism, corruption and worst of all drought.

Today, many districts in Uganda are facing drought. This started in May in 2016 and as a result, people have lost lives and the animals too. This is because they can no longer get water and food.

In districts like Ntoroko, Karamoja, Amuria, Kumi, Moroto, Amolata and many others have not received reasonable rain since 2016. In Busoga region, the situation is not any different with thousands going hungry. Getting water for cooking or bathing has become very difficult for several families. A 20 – litre jerrycan of water in Busoga region costs one thousand shillings.

Normadic pastoralists in Karamoja sub-region have been forced to cross into Lango sub-region in search for pasture and water after thousands of their cattle have starved to death.

In Sebei, maize takes seven months to mature instead of four and this is because of very little rain. Sugar prices have increased greatly with a kilogramme going for five thousand shillings. This is due to shortage in sugarcane production.

The little rain also received in some districts has made more harm than good. It comes with hailstorms, thunderstorm to mention but a few.

It destroys people's crops, people lose their lives and houses are brought down and this has left many wondering what to do next.

However, NEMA says that the changing weather is as a result of human activities while the ministry of Agriculture explains that it is as a result of late 2016 rains. Cultivation began late and the prolonged dry season from June to December.

People have appealed to the government for help especially providing them with food relief. The government has also availed them with posho and rice imported from China. Now the government is looking for about \$200 million to manage the negative effects of climate change and hunger in the next three years.

### **Questions**

1. What do you think the story is about?

---

---

2. When did the drought start?

---

---

3. Why have people lost their lives?

---

---

4. Why have sugar prices gone up?

---

---

5. How dangerous is the little rain received in some districts?

---

---

6. Where are the nomadic pastoralists found according to the passage?

---

---

7. Why is a 20-litre jerrycan of water being sold at one thousand shillings in the Busoga region?

---

---

8. What is the cause of the changing weather according to NEMA?

---

---

9. Write NEMA in full.

---

---

10. Suggest a suitable title to the story?

---

---

52. (A) Read the article below which appeared in the Weekly Observer of Saturday 18<sup>th</sup> March, 2019 and then answer the questions that follow in the sentences.

It was last Friday, 17<sup>th</sup> March, 2019 in the morning when a thief came and broke into my neighbour's house. His aim was to steal the television set which was in the sitting room. However, before he could come out, the neighbours heard and woke up immediately to save the television. The neighbours made a lot of noise which attracted other people who assisted in arresting the thief. He was taken to police station and charged with theft and imprisoned for six months. Everybody was argued to be mindful of their security in their communities.

### **Questions**

1. Where was the above notice found?

---

---

2. Whose house was broken into?

---

---

3. How was the television saved?

---

---

4. What crime was he charged with?

---

---

5. On which day did the article appear in the Weekly Observer?

- 
- 52 (B) **Below is a puzzle of five words. Use the clues given to complete it correctly.**

			1		2		3
	4						
		5					

**Across**

4. the condition in the air above the earth such as rain, wind or temperature at a particular time in a particular area  
5. meat of a cow

**Down**

1. your female child  
2. a skilled and trained cook who works in hotel  
3. Mister

**53. The announcement below appeared in Mukeeze newspaper on 20<sup>th</sup> April, 2019.**

**Read it carefully and in full sentences, answer the questions that follow.**

The family of the Late Kadoki Jonathan of Katwe village, Masaka, with deep sorrows announces the untimely death of their son Solomon Kadoki who died in a motor accident yesterday on Kampala – Masaka Road. There will be a requiem mass tomorrow 21<sup>st</sup> April, 2019 at St. Anthony Methodist Church at 12:00noon.

The funeral service will take place at their ancestral home on 22<sup>nd</sup> April, 2019 at 2:00pm. Informed are friends, relatives and in-laws. May the soul of the deceased rest in peace.

*George Kadoki Jr.*

19/04/2019

**Questions**

1. In which newspaper did the announcement appear?

---

2. Who is being informed in the announcement?

---

3. What is the name of the deceased?

---

4. Who wrote the death announcement on behalf of the family?

---

5. What claimed the life of the deceased?

---

6. In which district is the deceased's family?

---

7. What will take place at St. Anthony Methodist Church?

---

8. Where will the deceased be buried?

---

9. Where is the relationship between George Kadoki Jr. and the deceased?

---

10. Give another word or a group of words to mean **deceased**

---



---

54. **Below is a fees deposit slip. Study it very carefully and then answer the questions that follow in full sentences.**

**ARK PRIMARY SCHOOL**

Account Number: 01103500637848

dfcu Bank

DATE: 3/05/2019

BRANCH: Nsambya

NAME OF SCHOOL: Ark Primary School

PUPIL'S NAME: Namuli Jane PUPIL'S No: 444 CLASS: P.7

DEPOSITOR'S NAME: Tebigwayo Ronald

DEPOSITOR' MOBILE NO: 0753 233 005

PAYMENT MODE:  ✓ CASH  CHEQUE

Notes and Coins	Amount	No.	Fee type	Tick
Shs. 50,000	Shs.	1	School fees	✓
Shs. 20,000	100,000	2	Computer fees	
Shs. 10,000	Shs. 20,000	3	ID fees	
Shs. 5,000	Shs.	4	Examination fees	
Shs. 2,000	100,000	5	Boarding fees	
Shs. 1,000	Shs. 10,000	6	Library fees	
Shs. 500	Shs. 4,000	7	Mechanical fees	
Shs. 200	Shs. 7,000	8	Development fees	
Shs. 100	-	9	Research fees	
<b>Total cash</b>	-	10	Others	
	-			
	-			

### **Questions**

1. Whose fees deposit slip is shown above?

---

2. In which bank was the above fees deposit slip?

---



---

3. When was the slip used?

---

---

4. By whom was the fees deposited?

---

---

5. How much money was deposited?

---

---

6. What was the money for?

---

---

7. How was the money paid?

---

---

8. If there is any problem in the slip, how can the bank contact the depositor?

---

---

9. How much money did he pay using 50,000 notes?

---

---

10. How many digits are in the school account number?

---

---

55. Using your school address, write a letter to your friend inviting him / her to come and attend your sister's wedding ceremony. Tell him / her that the ceremony will take place on 12<sup>th</sup> July, 2019 at Christ the King Church in Mbuya beginning at 12:00 noon. Also inform him / her that after the church service, all the guests will be hosted to a colourful reception at Serena Hotel Gardens at 5:00p.m.

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

**ENGLISH , P.5, P.6 & P.7 REVISION WORKBOOK**

**PAPER SEVENTEEN****SECTION A**

**In each of the questions 1 to 5, fill in the blank space with the suitable word.**

1. Neither my father \_\_\_\_\_ my mother will come to visit me.
2. In addition to being big, Maria is \_\_\_\_\_ tall.
3. Christianity and Islam \_\_\_\_\_ some of the religions in Uganda.
4. Number five is \_\_\_\_\_ four and six.
5. One of the twin sisters \_\_\_\_\_ sick.

**In each of the questions 6 to 15, use the correct form of the word given in brackets to complete the sentences.**

6. When did your school last \_\_\_\_\_ the zoo? (visit)
7. \_\_\_\_\_ is increasingly becoming a popular language in Uganda. (China)
8. The late Abiriga was \_\_\_\_\_ several times before he died. (shoot)
9. The stranger used his Identity card to \_\_\_\_\_ himself. (identity)
10. There are \_\_\_\_\_ jobs than the qualified people in Uganda. (few)
11. My sister got married to a \_\_\_\_\_ doctor. (profession)
12. The lady who sang in the choir is a great \_\_\_\_\_. (music)
13. The butcher is \_\_\_\_\_ the meat into small pieces. (cut)
14. Well behaved candidates \_\_\_\_\_ fall their examinations. (rare)
15. Everybody in the audience was very \_\_\_\_\_ because of the humerous actors. (attention)

**In questions 16 and 17, write the following abbreviations in full.**

16. FIFA \_\_\_\_\_
17. P.T.O \_\_\_\_\_

**In each of the questions 18 to 20, re-write the sentences giving one word for the underlined group of words.**

18. This year's world cup attracted many people walking on the streets.
19. UNEB has already registered the students who will sit this year's Primary Leaving Examinations.
20. The fire brigade police ran to the scene of the accident in a hurry.

## **ENGLISH , P.5, P.6 & P.7 REVISION WORKBOOK**

**In questions 21 and 22, give the plural form of the given words.**

21. louse \_\_\_\_\_

22. guard-of-honour \_\_\_\_\_

**In questions 23 and 24, use each of the given words in a sentences to show that you can know the difference in their meaning.**

23. sit \_\_\_\_\_

24. seat \_\_\_\_\_

**In questions 25 and 26, rearrange the given words in alphabetical order.**

25. goal                      penalty                      referee                      defender

26. liver                      litter                      leaver                      liner

**In questions 27 and 28, re-write the sentences giving the opposite of the underlined words.**

27. The teacher instructed the candidates to re-write all the sentences they answered correctly.

28. The late bird catches a worm.

**In questions 29 and 30, re-arrange the given words to form a correct sentence.**

29. advised police avoid to alone walking at night The us

30. Participate Did in Uganda World Cup the ?

**In each of the questions 31 to 50, re-write the sentence as instructed in the brackets.**

31. I must go on a study tour to the Western Uganda. (Begin: I intend.....)

32. If the candidate concentrates on her work, she will pass with flying colours. (Re-write the sentence using: .....concentrated.....)

33. Messi represented his country in the world cup, didn't he?

(Re-write the sentence ending: ..... did he?)

34. The referee says that the ball is out of play.

(Re-write the sentence ending: "....., " the referee says.)

**ENGLISH , P.5, P.6 & P.7 REVISION WORKBOOK**

35. Our family car is very small. It cannot carry all the family members. (Re-write as one sentence using: .....so.....that.....)

---

36. The kidnappers grabbed the boy. He was on his way to school. (Re-write as one sentence using:.....while.....)

---

37. Bobi Wine is a very good singer. (re-write the sentence beginning: What.....!)

---

38. Nobody knew that he was present because he sat at the back of the room. (Re-write the sentence using : .....presence.....)

---

39. None of the registered candidates was absent on the examination days. (Re-write the sentence beginning: All .....

---

40. The Uganda National Anthem was sung by the police officers. (Re-write the sentence using: The police officers.....)

---

41. Kabuto is greedy. Sebbuto is very greedy.  
(Re-write as one sentence using: .....greedier.....)

---

42. Amin is a former President of Uganda. Binaisa is also a former president of Uganda. (Re-write as one sentence using: .....and so.....)

---

43. The education officer led the delegation to China. (Re-write the sentence ending: ..... by the Education Officer.)

---

44. The Nursery girl prefers watching cartoons to talk shows. (Re-write the sentence using: .....has more interest .....

---

45. Our class has not done any test for three months. (Re-write the sentence ending: ..... ago.)

---

46. It was not necessary for the police to shoot at the crowd. (Re-write the sentence using: ..... needn't have .....)

---

47. We are going to have a P.E lesson after break. . (Re-write the sentence using: ..... looking forward .....)

---

48. The members of Parliament stood up as soon as the President entered.  
(Re-write the sentence using: No sooner .....)

---

49. If Ugandans do not register their SIM cards, they will be disconnected. (Re-write the sentence beginning: Unless.....)

---

50. Those goats belong to the gatekeeper. (Re-write the sentence using:  
That.....)

---

## **SECTION B**

**51. Carefully read the following passage and then in full sentences, answer the questions that follow.**

World cup is one of the many Games and Sports activities that are organized internationally to take place every after four calendar years. This activity generates a lot of excitement across the different age categories although it is more so for the youths. This excitement is noticeable almost in every place where people congregate.

This year's World Cup was hosted by Russia; one of the Asian countries located in the far North-Eastern part of Africa.

The process of selecting the countries to participate in the World Cup kicks off with a faceoff between and among the different countries in each continent. Uganda was not lucky to qualify to represent Africa in this highly regarded activity. However, Tunisia, Senegal, Egypt and Morocco fought tooth and nail to book a slot in this fair championship.

During the time of world cup, it was very common to find fans watching matches taking place from as far as the different football fields in Russia. It was during this period that sports betting companies boosted their incomes because of the big numbers of fans who tried their luck as they bet between one team and another. Many fans came out singing songs of joy because of winning money although there were still many who came out regretting ever taking such a risky decision. The entire world was looking forward to witnessing a final match when one great team would be declared victorious.

This is always a rare moment when the lucky country celebrates and keeps custody of the golden cup for the next four years. We celebrate our fore fathers who got the inspiration to start this competition. Long live World Cup! Long live the Football game.

**Questions**

1. Suggest one reason why Uganda did not represent Africa in World Cup, 2018.

---

2. Apart from Africa, which other continent is mentioned in the passage?

---

3. According to the passage, why do you think many Egyptians are very happy with their national team?

---

4. Which method is used to select the countries to represent Africa in the World Cup championship?

---

5. How long will the winning country keep the golden cup?

---

6. According to the passage, why do some fans sing songs of joy?

---

7. Why is the author encouraging us to celebrate our fore fathers?

---

8. Give another meaning for each of the following words.
  - (i) **victorious** \_\_\_\_\_
  - (ii) **congregate** \_\_\_\_\_
9. Give a suitable title to the passage.

**52(a) Below is a notice published by the Mayor's office. Carefully read it and answer the questions that follow.**

The Mayor of Entebbe Municipality, His Worship Vincent Kayanja De Paul, with pleasure, invites the community of Entebbe to witness an official launch of the Training Programme jointly supported by Wuhan – City China and Entebbe Uganda. This will take place on 20<sup>th</sup> October, 2018 at Lake Victoria School beginning at 9:00a.m. Come let's support the young people by skilling them.

**Questions**

1. According to the notice, give the name of the political head of Entebbe Municipality.

---

2. Who is being invited to witness the launch of the training programme?

---

3. Apart from Entebbe, which other city supported the programme?

---

4. How is the 20<sup>th</sup> August, 2018 important to the community of Entebbe?

---

5. How are the young people in Entebbe going to benefit from this programme?

---

**52 (b) Read the poem below carefully and answer in full sentences the questions that follow.**

I

Tears of grief! Tears of grief!  
Tears in the valleys! Tears in the hills!  
Tears in the village! Tears in the town!  
It is nothing but tears everywhere!  
Of the kidnap and killings of the innocent!

II

My neighbour's 14 year old daughter  
Was kidnapped and brutally killed.  
Although much money was asked and given  
As ransom put by the ruthless murderers!

**III**

To give the money or not to give  
May not save the life of the innocent  
Since the major aim of the killers  
Is to see nothing but more tears.

**IV**

I think time is today and now  
As true Ugandan nationalists, I imagine  
To say a big no to more tears  
Because enough is enough!

**Deborah Nakiyingi Joy**

**Questions**

1. According to the poet, what is the source of tears in the community?

---

2. What happened to the 14 year old neighbour's daughter?

---

3. Why do you think sending money to the kidnappers would not save the girl?

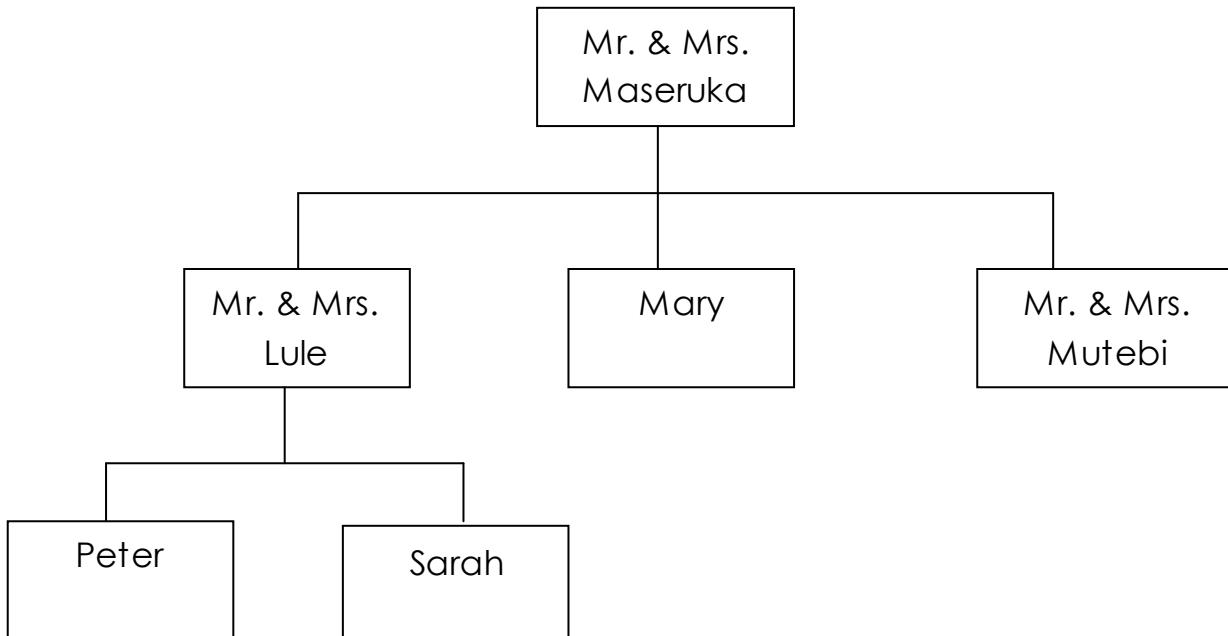
---

4. What call is Deborah Nakiyingi making to all Ugandan nationalists?

---

5. Suggest a suitable title to the poem.

**53 (a) Below is a family tree for the Maseruka extended family. Carefully study it and in full sentences, answer the questions that follow.**



**Questions**

1. Name any one of the grandchildren of Mr. and Mrs. Maseruka.

---

2. Of the three children of Mr. and Mrs. Maseruka, who is likely not to be a married person?

---

3. What is the family relationship between Sarah and Mr. and Mrs. Lule?

---

4. How is Peter related to Mary in the family tree?

---

5. Apart from Mr. Lule, who is the other brother to Mary?

---

**53 (b) The table below indicates the number of votes obtained by the candidates for the Women Councillors during the elections that took place on Tuesday, 3<sup>rd</sup> July, 2018 at Kakeeka polling station. Study it carefully and answer the questions that follow.**

	Name of the candidates	Number of votes obtained	Position
1	Nakiguli Jackline	57	1st
2	Imelda Kabagambe	25	4th
3	Suzan Akol	36	3rd
4	Aisha Namaganda	44	2nd
5	Jalia Namata	00	5th

**Questions**

1. How many candidates participated in this election?

---

2. Why do you think Jalia Namata did not get any votes?

---

3. According to the results, who is likely to be the happiest candidate?

---

4. According to the results, who do you think was declared as the new woman councilor for Kakeeka area?

---

5. What is the average number of votes obtained by the candidates?

---

**54. The following is a conversation that took place between Daniel and Wycliffe as they walked to school on a Monday morning. Study it carefully and fill in what you think are the correct responses / statements for Daniel.**

- Daniel : \_\_\_\_\_
- Wycliffe : Good morning, Daniel. How are you today?
- Daniel : \_\_\_\_\_
- Wycliffe : Not fine! What is the matter?
- Daniel : \_\_\_\_\_
- Wycliffe : Oh! No! Such stories of girls' kidnap are very common today. How old was your sister?
- Daniel : \_\_\_\_\_
- Wycliffe : Imagine! A young girl of eight years!
- Daniel : \_\_\_\_\_
- Wycliffe : Yes, it was good to report the matter to the nearest police post.
- Daniel : \_\_\_\_\_
- Wycliffe : Oh! That is good! Where is that suspect being kept?
- Daniel : \_\_\_\_\_
- Wycliffe : But police should take him out of the cells and produce him in court immediately.
- Daniel : \_\_\_\_\_
- Wycliffe : You are right to have fears. Many police officers are corrupted to release suspects before facing justice.
- Daniel : \_\_\_\_\_
- Wycliffe : Do you think the suspect will get a trash sentence?
- Daniel : \_\_\_\_\_

**55. Assuming that you are a pupil of Namagambi Junior School, P.O. Box 66, Masindi.**

**Write a letter to the Head Teacher of Namagambi Secondary School, applying for a vacancy in Senior One. Tell him that you did your PLE and scored aggregate four. Also tell him that you are very good at games and sports.**

---

---

---

---

---

# PAPER EIGHTEEN

## SECTION A

### SUB-SECTION I

**Use the correct form of the word in brackets to complete the sentences.**

1. How many \_\_\_\_\_ do you have in your school? (dictionary)
  2. Our school \_\_\_\_\_ has already distributed story books to the children. (library)
  3. She has \_\_\_\_\_ a beautiful picture. (draw)
  4. Mrs. Kateete often \_\_\_\_\_ us religious Education. (teach)
  5. The weather is \_\_\_\_\_ today . (sun)
  6. Kamoja is \_\_\_\_\_ than his brother, Anguyo. (fat)

**Fill in the gaps with a suitable word or group of words.**

## **ENGLISH , P.5, P.6 & P.7 REVISION WORKBOOK**

7. Playing with broken glasses \_\_\_\_\_ very dangerous to children.
8. Both Kim \_\_\_\_\_ Lena are hardworking pupils.
9. I cannot clean my brother's wound \_\_\_\_\_ gloves.
10. An owl has produced a beautiful \_\_\_\_\_.

**Rearrange the words in the order of the alphabet.**

11. dogs, rats, cats, animals, birds.  
\_\_\_\_\_

12. kitten, kettle, kit, kites, knits.  
\_\_\_\_\_

**Use each of the following words in a sentence to show that you know the meaning.**

13. cut  
\_\_\_\_\_

14. cat  
\_\_\_\_\_

**Write these abbreviations in full.**

15. Mr. \_\_\_\_\_
16. Sch. \_\_\_\_\_

**Rearrange the following words to make meaningful sentences.**

17. officer driver police the reckless has arrested traffic a  
\_\_\_\_\_

18. mangoes your in who compound planted school?  
\_\_\_\_\_

**Give the plural form of these words.**

19. toothbrush  
\_\_\_\_\_

20. pigsty  
\_\_\_\_\_

**Rewrite the following sentences giving the opposite of the underlined words.**

21. A lot of vehicles are parked at the entrance of the petrol station.  
\_\_\_\_\_

22. When my uncle had an accident, he developed internal bleeding.  
\_\_\_\_\_

**Give a single word for the underlined group of words.**

23. Kamagu is a person who treats people's teeth.  
\_\_\_\_\_

24. Our dog has produced two young ones.  
\_\_\_\_\_

**Punctuate the following sentences correctly.**

25. what a terrible accident it was james brother said

---

---

26. the teacher of social studies said Nairobi is the capital city of kenya

---

---

27. insects like mosquitoes bed bugs cockroaches ticks lice and scorpions make people sick.

---

---

**Complete the following sentences correctly.**

28. Kittens are to cats as \_\_\_\_\_ are to cows.

29. An early bird \_\_\_\_\_.

30. Most politicians these days are as cunning as \_\_\_\_\_.

**SUB-SECTION II**

**Rewrite the following sentences as instructed in the brackets.**

31. I am a Ugandan. You are a Ugandan. (Join the two sentences beginning:  
Both \_\_\_\_\_)

---

---

32. Karamura was sick. He went to hospital. (Join the two sentences  
using \_\_\_\_\_ because \_\_\_\_\_)

---

---

33. The children are sweeping the compound. (Rewrite the sentence and end  
\_\_\_\_\_ the children.)

---

---

34. A lion eats meat. (Form a suitable question for this statement)

---

---

35. February comes after January. (Rewrite using \_\_\_\_\_ before \_\_\_\_\_)

---

36. I don't like cats the way I like dogs. (Rewrite the sentence  
using \_\_\_\_\_ prefer \_\_\_\_\_)

---

---

37. My brother was watching cartoons. My uncle was washing our car. (Begin:  
While \_\_\_\_\_)

---

---

**ENGLISH , P.5, P.6 & P.7 REVISION WORKBOOK**

38. That ball belongs to the boys. It is \_\_\_\_\_.(complete the sentence correctly)

---

---

39. Road transport is expensive but air transport is very expensive. (Rewrite the sentence using \_\_\_\_\_ than \_\_\_\_\_)

---

---

40. There is little food in the dish. (Rewrite and use \_\_\_\_\_ any \_\_\_\_\_)

---

---

41. That is the man. He caused an accident. (Join using: \_\_\_\_\_ who \_\_\_\_\_)

---

---

42. If you eat green vegetables, you will grow healthy. (Use \_\_\_\_\_ unless \_\_\_\_\_)

---

---

43. Our school is very clean. Every passerby admires it. (Join using \_\_\_\_\_ so \_\_\_\_\_ that \_\_\_\_\_)

---

---

44. Let's clean the compound, \_\_\_\_\_? (supply a suitable question tag)

---

---

45. Puppies are playful. Kittens are playful too. (Join the two sentences using \_\_\_\_\_ as \_\_\_\_\_ as \_\_\_\_\_)

---

---

46. This porridge is very hot. The baby cannot eat it. (Join using \_\_\_\_\_ too to \_\_\_\_\_)

---

---

47. This is the school. My sister studies from this school. (Join using \_\_\_\_\_ where \_\_\_\_\_)

---

---

48. Kyamutwe Primary School has a very strong perimeter wall. (Begin: What \_\_\_\_\_!)

---

---

49. It's a long way from Kampala to Kabale. (Use: \_\_\_\_\_ far \_\_\_\_\_)

---

---

50. Once bitten, \_\_\_\_\_.(complete this proverb)

---

---

**SECTION B.**

**51. Read the passage below and answer the questions in full sentences.**

My name is Kaguso Isaac. I come from Mirambi village in Ibanda District. My father is Mr. Kangire, a farmer. He owns a very big piece of land. He keeps a lot of cattle on one part of the land and the rest, he plants there crops seasonally.

In our family, we are three boys and five girls. Each person has a role to play. My elder brother washes the farm car every Saturday while two of us clean the compound and water the flower garden. We make sure that all fallen leaves are collected and burnt in a pit. Our elder sister supervises all the home chores while the two girls are in charge of the meals. They make sure that food is well prepared and served at the

proper time. The youngest girl in the family also does some work. She takes care of her dolls. She arranges them after her play time. My father's duty is to take care of the cattle. He checks them regularly to see if they have ticks. He sprays them fortnightly and all our animals look very healthy.

We have a cousin who helps our father to monitor the milking parlour. He makes sure that the three workers on the farm carry out their jobs very well. They milk the cows, clean the cans and take the cattle to drink water.

Whenever Aunt Martha visits us, she trains all the girls how to make ghee. We don't stay with our mother more often because she is a politician and she travels a lot. However, she provides money to cater for all our needs. I love my family because we all work together and our home is peaceful.

**Questions:-**

- (a) What is the story about?

---

- (b) Who is the writer of this story?

---

- (c) Where does the writer come from?

---

(d) Who is the writer's father?

---

---

(e) How many children are in this family?

---

---

(f) Who washes the car every Saturday?

---

---

(g) Why doesn't the writer stay with the mother?

---

---

(h) What role do the workers play on the farm?

---

---

(i) Why does the writer love his family?

---

---

(j) Write a suitable title of this passage.

---

---

52. **The notice below appeared on Rutooma village Council Notice Board. Study it and use it to answer the questions that follow in full sentences.**

**ALERT**

**ALERT**

**ALERT**

This is to invite all residents of Rutooma village that there will be a security meeting on 23<sup>rd</sup> September 2017 at 4:00p.m in the council hall. The issues to discuss include:

- ❖ The roles of people who keep peace and security.
- ❖ How to keep/promote peace and security.
- ❖ Importance of promoting peace and security.
- ❖ Introducing new security personnel.

Please, attend in person without fail.

**RSVP: Mr. Muntu Kit**

**Tel: 0703202021**

**(SECRETARY FOR DEFENCE)**

**12<sup>TH</sup> August 2017.**

**Questions:-**

(a) What is the notice about?

---

---

(b) Where did the notice appear?

---

---

(c) When was the notice written?

---

---

(d) Why was the notice written?

---

---

(e) To whom was the notice written?

---

---

(f) When will the meeting take place?

---

---

(g) Who wrote the notice?

---

---

(h) At what time will the meeting begin?

---

---

(i) How many issues are to be discussed during the meeting?

---

---

(j) How should one reach the secretary in case one fails to attend the meeting?

---

---

53. **Read the conversation below between Laura and Caroline which took place as they were going to their school Kasangati Bright Grammar School.**

**Laura:** Good morning, Caroline.

**Caroline:** Good morning, my friend.

**Laura:** How was your night? Did you sleep well?

**Caroline:** No, I didn't. Even now, I am not well. I am on medication.

**Laura:** Oh! No! Tell me. What happened? Are you scared of the examinations?

**Caroline:** My dear! I don't know. I had a terrible running stomach. I didn't sleep throughout the night. I kept on visiting the toilet, time after time. I hope I will not dose in the exam.

## **ENGLISH , P.5, P.6 & P.7 REVISION WORKBOOK**

- Laura:** May be you have malaria, you need to check.
- Caroline:** No, I don't think so. I suspect the food I ate last night. It was dirty and tasteless.
- Laura:** Oh, my God! How did that happen?
- Caroline:** We have a new maid. She is really dirty! She doesn't know ways of keeping food safe.
- Laura:** You mean she doesn't cook food well? Does she serve food which is half cooked?
- Caroline:** Sometimes she does. You know, she has just come from the village. Even when you tell her to wash her hands after using the toilet, she seems not to see the point.
- Laura:** Yes, I can understand. But she needs to know that hygiene is part of life and it is key to health. For example, covering food before serving it prevents food from being contaminated. Flies will not be attracted to it.
- 
- Caroline:** My friend, this girl forgets very quickly. I don't know how many times I have told her the importance of keeping food safe. Even my mother, who is a doctor, has summoned her severally but she doesn't learn easily.
- Laura:** You see, maids are like that. Sometimes you think they are born by the same mother and have gone through the same training college.
- Caroline:** You are very right but this one is unique. She repeats the same mistakes. I don't know whether she will learn or not.
- Laura:** She will learn! Just give her time, keeping telling her to avoid food contamination by being hygienically upright. By the way how long have you been with her?
- Caroline:** Just one month but hasn't grasped any concept concerning cleanliness and sanitation.
- Laura:** That's a short period. I am sure she will learn if you don't get tired of telling her the importance of hygiene. It doesn't matter even when you repeat the statements or rebuke all the time.
- Caroline:** Thank you very much for the advice and encouragement.
- Laura:** Let us hurry for the exam, the bell has been rung. I wish you success and quick recovery. Please, don't forget to take your medicine.
- Caroline:** Thank you dear, bye.

**Questions:-**

(a) Where did the conversation take place?

---

---

(b) Who are talking in the conversation?

---

---

(c) To which school do they go?

---

---

(d) Who was sick according to the conversation ?

---

---

(e) Why couldn't Caroline sleep the whole night?

---

---

(f) What is Caroline's mother's occupation by profession?

---

---

(g) How long has the maid stayed in this family, according to the conversation?

---

---

(h) According to the conversation, what is key to health?

---

---

(i) Who has summoned the maid severally?

---

---

**54. Rearrange the following sentences to make a meaningful story.**

(a) For example, some plants are eaten as food.

(b) These categories include domestic and wild animals.

(c) Which is a source of revenue to the government.

(d) Our environment is very important to human life if we take care of it.

(e) While others give us medicine that treat diseases like malaria and cough.

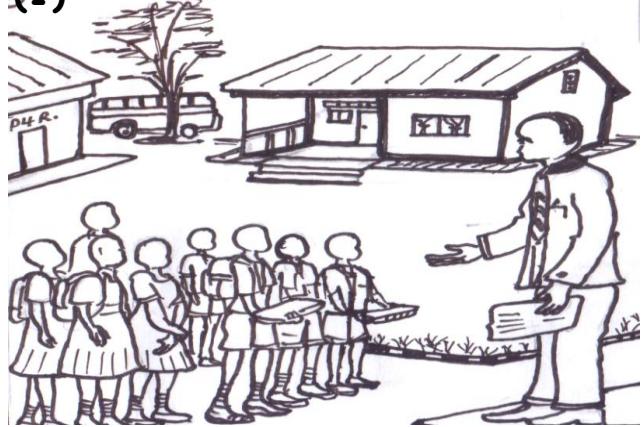
(f) This environment consists of plants and animals.

## **ENGLISH , P.5, P.6 & P.7 REVISION WORKBOOK**

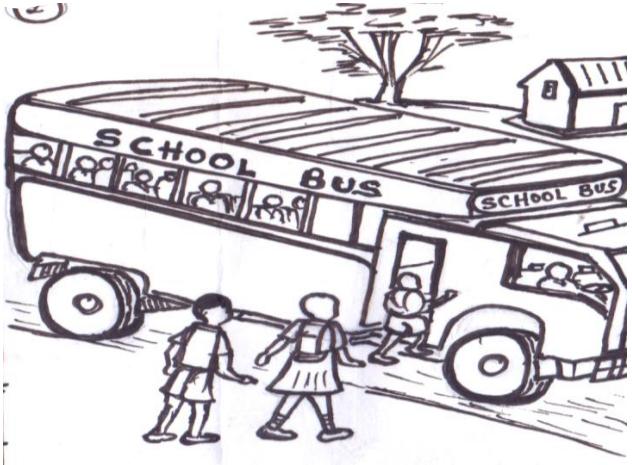
- (g) Domestic animals like dogs provide security while cows are kept for milk and meat production.
  - (h) Plants and animals have a lot of functions.
  - (i) As for animals, they are grouped into two categories.
  - (j) However wild animals like elephants, Zebras, rhinos, lions and hippos attract tourists.
- 
- 
- 
- 
- 
- 
- 
- 
- 
- 
- 
- 
- 
- 
- 
- 
- 
- 
- 
- 
- 
- 
- 
- 
- 
- 

**55. Below are the pictures numbered 1 – 6, study them and write a sentence about each to tell what is happening.**

**(1)**



**(2)**



**(3)**



**(4)**



**(5)**



**(6)**



1. \_\_\_\_\_

2. \_\_\_\_\_

3. \_\_\_\_\_

4. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
5. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
6. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

7. According to the pictures, what class had a trip?

---

---

8. Where did the pupils have their lunch?

---

---

9. How many buses did the pupils use?

---

---

10. According to **picture 4**, why is the girl holding a stick?

---

---

## **PAPER NINETEEN**

### **SECTION A**

#### **SUB-SECTION I**

**In numbers 1 – 10, use the word in brackets to complete the sentence.**

1. The headmaster advised the community members to stop environmental..... .(degrade)
2. .....is a very profitable occupation. (carpenter)
3. You should write .....if you want to complete that work. (quick)
4. Our teacher usually cleans the chalkboard..... .(self)
5. The network here is better than the one we .....in our main hall last year. (to have)
6. Tell your friends to maintain .....in their class. (clean)

7. One of my uncles may.....a European because he now lives in Europe.(marriage)
8. Is it true that your home is .....to the school than to the market?
9. The school administration has allowed all pupils to send their news articles to the New Vision..... (edit)
10. When writing work about alphabetical order, you should do it..... . (care)

**Fill in the gaps with a word or group of words.**

11. ....an interesting topic “Marriage” is!
12. James .....advise if anyone asked him about vehicle repair.
13. My aunt owns not only a shop .....also a farm in Mukono.
14. How much money did you .....for that new dress?
15. The weather has been bad .....last evening.

**In numbers 18 and 17, re-write the sentence giving the plural form of the underlined words.**

16. In the gang of thieves, even the chief could not escape.

.....

.....

17. Show me the dairy where you bought this milk.

.....

.....

18. Read the dictionary if you want to improve spelling.

.....

.....

**Write in alphabetical order.**

19. friction, fiction, fix, fruit, firm

.....

20. engine, boot, wiper, guard, wheel

.....

**In numbers 21 and 22, give the opposite of the underlined word.**

21. Success in all exams is a result of one's attention towards work.

.....

22. Do you know that most youth don't respect their mothers-in-law?

.....

**For numbers 23 – 25 , write in full form.**

23. CD. .....

24. O'clock.....

25. P.O .....

**In questions 26 and 27, arrange the words to make meaningful sentences.**

26. aid gave our me nurse first.

.....

27. new and minister who for the technology science is education?

.....

.....

**For numbers 28 and 29, use these words to make meaningful sentences.**

28. breathe .....

29. breath .....

30. There are some topics remaining for us to cover the syllabus, .....?(supply a question tag.)

.....

## **SECTION B II**

**Rewrite the following sentences as instructed in brackets.**

31. The road is very slippery. The vehicles cannot move without any difficulty. (Join using.....too.....)

.....

.....

32. I would have been glad if there had been democracy in this country. (Rewrite using .....was .....)

.....

.....

33. You needn't have switched off the internet. (Rewrite using.....necessary...)

.....

.....

## ENGLISH , P.5, P.6 & P.7 REVISION WORKBOOK

34. A dictionary gives meaning of words. A dictionary shows pronunciation. (Join using.....not only.....)

.....  
.....

35. The bank manager was impolite. The teller was also impolite. (Join beginning: Neither.....)

.....  
.....

36. "What did your uncle eat at the party, Joel?" asked Enock. (Use.....wanted to know.....)

.....  
.....

37. It is good to keep peace and security in school. (Rewrite ending.....is good.)

.....  
.....

38. What is she using to play with her friends? (Write the sentence in plural form?)

.....  
.....

39. Lumberjacks have not cut down most trees.(Begin: Most.....)

.....  
.....

40. I would rather stay here than go out to play. (Rewrite using:  
It.....better.....instead.....)

.....  
.....

41. The boarders are watching a television. They began at 3:00p.m up to now. (Join using.....since.....)

.....  
.....

42. It is such an organized family that they cannot accept to give away their daughter without dowry. (Write as two separate sentences)

.....  
.....

43. The butcher bought a bull that was brown. It was big and from South Africa. (Join the sentences putting the adjectives in order.....)

.....  
.....  
.....  
**44.** Anthony wrote a letter. Jude wrote a letter. (Join using.....and so.....)

.....  
.....

.....  
.....  
**45.** In spite of the fact that she was given clear direction, she missed the way.  
(Use:.....although.....)

.....  
.....

.....  
.....  
**46.** When they took many tablets, they felt better. (Begin: The more.....)

.....  
.....

.....  
.....  
**47.** We are going to write our mock examinations. (Rewrite using.....looking forward.....)

.....  
.....

.....  
.....  
**48.** That is the chief. I got advice from him. (Join using.....whom.....)

.....  
.....

.....  
.....  
**49.** Children usually sing the anthems before entering their classrooms.  
(Use.....often.....)

.....  
.....

.....  
.....  
**50.** Whereas Namukome is humble, her sister uses bad language. (Join using.....but.....)

.....  
.....

### **SECTION B.**

**51.** Read the passage below and answer questions that follow in full sentences.

Last term, the primary six classes had a debate. It took place in the school main hall starting at 2:00p.m. On that Friday, all the pupils gathered in the main hall ready for the debate.

The chairperson Hon. Nkudulu took his seat, the secretary Hon. Kalanda also sat and the timekeeper. Next were the main speakers and as soon as they were ready, the debate began. The motion was "Man is the worst enemy of himself" The chairperson welcomed members for keeping time and thanked them for turning up in big numbers. After he had said all that, the national anthem was sung and next, he invited the proposers to give their views. Hon. Mbwiti took the floor first. He explained the motion and took his side or argument. Among the views he raised was that man has made a lot of chemicals and machines in his inventions which in turn have claimed his life. He added that man has cut trees to a large extent hence causing draught and famine for himself. Through bush burning, man has contributed to soil erosion and soil infertility. With all the above, he concluded that man is the worst enemy of himself.

After the proposer, was an opposer Hon. Ludo. She started by saying that the proposers had failed to interpret the motion. Man is not an enemy of himself. These proposers have failed to know that the motion is wrong. Actually, man has tried to improve himself through any opportunity. He has improved technology and worked so hard to change this environment. For example some places would not be accessible if man did not connect it using road. Furthermore, man has set up internet and telephones to make life better. How can one say that he is the worst enemy of himself?

It was a hot debateful of cheering and drumming. The chairman had challenges to control the house. Finally, the opposers won the debate according to the results from the secretary.

**Questions:-**

- a) What is the passage about?

.....  
.....

- b) On which day did the debate take place?

.....  
.....

- c) Where did the debate take place?

.....  
.....

- d) Who chaired this debate according to the passage?

.....  
.....

e) What was the motion of the debate?

.....  
.....

f) Why do you think the chairperson thanked the members?

.....  
.....

g) What was the result of cutting down trees as stated in the story?

.....  
.....

**Give another word to mean:**

h) Connect

.....

i) Views .....

j) Suggest a suitable title to this story.

.....  
.....

**52. Read the poem below and answer the questions that follow.**

**I AM A JOURNALIST**

I am a journalist for sure  
Born with it but has no cure  
And I like the way I do it  
Though with the pain a bit  
Ever as busy as a bee  
But just because I want to be  
The journalist they know.

Today, I'll be in Uganda  
Tomorrow found in Rwanda  
Surely must go to France  
Sometimes for a dance  
But all looking for news  
To be the journalist with views.

Wake up at dawn  
What a week!  
I feel so sick!  
Becoming very weak!  
Oh! Looking for news  
Searching for facts  
Having lunch in packets  
If not in buckets.

I am a journalist  
Who must change my life  
Before I get a wife  
Because I work so hard  
And life is always bad  
Without the food I want  
It makes my heart to pant  
Yet, I am a journalist they know.

**Questions:-**

a) What is the poem about?

.....  
.....

b) How many stanzas does the poem have?

.....  
.....

c) To which insect does the writer compare himself?

.....  
.....

d) According to the poem, to which country does the writer go after Uganda.

.....  
.....

e) What is the writer searching for in his journeys?

.....  
.....

f) What do you think happens to the writer when he feels sick?

g) Write down any two rhyming words in the poem.

(i).....

(ii).....

h) At what time does the writer wake up?

---

---

53. Read the information below which appeared on the school notice board of Greenhill Academy Primary-Kibuli and answer in full sentence the questions.

### **INVITATION**

Kyakuwa Primary school invites all Parents whose children are in Primary Seven 2017 to an academic interaction due to take place on Thursday 7<sup>th</sup> July 2017. It will take place in the school main hall beginning at 2:00p.m to 6:00p.m. There will be a special speaker to the parents and candidates on the topic "Balancing Education and Family challenges", by Loy Langa (Mrs.)

Keep time and come with a friend.

For any clarification,

Contact 0772001241

Head of School

June 30<sup>th</sup>, 2017.

#### **Questions:-**

a) What is the notice about?

---

---

b) Where did the notice appear according to the message?

---

---

c) Who is inviting parents to the academic interaction?

---

---

d) Which school is inviting the parents?

---

---

e) Who exactly is being invited?

.....  
.....

f) At what time will the activities start?

.....  
.....

g) Who is likely to be the guest speaker?

.....  
.....

h) When will the academic interaction take place?

.....  
.....

i) When will the function end according to the message?

.....  
.....

j) Write down the topic for the day.

.....  
.....

**54. Re-arrange the sentences below to make a meaningful story.**

- a. As soon as they satisfied, they start travelling back home.
- b. Despite getting tired, the pilgrims begin planning for the following year's journey.
- c. These prayers usually begin at 9:00a.m.
- d. They travel to Namugongo for the martyrs celebrations.
- e. Those without cars either board taxis or walk back home.
- f. Immediately after prayers, people start eating and drinking.
- g. Every 3<sup>rd</sup> June, Christians in Uganda and outside travel to Namugongo.
- h. Whoever walks home reaches when they are tired.
- i. At this place, the main aim is to pray for the martyrs.
- j. And end at around 1:00p.m

.....  
.....  
.....  
.....

- 55. Write a letter applying for a place in your school of first choice. Mention some of the marks you got in any exam and the activities you enjoy.**

## **PAPER TWENTY**

### **SECTION A**

#### **SUBSECTION I**

**For questions 1 – 10, use the correct form of the given word to fill the space.**

1. Jumba is the \_\_\_\_\_ of the triplets. (dirty)
2. Juma suffered from a \_\_\_\_\_ disease last term. (virus)
3. All the \_\_\_\_\_ refugees have camped near Lake Mburo. (Africa)
4. June is the \_\_\_\_\_ month of the year. (dry)
5. Who has \_\_\_\_\_ my mango? (eat)
6. The tailor has refused to mend the \_\_\_\_\_ uniforms. (tear)
7. The performance ended so \_\_\_\_\_ that the audience was left unsatisfied. (sudden)
8. The mother got worried when the baby passed out \_\_\_\_\_ stool. (water)
9. The eggs have hatched into ten tiny \_\_\_\_\_. (goose)
10. Farmers plant their gardens during the \_\_\_\_\_ season. (rain)

**For questions 11 – 15, fill in the most suitable word.**

11. The late Joakim Kyazinga was buried in a wooden \_\_\_\_\_
12. Most village children go to school \_\_\_\_\_ foot.

## **ENGLISH , P.5, P.6 & P.7 REVISION WORKBOOK**

13. Much as I attended the requiem, \_\_\_\_\_ didn't attend the burial.
14. Wazibugu, the \_\_\_\_\_, hasn't baked any cakes today.
15. After being \_\_\_\_\_ from St. Matia Primary School because of theft, Moses failed to get a place in any other school.

### **Arrange the following words in ABCorder.**

16. forks, folks, fox, fork, foxes

---

17. bartender, mouse, donkey, rebellion, urn

---

### **Use the following words in meaningful sentences to show that you know their difference.**

18. cock \_\_\_\_\_

19. cork \_\_\_\_\_

### **Rewrite the following sentences giving the opposite of the underlined words.**

20. We have postponed our journey because the lake is calm today.

---

21. Timothy has been admitted to hospital, he is being attended to by his aunt.

---

### **Change the following sentences to plural form.**

22. The trolley over there is broken.

---

23. Remove the papyrus from there.

---

### **Write the short forms of the following.**

24. Subscriber identification module \_\_\_\_\_

25. Compact disc \_\_\_\_\_

### **Rewrite the following giving a single word for the underlined group of words.**

26. Katulume was arrested for illegal killing of animals in the game park.

---

27. All the children ready to sit the national exams have gone for medical checkup.

---

### **Rearrange the following words to make meaningful sentences.**

28. the no stones has mason to today no.

---

29. driving Kapere arrested was for careless?

---

30. once bitten \_\_\_\_\_ (complete the proverb)

---

**SUB-SECTION II**

**For numbers 31 – 50, rewrite the sentences as instructed in the brackets.**

31. Most candidates want to score aggregate four. They don't read questions twice.  
(Join beginning: Whereas\_\_\_\_\_)

---

---

32. As soon as we started eating, the waitress brought us the bill. (Use: \_\_\_\_\_ no sooner \_\_\_\_\_)

---

---

33. I didn't complete my holiday work because I didn't plan well. (Begin: If \_\_\_\_\_)

---

---

34. None of the candidates in my stream eats mutton. (Rewrite the sentence beginning: All\_\_\_\_\_)

---

---

35. If you don't read those instructions, you will fail the questions. (Use: \_\_\_ or else \_\_\_)

---

---

36. I must plan my holiday activities he said before the holiday starts.(Punctuate the sentence correctly)

---

---

37. People rig votes much as it is unlawful. (Use: \_\_\_\_\_ but \_\_\_\_\_)

---

---

38. We need sanity in our school. (Begin: What \_\_\_\_\_)

---

---

39. The obedient boy thanked his mother after he had drunk tea. (Join beginning: Having\_\_\_\_\_)

---

---

40. These two teachers are not lazy. (Begin: Neither\_\_\_\_\_)

---

---

41. People use ropes to tether goats. (Use: \_\_\_\_\_ are used for \_\_\_\_\_)

---

---

42. I am not a bird. I can't fly in the air. (Rewrite as one using: \_\_\_\_\_ would \_\_\_\_\_)

---

---

43. The English examination consists of two sections. (Use: \_\_\_\_\_ comprise \_\_\_\_\_)

---

---

44. Nagawa scored ninety-five percent in each subject. She is here with us. (Join using: \_\_\_\_\_ who \_\_\_\_\_)

---

---

45. A thesaurus gives the spellings of words. It also gives the meaning of words. (Join the sentences using: \_\_\_\_\_ not only \_\_\_\_\_)

---

---

46. The pre-mock exams were very easy. Candidates could not fail them. (Join using: \_\_\_\_\_ too \_\_\_\_\_ to \_\_\_\_\_)

---

---

47. We shall harvest our crops before the rainy season starts. (Begin: By the time \_\_\_\_\_)

---

---

48. The residents held security meetings. They wanted to strengthen security in their area. (Rewrite as one sentence using : \_\_\_\_\_ so that \_\_\_\_\_)

---

---

49. You started wasting time at 9:00a.m. You are still doing it. (Join using: \_\_\_\_\_ since \_\_\_\_\_)

---

---

50. He sold me four rotten mangoes yesterday. (Begin: I bought \_\_\_\_\_)

---

---

**SECTION B.**

**51. Study the Radio Programme below and then in full sentences, answer the questions that follow.**

Radio station	Programme	Presenter	Time
Uganda Broad-casting corporation	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Announcement</li> <li>● News in swahilui</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Kityo Robert</li> <li>● Masembe John</li> </ul>	1:00 – 1:30 p.m 1:30 – 2:00 p.m
Buganda broadcasting station	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● News in Luganda</li> </ul>	Ssembire Mark	1:30 – 2:30 p.m
KFM	Politics and Current Affairs	Andrew Mwenda	8:00 am - 1:00pm
Capital Radio	Safety on the Road	Nakitende Sophia	10:30a.m
Top Radio	Christian Focus	Pastor Good	10:00 – 12:00 noon

a) How many radio stations are shown on the table?

---



---

b) Which radio station do you think is government owned?

---



---

c) According to the table, who presents God related issues?

---



---

d) Which programme is aired by KFM?

---



---

e) Which radio station broadcasts the longest programme?

---



---

f) Which programme is aired from 10:30 a.m to 11:00 a.m?

---



---

g) How many programmes last for thirty minutes?

---



---

h) Who presents two programmes at ago according to the table?

---

i) Which station do you think is owned by Buganda kingdom?

---

j) If you wish to listen to obituaries, which station should you tune?

---

52. The notice below appeared in the Observe Daily Newspaper on 19<sup>th</sup> September, 2017, page 15. Study it very carefully and then in full sentences, answer the questions that follow.

Uganda Revenue Authority, P.O. Box 1466, Kampala, Uganda proudly presents a public lecture entitled: Taxation Awareness to all Ugandans.

Facilitator: Prof Onvuche Pal from Nigeria.

Date: 20<sup>th</sup> September, 2017 from 10:00 a.m to 4:00 p.m

Venue: parliamentary Chambers

Entrance: Free

All the Business Community and all those that wish Uganda well are invited to attend this lecture.

Dr. Yigwe Ondra  
(Public Relations Officer)  
18<sup>th</sup> September, 2017.

**Questions:-**

a) What is the notice about?

---

b) When did the lecture take place?

---

c) Which was the venue of the event?

---

d) How long did the event last?

---

e) Who were invited to attend that lecture according to the notice?

---

f) Where did the notice appear according to the information?

---

# ENGLISH , P.5, P.6 & P.7 REVISION WORKBOOK

g) What was the role of Prof Onvuche Pa from Nigeria?

h) Write in full (i) Prof \_\_\_\_\_  
(ii) Dr. \_\_\_\_\_

i) Who wrote this notice?

53. **The information below is a cover page of an examination paper. Study it carefully and answer the questions in full sentences.**



UGANDA NATIONAL EXAMINATIONS BOARD

PRIMARY LEAVING EXAMINATION

**Time Allowed: 2 hours 15 minutes.**

ENGLISH

**Index No.**

0	3	2	4	2	1	0	1	4
---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---

**Candidates Name:** KAKEMBO ROBERT .....

**Candidates' Signature:** ..... Kakembo Robert

Namugezi Junior School-Mpanda

**School Name:** .....

**District Name:** Mukono .....

Read the following instructions carefully:

1. This paper has two sections: A and B. section A has 50 questions and section B has 5 questions. The paper has 15 pages altogether.
2. Answer all questions. All answers to both sections A and B must be written in the spaces provided.
3. All answers must be written using a blue or black ball-point pen or ink. Any work written in pencil other than graphs, pictures and diagrams will not be marked.
4. Unnecessary changes of work may lead to loss of marks.
5. Any hand writing that cannot easily be read may lead to loss of marks.
6. Do not fill anything in the boxes indicated: "For Examiners' Use only" and those inside the question paper.

FOR EXAMINERS' USE ONLY		
Qn. No.	MARKS	EXR'S NO.
1 – 10		
11 – 20		
21 – 30		
31 – 40		
41 – 50		
51		
52		
53		
54		
55		
Total		

©2015 Uganda National Examinations Board

**ENGLISH , P.5, P.6 & P.7 REVISION WORKBOOK**

(a) For which year was the paper?

---

---

(b) How many sections has the paper?

---

---

(c) How long did this examination take?

---

---

(d) Which body sets the above examination?

---

---

(e) Why would David not be marked if he used red ink?

---

---

(f) What was the index number of the candidate?

---

---

(g) In which district is Namugezi Junior School –Mpenda?

---

---

(h) What is the first name of the candidate?

---

---

(i) How many pages did this examination paper have?

---

---

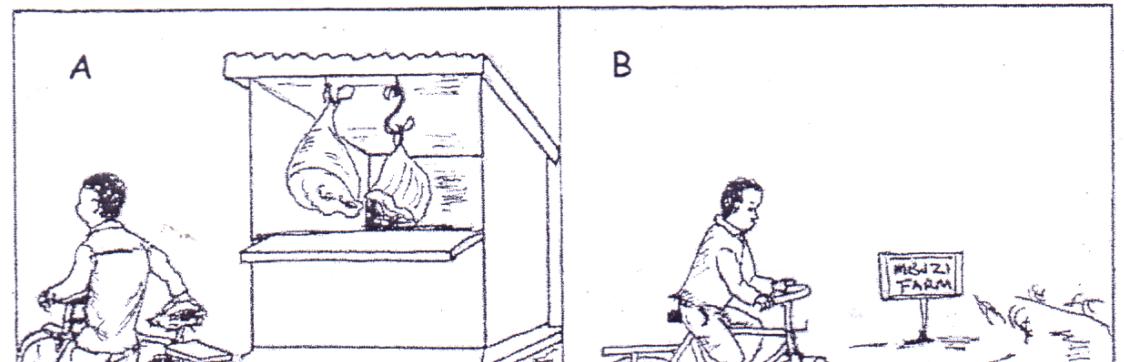
(j) Write this abbreviation in full. ©

---

---

54. The pictures below tell a story. Study them carefully and write a sentence about each describing what is happening there. You may use the given words.

**arrest, paying , speeding, rolling, butcher's, manager, rope, goat  
shed, showing, carrier, riding**



**Questions:-**

- a) Picture A

---

---

b) Picture B

---

---

c) Picture C

---

---

d) Picture D

---

---

e) Picture E

---

---

f) Picture F

---

---

g) What is the man in A?

---

---

h) Why do you think the man's act in E was cruel?

---

---

i) What do you think will happen to the man after F?

---

---

j) Suggest a suitable title to the story.

---

---

55. Below is a letter that Nabuguzi Imelda wrote to her Head teacher. Carefully study it and use the given words in the table to complete it correctly.

**Headteacher, Examination, Green valley School, English, referees,  
nationality, yours, good, scored, application**

---

P.O. Box 4567,  
Bweyale, Kiryandongo.  
19<sup>th</sup> September, 2017.

The Head teacher,  
Mighty Orphanage School,  
P.O. Box 9009,  
Kampala, Uganda.

Dear \_\_\_\_\_,

**RE: FOR A PLACE IN SENIOR ONE.**

I humbly apply for a place in senior one in your school. I have completed my Primary Leaving \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_ as follows;

_____	D1
MATHEMATICS	D2
SOCIAL STUDIES	D2
SCIENCE	D2
AGGREGATE	8
GRADE	1

I am a Ugandan by \_\_\_\_\_ aged fourteen. Outside class, I was \_\_\_\_\_ at netball, drama and debate. For more information about me.

Kindly contact one of my \_\_\_\_\_ Mr. Bonga James.  
I shall be very grateful if my application is put into consideration.

\_\_\_\_\_  
faithfully,

**Nabugazi Imelda,  
NABUGUZI IMELDA.**

**PAPER TWENTY ONE**  
**SECTION A**

**SUB-SECTION B**

**In each of the questions 1 to 5, fill in the blank space with a suitable word.**

1. How many .....of paraffin did you buy?

2. Our neighbour's son ate .....apple and sweet bananas at the party.
3. This jacket is thick .....to make me warm in this cold weather.
4. John likes swimming and so.....Peter.
5. The bus .....down on its way to Gulu.

**In each of the questions 6 to 15, use the correct form of the word given in brackets to complete the sentence.**

6. Very many mourners attended the .....of the late Sebana Kizito.(bury)
7. By the time the police arrived, the chief.....the money in the bush. (hide)
8. The policeman shouted .....at the bus driver who refused to stop the bus. (angry)
9. Children need proper .....from parents and teachers.(guide)
10. Of the three girls, Eleanor is the .....(beauty)
11. In the previous English Premier League Season, Manchester Football Team played the matches.....(skill)
12. Our headteacher's .....is so difficult that no one can attempt to forge it. (sign)
13. The chairman's .....to postpone the meeting was rejected by all the members. (propose)
14. What a .....flower this is! (love)
15. Many people fear Joseph Kony because of his.....(cruel)

**In questions 16 and 17, re-arrange the given words to form a correct sentence.**

16. rang while the bathing phone were you.  
.....

17. into thieves the break when the did shop?  
.....

**In questions 18 and 19, Use each of the given words in a sentence to show that you know the difference in their meaning.**

18. uncle  
.....

19. ankle  
.....

**In questions 20 and 21, re-arrange the words in alphabetical order.**

20. wiper, saddle, brake, indicator  
.....

21. chief, chef, thief, scarf

.....

**For numbers 22 – 24, write each of the abbreviations in full.**

22. cert .....

23. a.m .....

24. CD .....

**In questions 25 and 26, rewrite giving the opposite form of the underlined word.**

25. Our school has the best actors in the district.

.....

26. My father is fatter than my uncle.

.....

**In questions 27 and 28, rewrite the sentences giving one word for the underlined group of words.**

27. I cannot take a seat with my wife's mother.

.....

28. Orumuri newspaper is published once a week.

.....

**In questions 29 and 30, give the plural form of each of the given words.**

29. leaf .....

30. man-servant .....

## **SUBSECTION II**

**For questions 30 -50, write the sentences as instructed in bracket.**

31. The farmer was weak. He couldn't carry a full bag of maize. (Rewrite using:.....too.....to.....)

.....

.....

32. This is the leader. I told you about him. (Join using.....whom.....)

.....

.....

33. My father owns 100 cows. My uncle also owns 100 cows. (Rewrite beginning: Both.....)

.....

.....

34. Kato is richer than Kakuru. (Use.....not as.....)

.....

35. As soon as the children crossed the road, the speeding car passed behind them. (Rewrite the sentence beginning: No sooner.....)
- .....  
.....
36. They are very tired. They can't continue running. (Re-write the sentences using:.....because .....)
- .....  
.....
37. By whom was this glass broken? (Begin: Who.....)
- .....
38. Keith is a very beautiful girl. (Rewrite the sentence beginning: How .....!)
- .....
39. All the P.7 candidates will pass the English paper. (Rewrite the sentences beginning:None.....)
- .....
40. If you don't apologise, I won't forgive you. (Rewrite the sentence beginning: Unless.....)
- .....
41. They travelled a long distance on their tour to Kasese, .....? (rewrite and supply a suitable question tag)
- .....  
.....
42. Muburi doesn't drink beer. Biruka doesn't drink beer. (Join the sentences using.....and neither.....)
- .....  
.....
43. Bena did not go to America. He did not have a passport (Begin: If.....)
- .....  
.....
44. James likes growing soya beans more than grazing cows. (Rewrite the sentence using:.....would rather.....)
- .....  
.....
45. You should look after your health. (Rewrite the sentence beginning: One .....)
- .....
46. Their principal is a Ghanaian? (Rewrite the sentence beginning: A Principal.....)
- .....

47. I intend to buy a phone during my vacation. (Rewrite the sentence beginning: My.....)  
.....
48. I am related to those three boys. (Rewrite the sentence ending.....relatives)  
.....
49. Samson is very dull. He cannot join P.7. (Join the sentences joining.....enough....)  
.....
50. All that glitters.....(Rewrite and complete the proverb)  
.....

**SECTION B.**

51. **Read the following passage and answer the questions that follow in full sentences.**

**The Life of Maria Nyanjara.**

An old Mukiga woman with a lined face and wrinkled arm was sitting on a mat. Maria was determined to be heard, despite the men of the village.

Barefoot, she was dressed in a brown and blue apron tucked in at her waist and her hair in a scarf. She had placed herself just outside the circle of half a dozen of male elders assembled to greet the visitors from Kabale town.

The guest officials from the Farmers Forum Association and the head of the village sat on benches. Beyond the inner circle, thirty to fifty men, women and lots of children looked on, sometimes shouting comments. On the four sides of the courtyard were mud-walled buildings with rust brown corrugated iron roofs.

Maria, one of the oldest and with one of the largest farms felt that she had a right to speak. "I am 69 years old. I have three daughters and seven sons," she said. "My husband died sometime ago. I grow sorghum, cabbages, beans as well as Irish potatoes on two farms totaling to 15 hectare. I also have a poultry farm. I'm happy with the price paid for my Irish potatoes but I think I should be given pesticides, boots and protective clothes. "I should also be paid cash for my crops," she complained.

**Questions:-**

- (a) What is the name of the old woman?  
.....
- (b) How many children did she have?  
.....
- (c) Where was the old woman sitting?  
.....
- (d) What was the old woman wearing?  
.....
- (e) Why did she think that she had a right to talk?  
.....
- (f) Why do you think the old woman is in need of pesticides?  
.....
- (g) From which town did the guest officials come?  
.....
- (h) According to you, why do you think, the old woman managed to look after her children despite her husband's death?  
.....
- (i) Give another word or group of words with the same meaning as those underlined in the passage.  
(i)assembled .....  
(ii)beyond .....

**52. Study the programme below and answer the questions that follow in full sentences.**

Ntungamo Primary School

P.7 concert to be held in the school

Main chapel on Monday, 12<sup>th</sup> August 2017

At 10:30a.m

Guest of honour: District Inspector of schools

Ntungamo District

**PROGRAMME**

10:15A.M - Guest of honour arrives

1:30a.m – National Anthem

10:40 a.m – School Anthem by school band

10:45 a.m – Welcome by the master of ceremonies

10:50a.m - Welcome song by the school choir

11:00 a.m – Traditional drumming by P.5

11: 05 a.m - Poem read by the assistant head boy

- 11:15a.m - Song by P.4  
11:30 a.m - Two pieces played by the school orchestra  
11:40a.m - Poems on the theme of AIDS read by P.6.  
11:45 a.m - Song by P.7  
12:00noon – Two pieces played by the school band.  
12:15a.m - Play : the Serpent by Drama Society.  
12:25p.m - The master of ceremonies invites the guest of honour to address the audience  
12:30a.m - Farewell song by the school choir.  
12:35p.m - Guest of honour leaves.

**Questions:-**

(a) What is the programme about?

.....

(b) Who will be the guest of honour?

.....

(c) Which item will be going on at 11:40a.m?

.....

At what time will the master of ceremonies invite the guest of honour to address the audience?

.....

.....

(d) What is the play about?

.....

(e) How many items will be performed by the school choir?

.....

.....

(f) According to the programme, which class will do the traditional drumming?

.....

.....

(g) What will be the theme of the concert?

.....

.....

(h) What activity will assistant head boy do?

.....

.....

(i) When will the concert be staged?

.....

.....

**53. Read the poem below carefully and in full sentences answer the questions that follow.**

Child Abuse! Child Abuse!  
Corporal punishments,  
Child labour  
Defilement and  
Neglect  
Teachers, parents, drug addicts  
Please, stop it!

At below 18,  
We are dying,  
We are sick,  
We are on streets  
We are stigmatized and isolated.  
Children, let's stand up  
And seek justice through  
The church,  
The court,  
The school authorities and  
Community leaders.

**MALING JOEL.**

**Questions:-**

- (a) What is the poem about?

.....

- (b) Apart from defilement, how else are children abused?

.....

.....

- (c) What are some of the results of child abuse?

.....

.....

- (d) Suggest any one way children are abused by their parents.

.....

.....

- (e) What should children do, according to stanza three?

.....

## **ENGLISH , P.5, P.6 & P.7 REVISION WORKBOOK**

(f) How many stanzas does the poem comprise?

.....

(g) Who is considered to be a child, according to the poem?

.....

.....

(h) How many lines are in the poem?

.....

(i) Who should help children fight child abuse?

.....

(j) Who is the poet?

.....

### **54. Re-arrange the sentences below to form a good composition.**

(a) Mistreatment usually involves child labour.

(b) It is therefore important for parents to nurture their children well.

(c) The first reason is of children being mistreated at home.

(d) Child labour means to overwork a child.

(e) Bad peer influence encourages children to develop bad habits.

(f) The children start smoking drugs like marijuana and bhang.

(g) Besides child labour, there is also bad peer influence.

(h) There are many reasons that force children to run to streets.

(i) This will help to reduce the number of children running to streets and from doing bad acts.

(j) These drugs are very dangerous to one's life.

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

# **ENGLISH , P.5, P.6 & P.7 REVISION WORKBOOK**

55. You are a pupil at Shuku Boarding Primary School, P.O. Box 61, Amurat

District. Write to your parent/guardian requesting him/her to come to your school visiting day due to take place on 30<sup>th</sup> September, 2017 beginning at 10:00a.m. Remember to tell him/her to bring at least three things for you at school.

**PAPER TWENTY TWO****SECTION A.**

**For questions 1 – 10, use the correct form of the words given in the brackets to complete the sentences.**

1. Mukasa always \_\_\_\_\_ his uniform on Saturday. (wash)
2. Kabale is a \_\_\_\_\_ area. (mountain)
3. I \_\_\_\_\_ for a vacancy in senior one at Gayaza High School last year. (seek)
4. The \_\_\_\_\_ are well-known for rice growing. (China)
5. Most people like children who tell the \_\_\_\_\_. (true)
6. The children \_\_\_\_\_ crossed the road as soon as it was clear. (hurry)
7. One should always respect \_\_\_\_\_ in public. (self)
8. I left the key at the \_\_\_\_\_. (receive)
9. The chairperson has \_\_\_\_\_ all the members about the change of the venue. (information)
10. September is the \_\_\_\_\_ month of the year. (nine)

**For questions 11 – 15, fill in the blank spaces with the correct word or group of words.**

11. We have been doing this paper \_\_\_\_\_ lunch time.
12. This is the man \_\_\_\_\_ daughter graduated last year.
13. \_\_\_\_\_ Juliet and Harriet are clever.
14. Our dog gave birth to five \_\_\_\_\_.
15. Mr. Kasigwa was \_\_\_\_\_ honourable member of Parliament for Jinja West.

**For questions 16 and 17, re-arrange the given words in their correct alphabetical order.**

16. wore, win, wear, won \_\_\_\_\_
17. seed, see, seen, seat \_\_\_\_\_

**For questions 18 and 19, construct a sentence for each of the given words to show that you know the difference in their meaning.**

18. Peace \_\_\_\_\_
19. Piece \_\_\_\_\_

**For questions 20 and 21, re-arrange the given words to form a correct sentence.**

20. watching likes He cartons.

21. terrible a What was it accident!

**For questions 22 and 23, re-write the sentences giving the opposite of the underlined words.**

22. Their failure is our pride.

---

23. His departure was not recognized.

---

**For questions 24 and 25, give the plural for the underlined words.**

24. The conductor put my luggage in the car boot.

---

25. The lady's dress was very costly.

---

**For questions 26 and 27, write the given abbreviation in full.**

26. Ltd \_\_\_\_\_

27. UPE \_\_\_\_\_

**In questions 28 – 30 , re-write the sentences giving a single word for the underlined group of words.**

28. After looking at the list of foods and their prices, I decided to have matooke and rice.

---

29. All the broken chairs, tables and desks in the school were repaired by the man who makes furniture.

---

30. The person who records the points during the debate read the main points.

---

### **SUB-SECTION II**

**Re-write as instructed in the brackets.**

31. I intend to work hard next term. (Rewrite the sentence beginning: My \_\_\_\_)

---

32. Our teacher usually advises us to work harder. (Rewrite the sentence using \_\_\_\_ always \_\_\_\_)

---

33. He is young. He cannot ride a bicycle. (Join as one sentence using \_\_\_\_ enough \_\_\_\_)

---

34. Phina is annoyed Phina is crying. (Join the sentences using \_\_\_\_ because \_\_\_\_)

---

**ENGLISH , P.5, P.6 & P.7 REVISION WORKBOOK**

35. I will buy a new car if I get enough money. (Re-write the sentence using would)

---

36. Animals need freedom. Human beings need freedom. (Rewrite as one sentence using as well as \_\_\_\_\_)

---

37. Mr. Kamya liked fish more than meat. (Rewrite the sentence using prefer \_\_\_\_\_)

---

38. There is very little water in the pot. (Rewrite the sentence using hardly \_\_\_\_\_)

---

39. The lion did not see me. It did not kill me. (Rewrite the sentence beginning: Had \_\_\_\_\_)

---

40. The night was dark. It was also cold. (Rewrite as one sentence without using "which" or "and")

---

41. The time keeper will ring the bell. (Rewrite the sentence beginning: The bell \_\_\_\_\_)

---

42. You should be kind to street children. (Rewrite the sentence using ought \_\_\_\_\_)

---

43. The customer did not have enough money but he ate the food from the hotel. (Rewrite the sentence using \_\_\_\_\_ although \_\_\_\_\_)

---

44. This is my father's house. (Rewrite the sentence using \_\_\_\_\_ belong \_\_\_\_\_)

---

45. The girl jumped off the bicycle. Musa was riding the bicycle. (Re-write as one sentence beginning with: As \_\_\_\_\_)

---

---

46. It is dangerous to cross the road carelessly. (Rewrite the sentence ending: \_\_\_\_\_dangerous.)  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
47. We should feed our children. We should also treat them when they fall sick. (Rewrite as one sentence using \_\_\_\_\_not only\_\_\_\_\_)  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
48. The classes are being swept by the pupils. (Rewrite the sentence beginning: The pupils\_\_\_\_\_)  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
49. I took my watch for repair," said our mother. (Rewrite the sentence beginning: Our mother said\_\_\_\_\_)  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
50. It was not necessary for you to shout at the News reporter. (Rewrite the sentences using \_\_\_\_\_needn't have\_\_\_\_\_)  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

## **SECTION B(50 MARKS)**

51. **Read the story below and answer the questions about it in full sentences.**

Kagoya is a twelve year old girl. She is in Primary Seven at Wale-Wale Primary School. She comes from a humble background. She lives with her parents. She has two brothers and two sisters.

Kagoya likes her studies very much. Every day, she wakes up very early to prepare and walk to school, two kilometers from home. When she gets to school, she attends all her lessons. She does all the exercises and correction of the questions she has not passed.

Although Kagoya does not pass exams very highly, her teachers like her for her discipline, commitment to class work and engaging herself in other school activities. They know that she is able to get a first grade in her Primary Leaving Examination. When school closes every evening, Kagoya walks quickly home.

The moment she reaches home, she sits down to do hand-work. Some days she weaves mats, other days she knits table cloths. Kagoya is so skilled at handwork that all her work comes out beautiful.

Every Saturday, Kagoya and her siblings take their products to Mugaige market. As soon as they arrive there, people buy the products within a short time. They collect a lot of money. Kagoya spends a little part of the money to buy threads and colours, some books, pens and pencils. They also buy some tomatoes and vegetables for home use.

When they reach home, they handover the rest of the money to Mr. Mwanamoize their father. On the second day of the week, he takes the money to the bank, saving it for future development.

**Questions:-**

a) How old is Kagoya?

---

b) How many people are in Kagoya home?

---

c) Which correction does Kagoya's do?

---

d) Why do Kagoya's teachers like her?

---

e) How does Kagoya move to school every day?

---

f) What makes Kagoya's handwork beautiful?

---

g) Where does Kagoya sell her products?

---

h) Give one word that has the same meaning as the underlined words in the story.

(i)walks quickly \_\_\_\_\_

(ii)the second day of the week \_\_\_\_\_

i)Suggest a suitable title for the story.

---

**52. The information below is about weekly supply of airtime cards at Namadope trading centre, Luuka District. Study it carefully and answer questions about it in full sentences.**

**A**

<b>Day</b>	<b>Name of suppliers</b>	<b>Shop supplied to</b>	<b>Network</b>
Mon.	Mukombozi	Nalongo Sumaya	MTN
Wed.	Munene	God's Grace	AIRTEL
Fri.	Hasashya	Ochaya enterprises	MTN

**Questions:-**

- a) What is the information about?  
\_\_\_\_\_
- b) Where is Namadope trading centre found according to the information?  
\_\_\_\_\_
- c) When does Munene supply airtime?  
\_\_\_\_\_
- d) How often do the suppliers bring MTN airtime a week?  
\_\_\_\_\_
- e) Who supplies airtime cards to Ochaya enterprises?  
\_\_\_\_\_

**B) Read the invitation card and use it to answer the questions in full sentences.**

**Mr. and Mrs. Bazira of Kashari Masaka with great pleasure invite  
Mr. Oketcho Wilfred to the wedding ceremony of their children  
Atwine Martha and Musinguzi Jonathan.**

**The ceremony will take place on Saturday, 25<sup>th</sup> November, 2017 at  
St. Peters church Iganga at 2:00p.m**

**RSVP:**

**Moses Bazira- 0782-068566**

**Questions:-**

(a) Who is being invited to the function?

---

(b) When will the ceremony take place?

---

(c) Who is the bridegroom?

---

(d) When will the church service begin?

---

(e) If the invited person does not attend, who will he contact?

---

**53. Read the poem below and in full sentences answer the questions that follow.**

Hey man!

Be informed that

We are not happy with you,

You cause pain to our bodies.

Hurt to our spirits.

Hey man!

Our children are daily food,

To your children, cows and goats,

You can't allow our children to grow,

Big enough to make big forests.

Hey man!

Have you not remembered,

We are of use to you?

By the creator's own plan?

We make rain for you.

Hey man!

Our stems and roots are cut,

By your greedy relatives

Stop mistreating us Mr. Man.

Mr and Mrs. Tree are tired!

**Questions:-**

a) Who is being informed in the poem?

---

---

b) What is caused to the speaker's spirits?

---

---

c) What do cows and goats feed on?

---

---

d) Whose plan enables the speaker to make rain?

---

---

e) Who cuts the speaker's stems and roots?

---

---

f) Why do you think the speaker's stems are cut?

---

---

g) Who wrote the poem?

---

---

h) Give **one** word which has the same meaning with the underlined group of words in the poem.

(i) Cows and goats. \_\_\_\_\_

(ii) Not remembered \_\_\_\_\_

(iii) Of use \_\_\_\_\_

54. The sentences below are in wrong order. Re-arrange them in a correct order to form a story about “Clean Classroom Environment.”

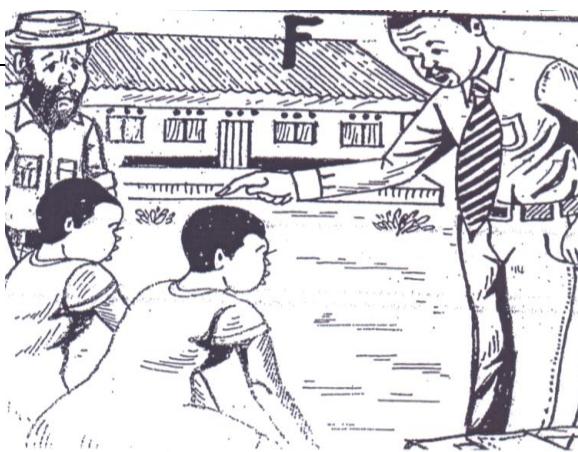
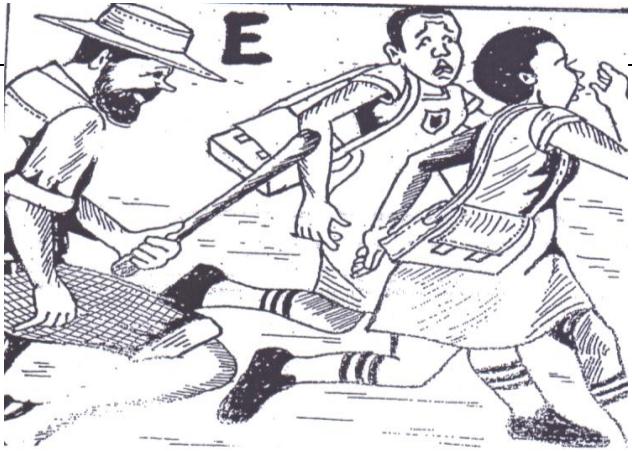
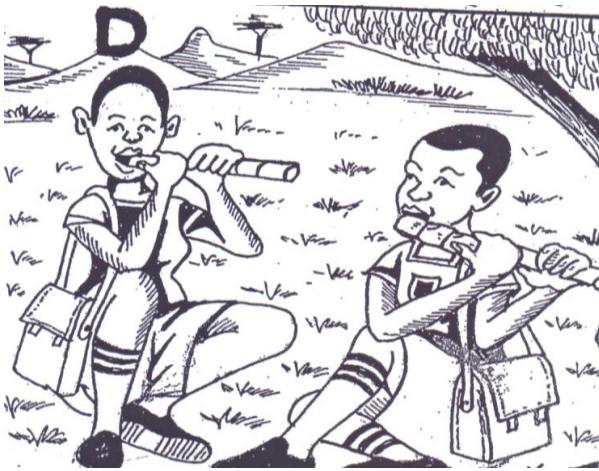
- a) The pupils who are to sweep the classroom should also take the rubbish to the rubbish pit.
- b) To do it fairly, a cleaning rota should be made and displayed in the classroom.
- c) Studying in a clean classroom environment is important for all of us.

# **ENGLISH , P.5, P.6 & P.7 REVISION WORKBOOK**

- d) In the end, we shall all enjoy a good lesson in a clean classroom environment.
  - e) Being comfortable enables us to concentrate in class.
  - f) Other pupils should then mop the classroom after it has been swept.
  - g) A clean classroom environment makes us comfortable during lessons.
  - h) This rota will indicate the pupils who are to do different activities during cleaning each day.
  - i) Now, how can we involve everybody in cleaning the classroom?
  - j) These activities are mainly sweeping and mopping.

**55. The pictures A – F below tell a story. Study them and write one sentence to describe “What is” happening in each picture. You may use the following words to help you.**

**eat, take, seated, walk, friend, leave, go, teacher, catch, headmaster, steal, break, run, apologize, arrest, chase**



**(a) Picture A:**

---

---

**(b) Picture B**

---

---

**(c) Picture C**

---

---

**(d) Picture D**

---

---

**(e) Picture E**

---

---

**(f) Picture F**

---

---

**(g) According to picture B, where are the girls going?**

---

---

**(h) Where are the girls seated in picture D?**

---

---

**(i) What do you think the girls are telling the man in picture F?**

---

---

**(j) What lesson do you learn from the story?**

---

---

**PAPER TWENTY THREE****SECTION A.****SUB-SECTION I**

**In questions 1 – 5, fill in the blank spaces with the most suitable word or group of words.**

1. There is a close relationship \_\_\_\_\_ the town mayor and my mother.
2. What \_\_\_\_\_ honourable man our area Member of Parliament is!
3. To \_\_\_\_\_ was this application letter addressed?
4. The supervisor told the candidates to follow the instructions \_\_\_\_\_ they would make several mistakes.
5. Scarcely had the police got the information about the accident \_\_\_\_\_ they rushed to the scene.

**In questions 6 – 15, use the correct form of the words in the brackets to fill in the blank spaces.**

6. The vehicle which Dad bought recently has developed a \_\_\_\_\_ problem. (mechanic)
7. He was sentenced to three years \_\_\_\_\_ for abusing children's rights. (prison)
8. There were a lot of \_\_\_\_\_ in daddy's home library. (mouse)
9. How often do your parents go to their \_\_\_\_\_ home for funeral? (ancestor)
10. Children should be given enough \_\_\_\_\_ by their parents and guardians. (protect)
11. We should \_\_\_\_\_ to our teachers whenever we do wrong. (apology)
12. He was the only \_\_\_\_\_ athlete who got a gold medal. (Germany)
13. Soil \_\_\_\_\_ is one of the major problems facing farmers in Kigezi hills. (erode)
14. Molly has \_\_\_\_\_ to write her name on her script. (forget)
15. It was her first time to sign a \_\_\_\_\_ form. (withdraw)

**In questions 16 – 17, re-arrange the words in alphabetical order.**

16. burial, funeral, ancestral, ancestors, bury

---

17. poaching, poachers, welfare, wildlife, conserve.

---

**In questions 18 – 19, use each of the words in sentences to show that you know their meaning.**

18. Week \_\_\_\_\_  
19. Weak \_\_\_\_\_

**In questions 20-21, rewrite the sentences, replacing the underlined words with their opposites.**

20. Do you think it is secure to walk alone at night?

21. I think mummy deposited the money herself.

**In questions 22 – 23, write the words in full.**

22. Prof. \_\_\_\_\_  
23. i.e. \_\_\_\_\_

**In questions 24 – 26, rewrite the sentences giving one word for the underlined group of words.**

24. Three illegal hunters have been arrested and imprisoned.

25. The person who watches over candidates doing an exam is carrying the envelopes.

26. He was accused of driving his car without care.

**In questions 27 – 28, write the plural forms of the given words**

27. luggage \_\_\_\_\_  
28. hyena \_\_\_\_\_

**In questions 29 – 30, re-arrange the given words to form correct sentences.**

29. will reward in the debate the best speaker the headmaster.

30. fluently speak English does she?

## **SUB-SECTION II**

**In questions 31 – 50, rewrite the given sentences as instructed in the brackets.**

31. This is the village. My mum was born from here. (Rewrite using from where \_\_\_\_\_)
32. We went to bed before the announcements were read. (Rewrite beginning: By the time the announcements \_\_\_\_\_)
- \_\_\_\_\_
- \_\_\_\_\_

**ENGLISH , P.5, P.6 & P.7 REVISION WORKBOOK**

33. She applied for the job. She was called for interviews. (Rewrite beginning:  
After \_\_\_\_\_)

34. If Magara does not stop disobeying teachers, she will be expelled from  
school.(Begin: Unless \_\_\_\_\_)

35. In spite of his hard work, many people don't trust him. (Rewrite  
using \_\_\_\_\_ but \_\_\_\_\_)

36. Does this new story book belong to Katumwa? (Rewrite beginning: Is  
this \_\_\_\_\_)

37. "I will speak to the candidates tomorrow," said the head of School. (Begin:  
The head of school promised that \_\_\_\_\_)

38. If you work hard, you score good marks. (Begin: The harder \_\_\_\_\_ )

39. Parents must speak to their children about their rights and responsibilities.  
(Rewrite using: \_\_\_\_\_ ought to \_\_\_\_\_ )

40. All of us have not been to a carpentry workshop. (Rewrite beginning:  
None \_\_\_\_\_)

41. Mummy makes very beautiful crafts materials. (Rewrite beginning :What \_\_\_\_\_)

42. This examination is very cheap. We can't fail it. (Join using \_\_\_\_\_ to \_\_\_\_\_ to \_\_\_\_\_)

43. Malibu sold four birds to Mukene. (Use: \_\_\_\_\_ bought \_\_\_\_\_)

44. The old woman said that her son was missing. (Begin: The old woman said,  
" \_\_\_\_\_")

45. Did he go to bury the late Ssemwanga? (Rewrite beginning: Yes \_\_\_\_\_)

46. I like speaking the truth. I don't tell lies. (Rewrite beginning: I would rather  
\_\_\_\_\_)

- 
47. Animals don't talk but they also need their freedom. (Begin: Much as\_\_\_\_\_)
- 
48. Yes, I attended Zawedde's birthday party last week. (Give a suitable question for that answer)
- 
49. There is no need for you to use abusive language in public. (Rewrite using \_\_\_\_\_ needn't \_\_\_\_\_)
- 
50. The head boy didn't see her. He didn't report her to the teacher on duty. (Rewrite ending: \_\_\_\_\_ would have reported her to the headmaster.)
- 

## **SECTION B.**

51. **Read the passage below carefully and answer the questions about it in full sentences.**

Last term, the primary six teacher of English, Mr Alex Omach taught the pupils about carpentry. The pupils were excited to know how furniture is made from trunks of trees. Mr. Omach told the pupils that making furniture is a long process. He promised that he would take them to a nearby carpentry workshop and see for themselves what is involved in furniture making.

The following Monday morning, Mr Omach told the pupils that he had spoken to the Headmaster, Mr. Kakajo Ismail about their trip and that the Headmaster had authorized him. The pupils were excited. This was going to be their first educational tour. The teacher wrote letters to their parents, informing them about the tour and also asking them to provide their children with requirements and pocket money.

On Friday morning Mr. Omach addressed the class and gave them instructions on how to behave during the tour. He also asked them to put on their gumboots to protect their feet from any sharp objects that would be dangerous to their feet. At Kyani saw mill, the children were surprised to see machines splitting trunks of wood into planks using electric saws. The planks were then split into small sized pieces. The tour guide told them to be very cautious not to touch any moving machine or else they would get serious injuries.

After leaving the saw mill, they continued to Mukozi carpentry workshop. The pupils were amazed to see that all the workers were as busy as a bee. Some of them were cutting planks of wood into smaller pieces, others were putting holes into pieces of wood or joining different pieces to make furniture. The manager, Mr. Kyazze Dickson told the pupils that at Mukozi carpentry workshop, they used different tools to do their work. They used planes to make wood smooth, drills to make holes in wood and sand paper to smooth surfaces of furniture before varnishing or painting it. When the pupils returned to school, they had quite a lot to tell their parents about their trip.

1. What is the passage about?

---

2. Which class learnt about carpentry?

---

3. Why were the pupils excited?

---

4. Which places did the pupils visit during their tour?

---

5. Who is Mr. Kyazze according to the passage?

---

6. What do you think a drill is used for?

---

7. Why did the pupils wear gumboots while on this tour?

---

8. Why were the pupils cautioned against touching machines at the saw mill?

---

9. Give the opposite of smooth.

---

10. Suggest a suitable title to the above passage.

---

52. The sentences below are in a wrong order. Re-arrange them to make a meaningful composition about “An accident”.

1. I asked one of the onlookers in the crowd what had happened.

2. There was a crowd nearby
  3. One day, I was returning home from school when I witnessed an accident.
  4. A man was lying by the roadside and a damaged motorcycle lay beside him.
  5. And rushed him to Busabo hospital for treatment.
  6. He was bleeding all over and he looked more dead than alive.
  7. Shortly after, a police patrol vehicle arrived at the scene.
  8. He told me that the injured man had been knocked down by a speeding lorry.
  9. I went ahead to ask why he couldn't be taken to hospital.
  10. He replied that they had called the police for help.

53. The notice below appeared in the New Vision newspaper of 28<sup>th</sup> July 2017.

**Read it correctly and in full sentences, answer the questions that follow.**

### **APPRECIATION**

**The Late Nalwadda Branny**

**Born: 20<sup>th</sup> Sept, 1977**

**Died: 20<sup>th</sup> July, 2017.**

The family of the late Nalwadda Branny of Kisimba village Mityana Town Council, wish to extend their sincere appreciation to all friends, relatives and in laws, who attended the funeral of the deceased at their ancestral home in Kalambi village.

Special thanks go to Dr. Dick Kimbo of Kitovu Hospital who tried to save the life of the deceased though in vain, Hon Sam Kigozi who transported the body of the deceased and Rev. Thomas Ddumba who presided over the funeral.

May the soul of the deceased rest in peace.

**By Joan Magoola.**

**(Daughter of the deceased)**

#### **Questions:-**

1. Where can one read the above notice?

---

2. Who is the deceased?

---

3. By whom was the notice written?

---

4. Where was the deceased buried?

---

5. Why was the family of the deceased thankful to Dr. Dick Kimbo?

---

6. Who transported the body of the deceased for burial?

---

7. How old was the deceased when she passed on?

8. When was the appreciation written?

---

9. Write in full ;

(i) Rev. \_\_\_\_\_

(ii) Sept. \_\_\_\_\_

54. **Below is a conversation between Nathan and Mr. Magezi their neighbour.**  
**Read it carefully complete it by filling in what you think were Nathan's correct responses.**

Nathan : \_\_\_\_\_

Mr. Magezi: Good morning, Nathan. Why are you breathing hard?

Nathan : \_\_\_\_\_

Mr. Magezi: You have just run away from home! Why?

Nathan: \_\_\_\_\_

Mr. Magezi: Why does your dad want to punish you?

Nathan: \_\_\_\_\_

Mr. Magezi: Brother tore your homework book! Why didn't you report him?

Nathan: \_\_\_\_\_

Mr. Magezi Why do you say your dad wouldn't listen to you?

Nathan : \_\_\_\_\_

Mr. Magezi: Why do you think he says you are a bad child who is never apologetic?

Nathan: \_\_\_\_\_

Mr. Magezi You should stop beating your brother and always apologise whenever you make a mistake.

Nathan: \_\_\_\_\_

Mr. Magezi: You should apologise to your brother first. Later you can do the same to your dad.

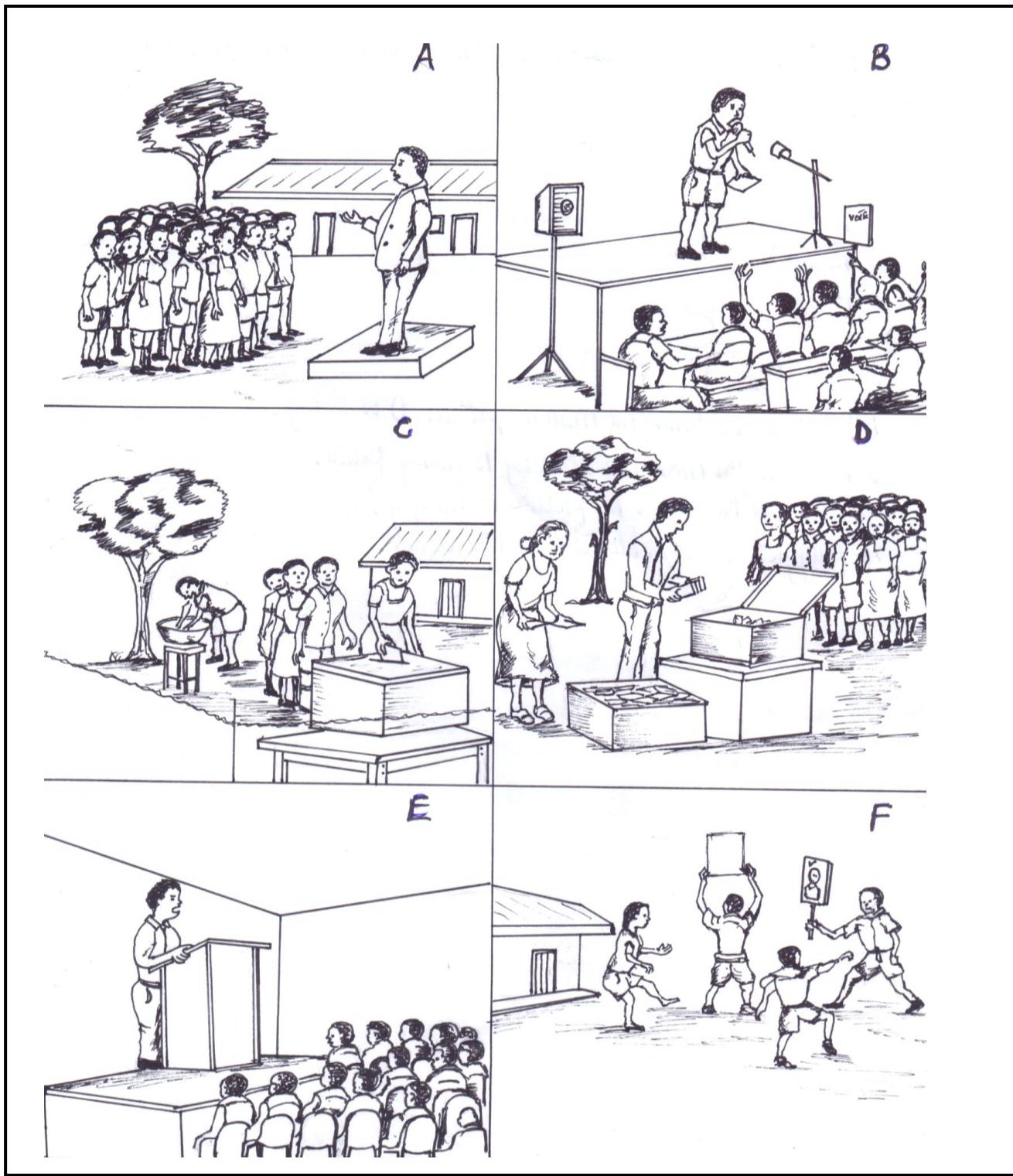
Nathan: \_\_\_\_\_

Mr. Magezi: Yes, I think they will forgive you. But avoid misbehaving and making mistakes deliberately.

Nathan: Thank you very much Mr. Magezi. I have taken your advice.

55. Study the pictures below carefully and write one sentence to describe what is happening in each. You can use the following words.

campaign, votes, announcing, winners, celebrate, casting ballots, lining up, seated



## **ENGLISH , P.5, P.6 & P.7 REVISION WORKBOOK**

**Write one sentence to describe what is happening in each picture.**

**1. Picture A**

**2. Picture B**

**3. Picture C**

**4. Picture D**

**5. Picture E**

**6. Picture F**

**7. What do you think the man in picture D is doing?**

**8. Where do you think this activity is taking place?**

**9. Why are the pupils in picture F happy?**

**10. Suggest a suitable title for this story.**

## **PAPER TWENTYFOUR**

### **SECTION A**

**In each of the questions 1 – 5, fill in the blank space with the correct word or group of words.**

1. ....she works very hard, she will not pass P.L.E.
2. The teacher asked the pupil .....his name was.
3. We need to buy a radio,.....we?
4. The president arrived .....Nairobi late in the evening.
5. My daddy records daily events in his .....

6. The young children were told to stop .....cutlery at home. (dirty)
7. A lot of people attended the .....of the Edward Adkins. (bury)
8. Terry is the .....boy in our class. (shy)
9. The old woman walked .....to the hospital for treatment. (steady)
10. While I was reading a novel, my brother was .....a letter. (write)
11. The pupils found the lion .....in its café. (lie)
12. The diners were given a warm .....when they entered a restaurant. (receive)
13. A friend of .....rejected the invitation to the disco party. (they)
14. Arsenal has beaten Chelsea.....this season. (three)
15. Our teacher of English is a very .....lady.(knowledge)

**In each of the questions 16 – 17, use each of the given words in a sentence to show that you know the difference in their meaning.**

16. Whose.....  
.....
17. Who's.....  
.....

**In questions 18 to 19, re-write the sentences giving the opposite form of the underlined word.**

18. The conductor collected the fare from the passengers.  
.....
19. Success in the examination is brought about by many factors.  
.....

**Arrange the given words in alphabetical order.**

20. lesson lessen lessons learn  
.....
21. skilful skill skillfully skilled  
.....

**In each of the questions 22 – 23, re-write the sentence giving a single word for the underlined group of words.**

22. Annitah's health is getting better and better every day.  
.....
23. The people who played different music instruments won the competitions.  
.....

**In each of the questions 24 - 25, give the abbreviations of the given words.**

24. Who would

.....

25. Saving and Credit Co-operative Organizations.

.....

**In each of the following questions 26 and 27, give the plural form of the underlined word.**

26. The candidate was asked to write his index number correctly.

.....

27. The thief who was caught stealing computers was taken to the police station.

.....

**In each of the following questions 28 to 30, re-arrange the given words to make a correct sentence.**

28. is gave who present my uncle a man the me.

.....

29. Far is how from to it here school?

.....

30. Amazing an what goal Mubiru scored!

.....

### **SUB-ECTION II**

**In questions 31 – 50, re-write the sentences as instructed in the brackets.**

31. A teacher is useful. A nurse is useful. (Join the sentences using.....as....as.....)

.....

.....

32. The tailor will sew my dress. (Re-write the sentence beginning: My dress.....)

.....

.....

33. All candidates passed the examination. (Re-write beginning: None.....)

.....

.....

34. It is very interesting to watch football on a large screen. (Re-write the sentence ending.....interesting.)

.....

.....

35. My sister does not dye her hair. My mother does not dye her hair. (Rewrite as one sentence using: Neither.....)

.....

.....

36. The pupils rubbed the chalkboard though it wasn't necessary. (Re-write using....needn't have.....)

.....  
.....

37. Of the two schools, which one do you prefer? (Rewrite as one ending....preference?)

.....  
.....

38. "What do you want from me here now?" Brenda asked me. (Use.....wanted to know from.....)

.....  
.....

39. Juma owns those two smart phones. (Re-write the sentence using:.....belong.....)

.....  
.....

40. The seamstress did not buy good materials. She did not sew nice uniforms for us. (Use.....if.....)

.....  
.....

41. Did the pilot tell you how he managed to locate the airport? (join as one sentence using.....succeed.....)

.....  
.....

42. BobiWine always sings wonderfully. (Join as one sentence using.....wonderful.....)

.....  
.....

43. When my aunt heard that she had been promoted as a manager, she was very pleased. (Rewrite beginning: My aunt was .....

.....  
.....

44. Christiano is a Portuguese, isn't he? (Re-write the sentence ending..., is he?)

.....  
.....

45. He was a lazy boy. He could not sweep the compound. (Re-write as one sentence using.....such.....that.....)

.....  
.....

46. This is the police officer that you should report your case to. (Rewrite using:..... whom.....)

.....  
.....

47. Musa cannot pay school fees for his children although he is wealthy. (Rewrite using: In spite of Musa's .....)

.....  
.....

48. Children who behaved badly in school usually get problems. (Re-write using:.....often.....)

.....  
.....

49. If you plant many trees, you get a lot of timber. (Rewrite the sentence beginning: The....., the.....)

.....  
.....

50. The girls speak good English. The boys speak good English. (Rewrite as one sentence using.....and so.....)

.....  
.....

### **SECTION B.**

51. **Read the passage below and then answer in full sentences answer the questions that follow.**

#### **The Sports Day.**

Migina Primary school organized a Sports Day. All the pupils were divided into houses and each house had a leader. The houses were Leopard, Rhino and Lion. Leopard had its leader Catherine. All teachers liked Catherine because she was industrious and well behaved.

Catherine was at first doing well, as she was practising with her house members daily. Time came when she was doing the opposite. She became proud of herself in front of others. Whenever she was given some items like glucose and sugarcane to be given out during practice, Catherine kept them to go and share with her friends in the dormitory.

Her behaviour did not please the house members. They decided to report the matter to the house masters.

One morning, the teachers and pupils of Leopard house gathered to prepare for the general practice for all the houses. During the meeting, members talked about Catherine's conduct. Some said that they had given up but the teachers advised Catherine to apologise to the members.

In the afternoon, the houses assembled for the practice. This saw Leopards' participants becoming last in each race. Catherine lost fame and became quiet. The rest of the houses beat Leopard in each and every event. After the general practice, Catherine called her members and apologized. She called upon them to regain house spirit. This made her buy glucose using some of her pocket money.

The awaited day came and participants assembled in the field. In the first event of the long race, the first and third positions were taken by Leopard house. When the results of the field events were brought at the recording table, Leopard house was leading in most of them and this made Catherine and her house mates very excited.

Finally, results were announced. Guess what! Leopards were the champions of the year in Migina Primary School and they won themselves a bull for roasting.

**Questions:-**

1. In which school was the Sports Day?

.....  
.....

2. How many houses were in that school?

.....

3. Why was Catherine liked by the teachers at first?

.....

4. Why did the members of Leopard house feel unhappy with Catherine?

.....

5. Why do you think Catherine used her pocket money to buy glucose?

.....

6. Why do you think Catherine is a well bred girl?

.....

7. How did Leopards perform in the general practice?

.....

8. If you were a captain of your school team, what would you do to be the champions every season?
- .....

9. Give a word or group of words with the same meaning as the following underlined words in the passage:

- (i) industrious .....
- (ii) assembled .....

52. **Read the poem below carefully and answer the questions in full sentences.**

**Newspapers! Newspapers!**

What a great source of information and daily update!

Of things happening around the world.

They contain various articles;

On education, government, sports and so on.

For the young and the old to enjoy.

The New Vision, The Daily monitor or The Red Pepper

All compete to give information

Be it right or wrong

Vendors travel long distances from the source

Looking for customers to buy newspapers

Indeed they end up successful.

Wait a minute!

Are those the only sources of information to us?

No! Not quite!

Computers, radios, televisions!

Give more information to the public

Thanks to all these sources

How ignorant we would be without them!

**(Brian Nobel P.5 West)**

1. Which people enjoy reading newspapers?

.....

2. According to the poem, why are newspapers produced daily?

.....

3. Why is it important to read newspapers?

4. What do newspaper articles talk about?

.....

5. Why do you think various newspapers compete to give information?

.....

6. How many newspapers have been mentioned in the poem?

.....

7. Mention one other source of information apart from those in the poem.

.....

8. What would happen if there were no sources of information?

.....

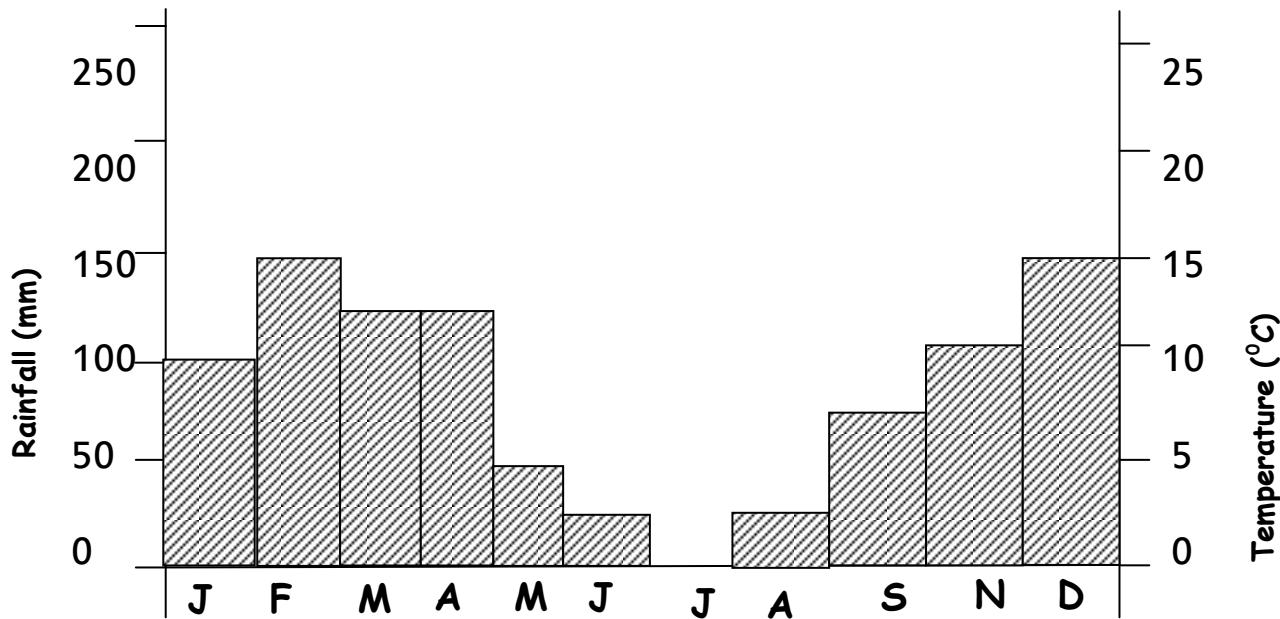
9. Give another word to mean:

Customers .....

10. Give your own title for this poem.

.....

53. The graph below shows average monthly rainfall and temperature recorded at Kawanda Weather Station. Study it carefully and use the information to answer the questions in full sentences.



**Questions:-**

## **ENGLISH , P.5, P.6 & P.7 REVISION WORKBOOK**

1. What does the above graph show?

.....

2. Which month registered the highest average rainfall?

.....

3. In which month was there no rainfall at all?

.....

4. What was the highest average temperature recorded at the station?

.....

5. From where was this information got?

.....

6. Which type of season do farmers experience in July?

.....

7. Do you think the presence of rain affected the temperatures?

.....

8. What was the temperature in September?

.....

9. Write any two months with the same amount of rainfall on the graph.

.....

10. Write mm in full.

.....

54. The notice below appeared on the notice board of St. John Primary School Buganda on 12<sup>th</sup> February, 2017. Study it carefully and answer the questions.

### **Primary Seven meeting**

All parents of Primary seven candidates are invited.

**Time:** 2:00pm – 4:15pm

**Venue:** School main hall

**NB:** Parents who have not cleared school fees are advised to do so before coming for the meeting.

No cash will be received at school. All payments should be made in the bank.

**Management**

**9<sup>th</sup> February, 2017.**

**1. What is the notice about?**

.....

**2. Where can one find this information?**

.....

**3. Who are being invited?**

.....

**4. How long will the meeting last?**

.....

**5. What should parents who have not cleared school fees do?**

.....

**6. Who wrote this notice?**

.....

**7. Why do you think parents should pay in the bank?**

.....

**8. What name is given to the records taken by a secretary in a meeting?**

.....

**9. When did this notice appear on the notice board?**

.....

**10. Where will the meeting take place?**

.....

**55. You are a chairperson of the debating club in Kings Junior School, P.O. Box 166, Wakiso. Write a letter to the Headmistress of Kayunga Primary School, P.O. Box 234, Mpigi asking her to allow your club to have a friendly debate with her club. Tell her that her club can select the motion and the side. The debate will take place on 20<sup>th</sup> October, 2017 in their main hall starting at 2:00p.m.**

**ENGLISH , P.5, P.6 & P.7 REVISION WORKBOOK**

# **PAPER TWENT FIVE**

## **SECTION A.**

**For questions 1 – 5, use the correct form of the given word to fill the space.**

1. Our house was ..... by the Chinese.(build)
2. Unless he comes ..... than usual, he won't get a front seat. (early)
3. Jalia is ..... than her young sister. (shy)
4. I have seen my books but they haven't seen ..... yet. (they)
5. They were complaining ..... because their problem had already been solved. (unnecessary)

**For questions 6 – 10, fill in the most suitable word.**

6. Hardly had Luka seen the snake ..... he screamed.
7. Duck is to duckling as owl is to..... .
8. The ..... who were watching the match became wild and threw bottles at the referee.
9. Mr. Mukasa, the baker, ..... the dough himself whenever he is to bake wedding cakes.
10. The lion ..... so loudly that it could be heard two miles away.

**For questions 11 and 12, use the given words in meaningful sentences.**

11. Court .....
12. Coat .....

**Arrange the words in alphabetical order in question 13 and 14**

13. chosen, charger , cheese , chance, Christian

.....

14. drawer, hostess, whether, angrily, shore

.....

**Rewrite the following sentences giving a single word for the underlined group of words.**

15. The waitress gave us the card showing the food and the prices as soon as we entered the restaurant.

.....

16. The pedestrian crossed the road in a hurry when she heard the siren of an approaching ambulance.
- .....

17. We shall visit our friends in the ninth month of the year.
- .....

**Give the abbreviations of these words.**

18. By way of.....
19. Animal Defenders International.....
20. siylflklu (Rearrange the letters to form a correct word.)
- .....

**For questions 21 – 23, rewrite the sentence giving the singular form of the underlined words.**

21. The chimneys had not been repainted for a year.
- .....

22. Our sisters' children have been promoted to primary four.
- .....

23. The menservants refused to work until the salaries were paid.
- .....

**Arrange the following words to make meaningful sentences.**

24. nephew gone your has where?
- .....

25. grounded car year a her has for been.
- .....

**For questions 26 and 27 provide a question tag.**

26. He dared to fight a lion, .....?
- .....

27. Samson cannot drive a tractor, .....?
- .....

**For questions 28 and 29, rewrite the sentences giving the opposites of the underlined words.**

28. Her mother-in-law has been taken to court.
- .....

29. The boar was so hungry that it ate one of its piglets.
- .....

30. Herman got good marks because his work was unreadable.
- .....

**SUB-SECTION II**

**In questions 31 – 50, rewrite the sentences as instructed in brackets.**

31. Sali is very young. He can't take himself to school. (Join using:.....too.....to....)
- .....
- .....

32. Immediately the traffic police officer blew the whistle, the pedestrians crossed the road. (Rewrite using:.....no sooner.....)
- .....
- .....

33. The drunken man fell into a trench. He got bruises in the face. (Join using: .....not only.....)
- .....
- .....

34. Janet might go to Shoprite or to Delicos. (Rewrite using: .....either.....)
- .....
- .....

35. It is not necessary for the bursar to go to the bank. (Rewrite using: .....needn't..)
- .....
- .....

36. The miners were trapped in the mine. They called the headquarters for help. (Rewrite beginning: Trapped .....
- .....
- .....

37. Despite the fact that their wedding cake was made by an expert, it was tasteless. (Rewrite using: .....but.....)
- .....
- .....

38. Luwuge is a very tall man. Lusalabato is a tall man. (Join using: .....taller.....)
- .....

- .....  
.....  
**39.** The maid woke up early. She wanted to clean the house before the family was up. (Join using:.....so that .....)  
.....  
.....
- .....  
.....  
**40.** Ceaser did his work very well. He won the writer's competition. (Join using:.....so.....that .....)  
.....  
.....
- .....  
**41.** Pantalasio is spraying the flower bed. (Rewrite beginning: The flower bed ....)  
.....
- .....  
**42.** Sulambaya is a very kind man. He will lend you some money.  
(Join using:.....such.....that.....)  
.....  
.....
- .....  
**43.** My only calf said the farmer has been stolen (Rewrite and punctuate correctly)  
.....  
.....
- .....  
**44.** Alice didn't do the end of term examination. Bob did the end of term examination. (Join the sentences using:.....unlike Alice.....)  
.....  
.....
- .....  
**45.** If the body arrives in the country before noon, burial will take place today.  
(Rewrite beginning: Unless.....)  
.....  
.....
- .....  
**46.** The river divides the valley into two parts. It flows to the neighbouring country. (Join the sentences using:.....which.....)  
.....  
.....

47. The cobbler will not mend my shoes. He will not polish them. (Join using:.....and neither.....)

.....  
.....

48. We didn't benefit from the revision exercise we had. (Rewrite the sentence using.....beneficial.....)

.....  
.....

49. The children were punished because they were shouting during meal time. (Write as two separate sentences)

.....  
.....

50. Once bitten.....(complete the saying.)

.....

## **SECTION B.**

51. Read the passage below and answer the questions in full sentences.

Rehema's elder sister, Faridah, sat PLE last year. She didn't get good results and this was attributed to her inappropriate preparations. She didn't manage her time well. She would spend most of her time partying, watching TV and visiting friends instead of revising. So she had to repeat P.7 this year and to her dismay, she is in the same class with her sister, Rehema!

This was an eye opener to Rehema. She didn't wait to fail the exams to repeat the class. So she decided to start her preparations early. She spent her First term holiday with her cousin revising lower work and writing summaries. Then when the term second began, she drew herself a timetable. This includes house chores and revision time.

At school, she completes all her exercises in time and does all her corrections. When she goes back home in the evening, she does the house chores quickly and then goes to her bedroom to revise. Her parents and siblings are supportive. They don't disturb her as she revises but they sometimes take her a cup of tea, juice or supper.

## **ENGLISH , P.5, P.6 & P.7 REVISION WORKBOOK**

Since she is left with very little time, she has already bought all the things she will use during PLE. These include a geometry set, a ruler, a pen, a packet of cartridges and two handkerchiefs. Unfortunately, Faridah is not bothered at all. What about you?

### **Questions:-**

1. Who are the two sisters in the story?

.....  
.....

2. In which class was Rehema last year?

.....  
.....

3. With whom did Rehema spend the first term holiday?

.....

4. Why do you think Faridah didn't get good marks in PLE?

.....  
.....

5. Is Rehema a boarder or a day scholar? Give a reason to support your answer.

.....  
.....

6. From where does Rehema carry out revision after doing the chores?

.....  
.....

7. Mention one way how the members of Rehema's family support her in her preparations.

.....  
.....

8. Who is younger Rehema or Faridah?

.....  
.....

9. Write the full form of PLE as used in the story.

.....  
.....

**10. Give the passage a suitable title.**

.....

52. The sentences below are jumbled Re-arrange them to form a story about Juma, the Butcher.

1. Juma is very careful when transporting the animals.
  2. Sometimes he buys them from nearby places.
  3. And sells beef and chevon .
  4. These trucks have partitions in which each animals is put separately.
  5. Juma is a a butcher and carries out his work in Kawempe.
  6. Unlike other people in the same business, he transports his animals in big trucks.
  7. He buys them from different places.
  8. He slaughters the cows and goats he sells himself.
  9. And at other times, he travels as far as Kyazanga to buy these animals.
  - 10.This prevents them from hurting each other on their way to market.

- 53. The table below was drawn by Mr. Nkwangwa, the classteacher of P.7 Zebra, as he received the pupils at the beginning of term. Study it carefully and answer the questions about it in full sentences.**

NAME	AMOUNT PAID	DATE PAID	BALANCE	COMMITNMENT DATE
Annet Lumu	850,000/=	13.9.2017	5,000/=	1 <sup>st</sup> October
Betty Luzinda	855,000/=	1.9.2017	Nil	.....
Charles Kato	750,000/=	13.9.2017	.....	14.10.2017
Dancan Wasswa	750,000/=	13.9.2017	.....	14.10.2017
Fausta Namara	.....	.....	.....	.....
Tom Maaso	855,000/=	11.9.2017	Nil	.....
Zam Birabwa	500,000/=	9.9.2017	355,000/=	15.10.2017

1. How are the pupils' names arranged on the table?

.....  
.....

2. Who prepared the above table?

.....  
.....

3. For which class is the table?

.....  
.....

4. How many pupils' names were recorded?

.....  
.....

5. What is the table about?

.....  
.....

6. According to the table, how much money was each pupil supposed to pay?

7. For which term do you think this table was? Give a reason to support the answer.

.....  
.....

8. Which children do you think are siblings?

.....  
.....

9. What do you think happened to Fausta Namara?

.....  
.....

10. How much money did Charles Kato pay?

.....  
.....

54. Read the poem below and answer the questions about it in full sentences.

Hullo Mr. Bob, the baker  
What do you have in the basket  
That smells delicious  
I wish I can have a look!

Spiced cakes and bread  
Buns both round and flat  
Still warm from the oven  
Is what I have in the basket.

Can I have a bun please?  
I wish to have a round one  
Just one will be enough  
To eat for tea at break

Each bun is one thousand shillings,  
I hope you have this in your purse  
In exchange for a hot bun  
Round and delicious for your tea break.

**By Daniel Malik**

## **ENGLISH , P.5, P.6 & P.7 REVISION WORKBOOK**

**1. How many people are taking part in the poem?**

.....

**2. Who is the composer of the poem?**

.....

.....

**3. Who is the baker in the poem?**

.....

.....

**4. Which stanza talks about the shape of the buns?**

.....

.....

**5. How do the cakes smell?**

.....

.....

**6. What shows that the buns have just been baked?**

.....

.....

**7. When does the person in the poem want to eat the bun?**

.....

.....

**8. What is the cost of a bun according to the poem?**

.....

.....

**9. Apart from buns, what else is in the baker's basket?**

.....

.....

**10. Give a group of words to mean delicious as used in the poem.**

.....

.....

55. On 3<sup>rd</sup> March, 2017, Nabawanga Sharifa, 14 years old, visited Mega Hospital in Wakiso district to have a medical checkup. Doctor Kalisa Musa filled her form and signed it after finding her physically fit. Using block letters, complete the form.

DATE: .....

HOSPITAL:.....

DISTRICT: .....

PATIENT'S NAME: FIRST NAME:.....

OTHERS: .....

AGE: .....

**PUT A TICK IN THE CORRECT BOX.**

	<b>Yes</b> <input type="checkbox"/>	<b>None</b> <input type="checkbox"/>
EYE DEFECT:		
PHYSICAL DEFECT	<b>Yes</b> <input type="checkbox"/>	<b>None</b> <input type="checkbox"/>
OTHERS:	<b>Yes</b> <input type="checkbox"/>	<b>None</b> <input type="checkbox"/>

(IF ANY SPECIFY)

DOCTOR'S NAME .....

SIGNATURE: .....

DATE: .....

**END.**

**PAPER TWENTY SIX****SECTION A.****In each of the questions 1 – 5, fill in the blank space with a suitable word.**

1. How many .....of paraffin have you bought ?
2. The bus .....down on its way to Kapchorwa.
3. This jacket is thick .....to make me warm in this cold weather.
4. Our neighbour's son ate .....apple and sweet bananas at the party.
5. John likes swimming and so.....David.

**In each of the questions 6 – 15, use the correct form of the word given in the brackets to complete the sentences.**

6. Children need proper .....from teachers and parents.  
(guide)
7. By the time the police came, the  
robbers.....(escape)
8. What a .....cake this is! (taste)
9. The chairman's .....to postpone the meeting was  
rejected by all members. (propose)
10. The traffic officer shouted .....at the bus driver  
who had refused to stop the bus. (angry)
11. On .....the president, we stood up to sing the national anthem.  
(see)
12. That is the new chairman of the .....commission.  
(elect)
13. The saying goes that blood is .....than water. (thick)
14. Having .....us a clear explanation, the teacher told us to do  
the exercise. (give)
15. A few .....decided to stay with the bereaved family  
for a week after the burial. (mourn)

**For questions 16 and 17, re-arrange the given words to form a correct sentence.**

16. rang while The bathing phone were you.
- .....

17. into thieves the break When the did shop?

.....

**For questions 18 – 20, arrange the words in alphabetical order.**

18. wiper, saddle, brakes, indicator, garage

.....

19. chief, scarf, thief, chef, shelf

.....

20. aunt, ant, aunty, antenna, auntie

.....

**For numbers 21 and 22, write each of the abbreviations in full.**

21. a.m. .....

22. cert. .....

**In questions 23 and 24, use each word in a sentence to show that you know their difference in meaning.**

23. here:.....

24. hear:.....

**In questions 25 and 26, rewrite each sentence giving a single word for the underlined group of words.**

25. We started doing the examination as soon as the supervisor rang the bell.

.....

26. Orumuri newspaper is published once a week.

.....

**For numbers 27 and 28, give the singular form of the underlined word.**

27. All the barracks need renovation.

.....

28. They are wearing very expensive pairs of trousers.

.....

**Re-write the sentence giving the opposite of the underlined word.**

29. I have been online for a week.

.....

30. She treated us quite fairly.

.....

## **SUB-SECTION II**

**In each of the questions 31 – 50, rewrite the sentences as instructed in the brackets.**

31. You are very complicated. I can't stay with you. (Join using:.....too.....to.....)

.....  
.....

32. This is the leader. I told you about him. (Re-write as one sentence using:  
.....about whom .....)

.....  
.....

33. Kato is cleverer than Kakuru. (Use:.....not as.....)

.....  
.....

34. By whom was this glass broken? (Rewrite using:.....broke.....?)

.....  
.....

35. Candidates need high level of concentration to excel in PLE. (Begin:  
What.....)

.....  
.....

36. That man kidnapped a girl. The girl is eight years old. (Join using:....an  
eight....)

.....  
.....

37. All the candidates of Greenhill Academy will pass PLE. (Begin:  
None.....)

.....  
.....

38. Mary is a very amazing girl. (Begin: What.....!)

.....

39. Samuel is speaking very politely. He wants the teacher to forgive him. (Join  
using:.....so that .....) )

.....  
.....

40. I intend to buy a phone during my vacation. (Begin: My .....) )

41. Their principal is a Ghanaian. (Rewrite the sentence beginning: A principal.....)
- .....  
.....
42. There is no cow which is as healthy as this one on the farm. (Begin: This is the.....)
- .....  
.....
43. I am related to all those boys. (Rewrite ending:.....relatives.)
- .....  
.....
44. You should look after your health. (Begin: One .....) )
- .....  
.....
45. You have taught us very well. We shall excel. (Join using:.....so.....)
- .....  
.....
46. They failed to turn up for the meeting. This disappointed the chairman. (Begin:Their.....)
- .....  
.....
47. We needn't have repeated the work. (Use: It was.....)
- .....  
.....
48. He went to school late but he was not punished. (Use: .....although .....) )
- .....  
.....
49. The suspect made a statement. He was then closed in a cell for safe custody. (Rewrite as one sentence using:.....after.....)
- .....  
.....
50. Bena didn't go to America. He didn't have a passport. (Join beginning :If.....)
- .....  
.....

### **SECTION B**

51. **Read the passage below and in full sentences answer the questions that follow.**

Ofumbui is a pupil at Nabinonya Junior School, Ekyiyang Village, Arua District. He stays with his widowed mother and three siblings; a brother and two sisters, all of whom don't go to school. The mother doesn't have money to pay their fees.

Ofumbui doesn't go to school on Tuesdays and Fridays. On those days, Ofumbui goes to Agaran Market to sell chickens and goats that are looked after at home. It is from such sales that Ofumbui gets money to pay his school fees and to look after the family.

One day, Ofumbui sold the animals as he had always done. This time, he did not go home after selling the animals. He decided to go to a betting centre and take part. He went on betting until he was left with only two thousand shillings out of the three hundred thousand shillings he had got from the sales.

As it is said "East or West, home is the best", Ofumbui had to go back home. On reaching home, he lied to his poor widowed miserable mother that he had been robbed of the money on his way home. The mother smelt a rat, but she kept quiet, after all what could she do.

Later in the day, Ofumbui's mother discovered betting papers in her son's school bag! When she totaled the money spent on the betting exercise, plus the two thousand shillings, she had received, she discovered that it amounted to three hundred thousand shillings; the exact money Ofumbui had got from the sales of the animals. The poor woman collapsed and was taken to Mulago hospital in Arua. What a dreadful day it was!

1. What is the passage about?

.....

To which school does Ofumbui go?

.....

2. What does Ofumbui do on Tuesdays and Wednesdays?

.....

3. Why don't Ofumbui's sisters go to school?

.....

4. How was Ofumbui irresponsible?

.....

5. In which hospital was Ofumbi's mother taken?

.....

6. How much did Ofumbi spend on betting altogether?

.....

7. Suggest a suitable title to the passage.

.....

8. Give a single word for these underlined in the passage

(i)looked after .....

(ii)went on .....

52. **Read the poem below and answer the questions about it in full sentences.**

Discipline Discipline Discipline

A leader to success to those who

Observe you.

They become successful in all that

They do once they allow you to drive them.

Discipline Discipline Discipline

A source of peace in schools

Families and village

You bring about harmony and

love to people

and this fosters development

in communities.

OH! Discipline Discipline Discipline

You are indeed good

That's why most of your

Letters make the word disciple

Meaning that Jesus' disciples

Were disciplined

Oh Discipline, My hero

I wish fellow pupils

Loved you and allowed

You to rest in their hearts

Because as a matter of

Fact, they can't excel in

Academics without you.

**Questions**

a) What is the poem about?

.....

b) What does the writer call discipline in stanza one?

.....

c) What does discipline bring to people?

.....

d) Why do you think school children need discipline?

.....

e) Which word in the poem can you rhyme with discipline?

.....

f) What can discipline foster in communities?

.....

g) Who qualifies to be Jesus' disciple according to stanza three?

.....

h) What happens to those who observe discipline?

.....

i) Who do you think wrote the poem?

.....

j) How many stanzas does the poem have?

.....

53. **Read the notice which was written on 12<sup>th</sup> September, 2017 and answer the questions about it in full sentences.**

The general public is hereby informed that Bank of Uganda (Central Bank) is going to withdraw the following notes from circulation.

1. Fifty thousand shilling notes.
2. Twenty thousand shilling notes
3. Ten thousand shilling notes.

## **ENGLISH , P.5, P.6 & P.7 REVISION WORKBOOK**

The Bank warns that with effect from 1<sup>st</sup> December, 2017, such notes will not be valid. Anyone found using them in transactions will therefore be punished. All people are advised to take the above notes to any commercial bank in exchange for smaller ones. The main reason for this move is to cut down on the inflation that has hit Uganda's economy.

The bank relies on everyone for a positive response.

**GOVERNOR  
BANK OF UGANDA**

**Questions:-**

a) What is the notice about ?

.....

b) For whom is the above notice intended?

.....

c) Where can people take the affected notes for exchange?

.....

d) Which bank is going to withdraw the above notes?

.....

e) When was the notice written?

.....

f) According to the notice, what is the main reason for withdrawing the above notes?

.....

g) What will happen to people found using the above notes?

.....

h) Give another name for Bank of Uganda.

.....

i) Who wrote the notice above?

.....

j) Give the opposite of the word valid.

.....

54. Arrange the sentences to form a meaningful story about "An Accident on Mbarara Road.

1. And a saloon car which was being driven by a citizen of Rwanda.
2. The driver of the saloon car died, instantly.
3. But his three year old son, survived with minor injuries.

# **ENGLISH , P.5, P.6 & P.7 REVISION WORKBOOK**

4. Last week as we were travelling to Mbarara,
  5. It involved our vehicle which had twelve passengers.
  6. This man was driving on the right side as it is in their country.
  7. We had a serious accident.
  8. Our driver tried to swerve the vehicle but it was not possible.
  9. The police ambulance arrived ten minutes later and took the dead body and the injured to hospital.
  10. So we had a head on collision.

55. Pictures A – F tell a story about football. Study each of them and describe what is happening. You may use the words given below to help you.

# ENGLISH , P.5, P.6 & P.7 REVISION WORKBOOK

**blow, opponent, celebrate, match, shake hands, players, fouled, referee, penalty kick, spectators, striker, start, goal, whistle.**

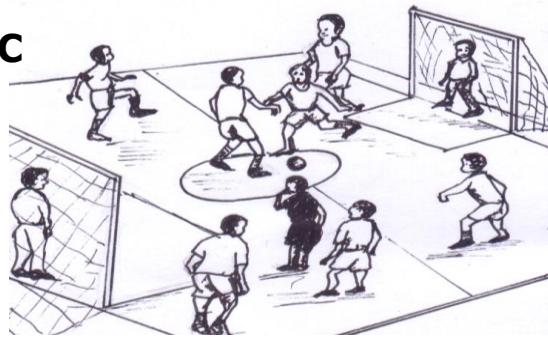
**A**



**B**



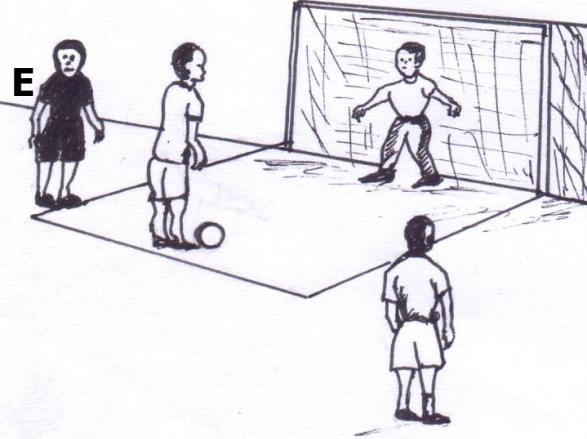
**C**



**D**



**E**



**F**



a) Picture A:

.....  
.....

**b) Picture B:**

.....  
.....

**c) Picture C:**

.....  
.....

**d) Picture D:**

.....  
.....

**e) Picture E:**

.....  
.....

**f) Picture F:**

.....  
.....

**g) Why do you think the match in Picture B has not started?**

.....  
.....

**h) What name is given to the judge of this game?**

.....  
.....

**i) Why do you think spectators are celebrating in Picture F?**

.....  
.....

**j) Suggest a suitable title to the picture composition.**

.....  
.....

**PAPER TWENTY SEVEN****SECTION A ( 50 Marks)**

**In each of the questions 1 to 5, fill the blank space with a correct word.**

1. The guard aimed his arrow \_\_\_\_\_ the thief.
2. She is \_\_\_\_\_ a bright girl that she cannot fail this test.
3. You will \_\_\_\_\_ walk to school or go by bus.
4. \_\_\_\_\_ he had come early, he would have eaten the cake.
5. The old man agreed \_\_\_\_\_ what his son said.

**In each of the questions 6 to 15, use the correct form of the word given in brackets to complete the sentence.**

6. The widower \_\_\_\_\_ bitterly when he lost his dear wife. (weep)
7. The \_\_\_\_\_ was signed by the two parties. (agree)
8. When he entered the hall, all the pupils had been \_\_\_\_\_. (sit)
9. Bogere's introduction ceremony was \_\_\_\_\_. (colour)
10. Having \_\_\_\_\_ the basket, Chandi took it to the market. (weave)
11. The girl dressed up \_\_\_\_\_ on Christmas day. (smart)
12. The \_\_\_\_\_ of the two girls refused to be checked. (thin)
13. Their \_\_\_\_\_ started when they were in school. (friend)
14. Sadam was \_\_\_\_\_ in the year Iraqi President was killed. (bear)
15. The plane \_\_\_\_\_ over the house last week. (fly)

**In each of the questions 16 to 18, re-write the sentence giving the opposite form for the underlined word.**

16. Okitwi is weaker than his brother.

---

17. The parties agreed on how to elect the president.

---

18. Awali attends school regularly.

---

**In each of the questions 19 to 21, re-write the sentence, giving one word for the underlined group of words.**

19. The bright girl worked all the sums in her head.

---

20. My uncle came back home after it had stopped raining.

---

21. Dan has checked in your office three times but you were not in.

---

***In each of the questions 22 to 24, give the plural of the given words.***

22. this mouse \_\_\_\_\_

23. an enemy \_\_\_\_\_

24. that piano \_\_\_\_\_

***In questions 25 and 27, write the given words in alphabetical order.***

25. attend , amend, advertise , announce

---

26. remember , remain , reminder , remembrance

---

27. deputy , depart , department , deport

---

***In each of the questions 28 to 30, write the given abbreviation or contraction in full.***

28. shan't \_\_\_\_\_

29. etc. \_\_\_\_\_

30. e.g. \_\_\_\_\_

***Sub-section II***

***In questions 31 to 50, re-write the sentences as instructed in the brackets.***

31. Juma is an old man but he works very hard. (Re-write the sentence beginning: Although .....)

---

32. It was raining heavily. John walked out of the house. (Re-write as one sentence beginning: Despite .....)

---

33. She walked deeper into the forest. The forest became darker. (Re-write as one sentence beginning: The deeper .....)

---

34. Biraze bought a car. The car is red. It is a spacious car. The car is made in Japan. (Re-write as one sentence without using; "and" , "which" or "that")
- 
- 

35. There isn't water left in the pot. (Re-write the sentence in affirmative)
- 

36. Aggie was very tired. Aggie could not sleep comfortably. (Join the sentences using:...too ...to )
- 

37. "What will you do this weekend, Shamim?" the teacher asked. (Re-write the sentence beginning; The teacher wanted to know .....)
- 
- 

38. I started teaching in 1979. I am still teaching now. (Join the sentences using; .....since .....)
- 

39. My grandfather planted this tree many years ago.(Re-write beginning: This tree .....)
- 
- 

40. There was heavy rain. Kafeero could not come to school early. (Join the sentences using: ....because .....)
- 

41. The taxi left. Auma reached the stage. (Re-write as one sentence beginning: By the time .....)
- 
- 

42. Wamikais pretty. Wamwogo is pretty. (Join these sentences using: .....and so .....)
- 
-

## **ENGLISH , P.5, P.6 & P.7 REVISION WORKBOOK**

43. Peter and Paul study at Murchson Bay Primary School. (Re-write the sentence beginning: Both)

---

44. It is not far from Kampala to Hoima, is it? (Re-write the sentence ending: ..... , isn't it?)

---

45. Had he revised hard, he would have passed in division one. (Re-write as two sentences)

---

46. Emputa likes fish more than meat. (Re-write the sentence using: ...prefer.. )

---

47. The children failed to get division one. The examination was easy. (Re-write as one sentence using: .....in spite of .....)

---

48. Boys do not write well. Girls do not write well. (Re-write the sentence beginning: Neither .....)

---

49. Mujomba was crossing the river when he fell in it and drowned. (Re-write the sentence beginning: Crossing .....)

---

50. "We will cook the food early tomorrow," Kasoma said. (Re-write the sentence beginning: Kasoma said that .....)

---

### **SECTION B ( 50 Marks)**

**51. Read the passage below and answer in full sentences the questions that follow.**

Mr. Asaba is a progressive farmer. He lives in Kigumba town in Kiryandongo District. He has a big land twelve kilometers on Kigumba Masindi road where he carries out mixed farming. There, he has a dairy farm, a banana plantation and a farm where he grows subsistence crops such as cassava, maize and sweet potatoes. He also grows cash crops such as tobacco and sunflower in addition to fruits such as mangoes, oranges and paw paws.

Mr. Asaba has a son and a daughter who both recently graduated from Makerere University with degrees in Agriculture. The two help him to manage his farm. They do book keeping, treat the animals and supervise crop cultivation and the fruit farming.

Mr. Asaba owns a pick-up which is driven by the son. He uses it to bring in the farm inputs and to transport farm products to the market. Although some of the products are consumed locally in the area, the biggest market is in Kampala. The son drives to Kampala every morning to take milk to Shamea Dairy Industry located on 5<sup>th</sup> street, Industrial Area where the milk is processed and sold mainly in the city.

**Questions**

- a) Who is the farmer that is talked about in the story?  
\_\_\_\_\_
- b) Where does the farmer live?  
\_\_\_\_\_
- c) What type of farming does Mr. Asaba practice?  
\_\_\_\_\_
- d) What subsistence crops does Mr. Asaba grow?  
\_\_\_\_\_
- e) Which professional course did Mr. Asaba's children do at the university?  
\_\_\_\_\_
- f) Where does Mr. Asaba sell his farm products?  
\_\_\_\_\_
- g) What is the use of Asaba's pick up on the farm?  
\_\_\_\_\_
- h) Which industry in Kampala is the biggest buyer of Asaba's milk?  
\_\_\_\_\_
- i) According to the passage, how many workers does Mr. Asaba have?  
\_\_\_\_\_
- j) Give the passage a suitable title.  
\_\_\_\_\_

**52. The sentences below are not in the correct order, re-arrange them in a correct order to make a good story.**

- (a) Suddenly Diana stopped.
  - (b) It seemed to be staring at them.
  - (c) The snake had slid off in the forest before he could reach it.
  - (d) One day, Brian and Diana were walking along the path to school.
  - (e) Brian looked where she was pointing to.
  - (f) He hurried up to the tree with the stick in his hands.
  - (g) She pointed to the foot of a big tree near the path.
  - (h) But he was too late.
  - (i) At the foot of the tree, he saw a big snake.
  - (j) Brian quickly picked up a stick which was lying on the path.
- 
- 
- 
- 
- 
- 
- 
- 
- 
- 
- 
- 
- 
- 
- 
- 
- 
- 
- 
- 
- 

**53. Read the information below that appeared in the New Vision Newspaper of July 10<sup>th</sup> 2014 and answer the questions that follow in full sentences.**

*The family of the late Cephas Sematooke Kitaka wish to extend their heartfelt appreciation to all friends, relatives and in-laws for their material, financial and spiritual support extended during the trying moment when we lost our beloved husband, father, son, brother and grandfather, The late Cephas Kitaka Sematooke who passed –on on 15<sup>th</sup> June, 2014. There will be a memorial service on 15<sup>th</sup> July, 2015 at Ngongolo Church of Uganda, next to Nsimbi Education Centre at 10:00 am*

*R.I.P*

**Questions.**

(a) What is the information about?

---

(b) When did the deceased die?

---

(c) When was this information published?

---

(d) To whom was this information addressed?

---

(e) Did the late Cephas Sematooke have grand children?

---

(f) Where will the memorial service take place?

---

(g) What are the friends and in-laws specially thanked for?

---

(h) In which newspaper did this information appear?

---

(i) What is this type of writing called?

---

(j) Give another word or group of words for passed – on as used in the writing.

---

**54. The conversation below is between Nyamera, a pupil and Mr. Apila, her teacher. Study it carefully and fill in what you think were Nyamera's correct responses.**

Nyamera: \_\_\_\_\_

Mr. Apila: Good morning, Nyamera

Nyamera: \_\_\_\_\_

Mr. Apila: Is that why you have been absent for two days?

Nyamera: \_\_\_\_\_

Mr. Apila: Sorry, you are just beginning to feel better, did you receive some treatment?

Nyamera: \_\_\_\_\_

Mr. Apila: That is good; I know you'll recover soon.

Nyamera: \_\_\_\_\_

Mr. Apila: Sorry, even your younger sister is sick.

Nyamera: \_\_\_\_\_

Mr. Apila: It's a pity , she is admitted in Magodes Hospital.

Nyamera: \_\_\_\_\_

Mr. Apila: Oh, no your mother who was looking after the child has also fallen sick.

Nyamera: \_\_\_\_\_

Mr. Apila: That is the right thing, please continue praying.

Nyamera: \_\_\_\_\_

Mr. Apila: Yes , I will help you , how much do you want?

Nyamera: \_\_\_\_\_

Mr. Apila: Ok I will give you the fifteen thousand shillings.

Nyamera: \_\_\_\_\_

**55. The New vision management has advertised a vacancy for an office messenger. The person must have completed primary seven and passed in division II or III. She /he must apply in his / her own handwriting. Using your school address, apply to the manager New Vision P.O.Box 32 Kampala. In your application indicate the division you got and tell them what you want to do in future.**

**ENGLISH , P.5, P.6 & P.7 REVISION WORKBOOK**